

سلسلة الحزمي التعليمية

طبعة جديدة ملونة
ومنقحة ومرتبعة

المميز الذهبي

المبسوط

AL-MOBASAT

في

in

ENGLISH

اللغة الانجليزية

القواعد

GRAMMAR

خاصة بجميع قواعد منهج الصف الثالث الثانوي
بقسميه : العلمي - الأدبي

إعداد وشرح الأستاذ / نشوان الزئب

مدرس أول ومستشار المادة
للمرحلة الثانوية في مركز صناع القادة
ومعهد تايدي والمعهد الماليزي - ومعهد الكنز
ومدرس المادة في مدارس الرشيد الحديثة
ومدارس رواد اليمن الدولية
ومدارس المعلم ومدرسة وطن - ومدارس الإشراف

■ شرح مفصل بالطريقة الوزارية الجديدة
■ وكذلك القديمة بالإضافة إلى العديد
من التمارين والتطبيقات على كل درس
بالطريقة الوزارية الجديدة مع الحلول
شامل كتاب الحصص والواجب

حقوق الطبع محفوظة لدى مركز الحزمي - صنعاء - يادان التحرير 01-270027 T.me/Third_secondary17 T.me/Doctor_future1

الفهرس (Index)

| محتويات الكتاب القسم الأول Section One | Page صفحة | محتويات الكتاب القسم الأول Section One | Page صفحة |
|---|--------------|---|--------------|
| Unit One الوحدة الأولى | 5 | Unit Three الوحدة الثالثة | 47 |
| <u>Language review 1 (١)</u> خلاصة لغوية رقم (١) | 5 | <u>Language review 5 (٥)</u> خلاصة لغوية رقم (٥) | 47 |
| 1/ Comparison مقارنة | 5 | 1/ The Present perfect continuous | 47 |
| *Comparative and superlative المقارنات و التفضيل | 5 | المضارع التام المستمر | |
| *as.....as | 9 | *Compare the present perfect simple and the Present perfect continuous tenses | 49 |
| *the same | 11 | مقارنة بين زمني المضارع التام البسيط و المضارع التام المستمر | |
| *like / unlike | 12 | 2/ Verb + infinitive or + -ing form | 51 |
| 2/ Contrast (التضاد) | 13 | | |
| <u>Language review 2 (٢)</u> خلاصة لغوية رقم (٢) | 17 | <u>Language review 6 (٦)</u> خلاصة لغوية رقم (٦) | 53 |
| 1/ Description الوصف | 17 | 1/ Nouns, adjectives and verbs + Prepositions | 53 |
| *adjective order ترتيب الصفات | 17 | أسماء ، صفات و أفعال + حروف جر | |
| *emphasis التوكيد | 18 | 2/ Addition (إضافة) | 56 |
| 2/ information focus تركيز المعلومة | 19 | (كلمات ربط تستخدم لإضافة معلومت) | |
| 3/Joining sentences (with the -ing form) | 22 | (as well as / together with / as well / also) | 58 |
| ربط الجمل بـ (ing) | | 3/ Consequence النتيجة | 58 |
| تمارين حول قواعد الوحدة الأولى بطريقة الأتمتة | 23 | الجملة التي تحتوي على السبب و النتيجة) | |
| Unit Two الوحدة الثانية | 27 | تمارين حول قواعد الوحدة الثالثة بطريقة الأتمتة | 61 |
| <u>Language review 3 (٣)</u> خلاصة لغوية رقم (٣) | 27 | Unit Four الوحدة الرابعة | 63 |
| 1/ Use of the Passive استخدام المبني للمجهول | 27 | Tag Questions الأسئلة الذيلية | 63 |
| (زمن الماضي البسيط past simple tense) | | <u>Language review 7 (٧)</u> خلاصة لغوية رقم (٧) | 64 |
| 2/ Use of the Past continuous استخدام الماضي المستمر | 28 | 1/ Use of sequence words كلمات التعاقب | 64 |
| 3/ Sense verbs أفعال الحواس | 30 | 2/ Use of the Passive استخدام المبني للمجهول | 64 |
| 4/ The verb to be + to + infinitive | 31 | سيتم شرح هذا الدرس بالتفصيل ضمن قسم القواعد لاحقاً | |
| 5/ Punctuation (علامات الحديث) الترقيم | 32 | 3/ Use of while + Present continuous with Present simple | 64 |
| Punctuation الترقيم | | استخدام (while) + المضارع المستمر مع المضارع البسيط | |
| | | Words and more words (كلمات و كلمات أكثر) | 66 |
| | | Prefixes and Suffixes البوائى واللواحق | 66 |
| | | The Compound Words الكلمات المركبة | 74 |
| <u>Language review 4 (٤)</u> خلاصة لغوية رقم (٤) | 36 | <u>Language review 8 (٨)</u> خلاصة لغوية رقم (٨) | 77 |
| 1/ Use of the Present perfect tense زمن المضارع التام البسيط | 36 | 1/ Use of have/get + infinitive | 77 |
| 2/ Use of the Past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط | 38 | 2/ Use of get to show change of state | 78 |
| * Relative Clauses العبارات الوصلية | 40 | 3/ Use of two comparatives استخدام المقارنة المزدوجة | 78 |
| 3/ Prepositions in relative clauses حروف الجر في العبارات الوصلية | 43 | 4/ Parts of speech أجزاء الكلام | 80 |
| *necessary information معلومات ضرورية | 43 | | |
| * additional information معلومات إضافية | 44 | تمارين حول قواعد الوحدة الرابعة بطريقة الأتمتة | 93 |
| 4/ Adverbs and adverbial phrases ظروف و عبارات ظرفية | 44 | | |
| تمارين حول قواعد الوحدة الثانية بطريقة الأتمتة | 46 | | |

| | | | |
|--|-----|---|-----|
| Unit Five الوحدة الخامسة | 95 | | |
| Possibilities (احتمالات) | 95 | | |
| Puzzles and riddles (ألغاز و أحاجي) | 96 | | |
| <u>Language review 9 (٩)</u> خلاصة لغوية رقم (٩) | 98 | <u>Language review 10 (١٠)</u> خلاصة لغوية رقم (١٠) | 102 |
| 1/ Model verbs - 1 (١) أفعال ناقصة | 98 | 1/ Model verbs - 2 (٢) أفعال ناقصة | 102 |
| *Degrees of possibility درجة الاحتمال | 98 | 2/ Verb + object + infinitive with to | 103 |
| *Ability (القدرة) (الاستطاعة) | 100 | 3/ Reflexive pronouns الضمانر المنعكسة | 104 |
| 2/ 'Sense' verbs + object + verb | 101 | تمارين حول قواعد الوحدة الخامسة بطريقة الأتمتة | 106 |
| أفعال الحواس + مفعول به + فعل | | | |

| القسم الثاني Section Two قواعد Grammar | Page صفحة |
|---|--------------|
| يشتمل قواعد قد تم دراستها في المراحل الدراسية السابقة | 107 |
| Pronouns الضمائر | 107 |
| Definite and Indefinite Articles أدوات المعرفة والنكرة | 109 |
| Count and non-count nouns الأسماء المعدودة و الغير معدودة | 110 |
| Regular and Irregular Verbs الأفعال القياسية والغير قياسية | 115 |
| The Tenses الأزمنة | 121 |
| The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط | 121 |
| The future simple tense زمن المستقبل البسيط | 124 |
| The present continuous tense زمن المضارع المستمر | 126 |
| The past perfect simple tense زمن الماضي التام البسيط | 127 |
| If Conditional Sentences الجمل الشرطية | 129 |
| The Passive المبني للمجهول | 133 |
| The Prepositions حروف الجر | 138 |
| Derivation(Verb and Noun) الاشتقاق (الفعل والاسم) | 143 |
| Derivation (Noun and adjective) (الاسم والصفة) | 147 |
| How to Make questions? كيف تصنع أسئلة ؟ | 151 |

| القسم الثالث Section Three | Page صفحة |
|--|--------------|
| فقرات متنوعة (محلولة) بالطريقة الوزارية الجديدة (الأتمة) تم تجميعها من العديد من الامتحانات الوزارية | 154 |
| Exercises : تمارين : | 165 |

Section One القسم الأول

الوحدة الأولى Unit 1

1.5

Language review 1 خلاصة لغوية 1

Page 4 صفحة

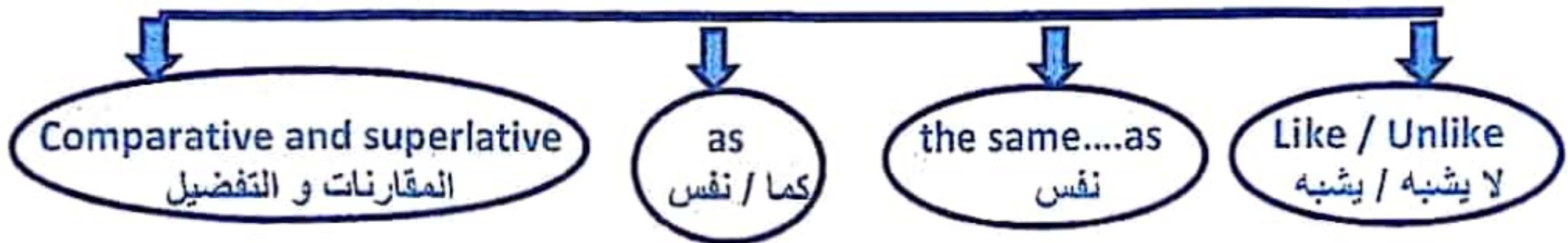
- كما تعلم أن الصفات تستخدم لوصف أشخاص أو أشياء أخرى كما في الأمثلة التالية :
- 1- Ali is **tall** . علي **طويل** . / 2- Sana'a is very **beautiful** . صنعاء **جميلة** جداً .
3-The building are very **nice** . المباني **رائعة** جداً .

ملحوظة هامة :

يذكر الاسم الموصوف (الذي تريد أن تصفه في البداية) ثم يجب أن تستخدم بعده أحد أفعال be و هي (is / was) إذا كان الاسم مفرد ، (are / were) إذا كان الاسم جمع ، (am) إذا كان الموصوف هو أنا (الضمير I)

و لكن عندما نقارن بين أشخاص أو حيوانات أو أشياء أخرى (في صفة ما) فيوجد هناك أربع طرق للمقارنة و هي :

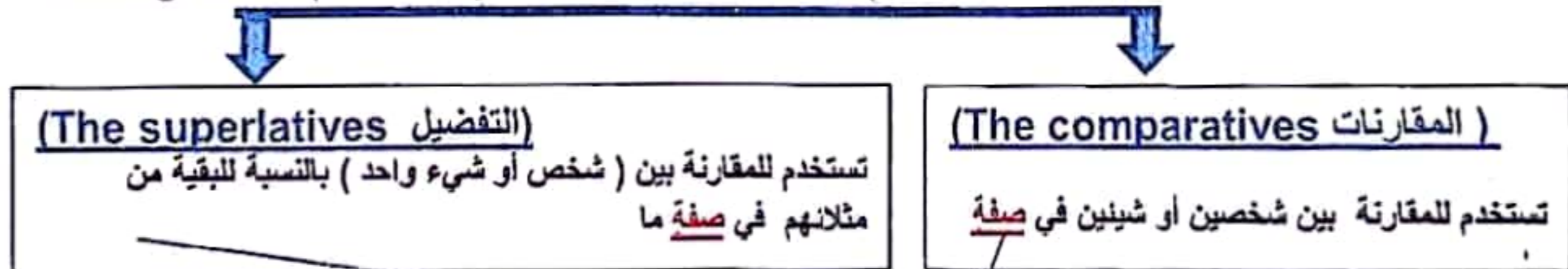
1/ Comparison (مقارنة)



- صيغ مقارنات و تفضيل الصفات Comparatives and superlatives forms of adjectives

The most common way to compare things is to use these forms of the adjective.

أكثر طريقة شائعة لمقارنة أشياء هي أن تستخدم هذه الصيغ للصفة.



هذه الصفة قد تكون ذات مقطع صوتي واحد ، كما أنها قد تكون ذات أكثر من مقطع

س / ما هي الصفات ذات المقطع الصوتي الواحد و ما هي الصفات ذات أكثر من مقطع ؟

ج / * في العادة يتم تحديد عدد المقاطع الصوتية على حسب لفظك للكلمة فمثلاً :

كلمة (gentle) تعتبر ذات مقطعين صوتيين و هما (gen-tle) لاحظ أنك عندما تلفظ الكلمة أنك تتوقف عند حرف n ومن ثم تكمل الكلمة ، وكذلك الحال في كلمة (simple) تعتبر أيضاً ذات مقطعين صوتيين و هما (sim-ple) ، أما بالنسبة لكلمة (long) تعتبر ذات مقطع صوتي واحد لأنك تلفظ الكلمة كاملة بدون توقف.

* نظراً لعدم فهم كثيراً من الطلاب للصوتيات ، يمكنك أن تحدد عدد المقاطع في كلمة بحسب عدد حروف العلة (الحروف المتحركة) الموجودة في الكلمة و هذه الطريقة لا تشمل كل الكلمات و لكن الأغلب.

إذا عليك أن تعرف أن حروف العلة (المتحركة) خمسة وهي (a - e - i - o - u) و باقي الحروف هي ساكنة .

١/ تعتبر الصفة ذات مقطع واحد إذا أتى في الصفة حرف متحرك واحد . مثل :

| | | | |
|-----------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| بارد-cold | طويل long | قصير Short | طويل tall |
|-----------|-----------|------------|-----------|

٢/ كما تعتبر الصفة ذات مقطع واحد إذا أتى في الصفة حرفين متحركين متتابعين فقط مثل
..... / سهل - بسيط / easy / ضعيف weak

٣/ إذا انتهت الصفة بالحرف المتحرك e فإنه لا يحسب كمقطع و تعتبر الصفة ذات مقطع واحد مثل
..... / واسع / large / رابع Nice

٤/ إذا أتى في الصفة أكثر من حرف متحرك واحد و كان يفصل بينها حروف ساكنة فإنها تعتبر ذات أكثر من مقطع مثل :
..... / صعب / difficult / وسيم handsome / جميل Beautiful

بعد تحديد نوع الصفة (ذات مقطع واحد أو أنها ذات أكثر من مقطع)

نتعرف على القواعد التي نستخدمها للمقارنة و التفضيل في الصفات

| القواعد The rules | إذا كانت الصفة ذات مقطع واحد مثل (tall) | إذا كانت الصفة ذات أكثر من مقطع . مثل (beautiful) |
|--|---|---|
| (المقارنات The comparatives) تستخدم للمقارنة بين شيئين أو شخصين | adj (صفة) + er + than | more + adj (صفة) + than |
| أمثلة Examples | Reham is taller than Aimn. ريهام أطول من أيمن | Reham is more beautiful than Arwa . ريهام أجمل من أروى . |
| (التفضيل The superlatives) تستخدم للمقارنة بين أكثر من شيئين أو أكثر من شخصين | the + adj (صفة) + est | the + most + adj (صفة) |
| أمثلة Examples | Reham is the tallest student in the class .. ريهام أطول طالبة في الفصل | Reham is the most beautiful student in the class . ريهام أجمل طالبة في الفصل |

و لتوضيح القواعد السابقة بشكل أفضل إليك التقسيم التالي "

المقارنات (The comparatives)

| الطرف الأول (اسم / ضمير) (Noun / pronoun) | be | adj (صفة) tall | er | than | الطرف الثاني (اسم / ضمير) (Noun / pronoun) |
|--|----|---------------------|--------------------------|------|--|
| Reham | is | taller | | than | Aimn |
| 1/ Reham is taller than Aimn. ريهام أطول من أيمن 2/ I am taller than you . أنا أطول منك . | | | | | |
| الطرف الأول (اسم / ضمير) (Noun / pronoun) | be | more | adj (صفة) beautiful | than | الطرف الثاني (اسم / ضمير) (Noun / pronoun) |
| Reham | is | more | beautiful | than | Arwa |
| 1/ Reham is more beautiful than Arwa. ريهام أجمل من أروى . | | | | | |

إذا كانت
الصفة ذات
مقطع
واحد

إذا كانت
الصفة
ذات أكثر
من مقطع

(The superlatives التفضيل)

| | | | | | |
|---|----|-----|-------------------|------------------------|--|
| الطرف الأول (اسم / ضمير) (Noun / pronoun) | be | the | adj (صفة) tall | est | الطرف الثاني (اسم / ضمير) (Noun / pronoun) |
| Reham | is | the | tallest | | student in the class |
| 1/ Reham is the <u>tallest</u> student in the class .. ريهام هي أطول طالبة في الفصل | | | | | |
| الطرف الأول (اسم / ضمير) (Noun / pronoun) | be | the | most | adj (صفة) beautiful | الطرف الثاني (اسم / ضمير) (Noun / pronoun) |
| Reham | is | the | most | beautiful | girl in her family . |
| Reham is the most <u>beautiful</u> girl in her family .. ريهام هي أجمل بنت في عائلتها | | | | | |

إذا كانت
الصفة
ذات مقطع
واحد

إذا كانت
الصفة
ذات أكثر
من مقطع

لاحظ أن الصفات ذات المقطع الواحد عند استخدامها

في المقارنات نضيف إليها (er) ، وفي التفضيل نضيف إليها (est) ،
و يجب عليك مراعاة القواعد التالية عند إضافة هذه الحروف: (صفات منتظمة Regular adjectives)
١ / الصفات التالية ذات مقطع واحد

| NO. | Adjectives الصفات | Comparatives المقارنات | Superlative التفضيل | Notes ملاحظات |
|-----|----------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|--|
| 1. | tall | taller than | the tallest | إذا كانت الصفة ذات مقطع واحد و انتهت بحرفين ساكنين نضيف لها (er) في المقارنات ونضيف لها (est) في التفضيل |
| 2. | short | shorter than | the shortest | |
| 3. | long | longer than | the longest | |
| 1. | nice | nicer than | the nicest | إذا كانت الصفة ذات مقطع واحد و انتهت بحرف (e) نضيف لها (r) فقط في المقارنات و (st) فقط في التفضيل. |
| 2. | large | larger than | the largest | |
| 1. | big | bigger than | the biggest | إذا كانت الصفة ذات مقطع واحد و انتهت بحرف ساكن و آتى قبله حرف متحرك واحد فعلياً أن نكتب الحرف الأخير مرة أخرى ثم نضيف للصفة (er) في المقارنات و (est) في التفضيل |
| 2. | fat | fatter than | the fattest | |
| 3. | hot | hotter than | the hottest | إذا كانت الصفة ذات مقطع واحد و انتهت بحرف (w) و آتى قبله حرف متحرك لا نكتب الحرف الساكن (w) مرة أخرى لصعوبة النطق |
| 1. | few | fewer than | the fewest | |
| 2. | new | newer than | the newest | إذا كانت الصفة ذات مقطع واحد و انتهت بحرف ساكن و آتى قبله حرفي علة فلا نكتب الحرف الأخير مرة أخرى بل نضيف (er) فقط في المقارنات و (est) في التفضيل |
| 1. | weak | weaker than | the weakest | |
| 1. | easy | easier than | the easiest | إذا كانت الصفة ذات مقطع واحد و انتهت بحرف (y) فعلياً أن نغيره إلى (i) ثم نضيف (er) في المقارنات و (est) في التفضيل |
| 2. | lazy | lazier than | the laziest | |

٢ / الصفات التالية ذات مقطعين و أكثر

| NO. | Adjectives الصفات | Comparatives المقارنات | Superlative التفضيل |
|-----|----------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. | beautiful | more beautiful than | the most beautiful |
| 2. | interesting | more interesting than | the most interesting |
| 3. | important | more important than | the most important |
| 4. | wonderful | more wonderful than | the most wonderful |
| 5. | attractive | more attractive than | the most attractive |
| 6. | difficult | more difficult than | the most difficult |
| 7. | comfortable | more comfortable than | the most comfortable |
| 8. | dangerous | more dangerous than | the most dangerous |

الصفات التالية ذات مقطعين و لكن يمكننا ان نطبق معها الطريقتين السابقتين كما يلي

| NO. | Adjectives الصفات | Comparatives المقارنات | Superlative التفضيل |
|-----|----------------------|---|--|
| 1. | clever | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • cleverer than • more clever than | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the cleverest • the most clever |
| 2. | simple | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • simpler than • more simple than | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the simplest • the most simple |
| 3. | gentle | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • gentler than • more gentle than | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the gentlest • the most gentle |

الجدول التالي يحتوي على صفات شاذة ذات مقطع واحد لا نطبق عليها القواعد السابقة من إضافات بل نحفظ غيباً
تسمى (صفات غير منتظمة irregular adjectives)

| NO. | The Adjective | Comparative مقارنه | Superlative تفضيل |
|-----|---------------------|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. | good جيد | better than أفضل من | the best الأفضل |
| 2. | bad سيء | worse than أسوء من | the worst الأسوأ |
| 3. | much كثير في الكمية | more than أكثر من | the most الأكثر |
| 4. | many كثير في العدد | more than أكثر من | the most الأكثر |
| 5. | little قليل | less than أقل من | the least الأقل |
| 6. | far بعيد | further than / farther than أبعد من | the furthest / the farthest الأبعد |
| 7. | few قليل | fewer than أقل من | the fewest الأقل |

Q1 : Choose the best alternatives : اختار أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | |
|----|---|-----------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| 1 | She isthan her sister. | a beautiful | b more beautiful | c most beautiful | d beauty |
| 2 | He is thestudent in the class . | a good | b better | c best | d gooder |
| 3 | Ali isthan Abdullah . | a short | b a short | c shorter | d shortest |
| 4 | All isthan his brother . | a beautiful | b more handsome | c most beautiful | d beauty |
| 5 | English isthan Arabic . | a easy | b easier | c more easy | d easier |
| 6 | Mohammed is theman in his family . | a tall | b taller | c tallest | d a tall |
| 7 | It is thecity in Yemen . | a wonderful | b more wonderful | c most wonderful | d wonderfulest |
| 8 | English stories arethan Spanish stories . | a interestingly | b more interesting | c most interesting | d interesting |
| 9 | Your handwriting isthan your sister's . | a worst | b worse | c good | d bad |
| 10 | The weather isthan yesterday . | a good | b bad | c better | d best |
| 11 | Fatima isthan Hana'a . | a old | b older | c oldest | d eld |
| 12 | Ali isthan he looks . | a the younger | b the youngest | c younger | d youth |
| 13 | He hasmoney than you . | a much | b less | c many | d little |
| 14 | She isfatter than you. | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|-------------------------------------|---------------|---|----------------|---|----------------|---|------------|
| | a | a bit | b | many | c | few | d | --- |
| 15 | It isthan yesterday. | | | | | | | |
| | a | worse | b | worst | c | bad | d | badder |
| 16 | He isthan Ahmed. | | | | | | | |
| | a | more handsome | b | handsome | c | most handsome | d | ----- |
| 17 | He is theone in the class. | | | | | | | |
| | a | short | b | shorter | c | shortest | d | more short |
| 18 | He isof all . | | | | | | | |
| | a | good | b | better | c | the best | d | ----- |
| 19 | She is thegirl in her family. | | | | | | | |
| | a | beautiful | b | most beautiful | c | more beautiful | d | ----- |

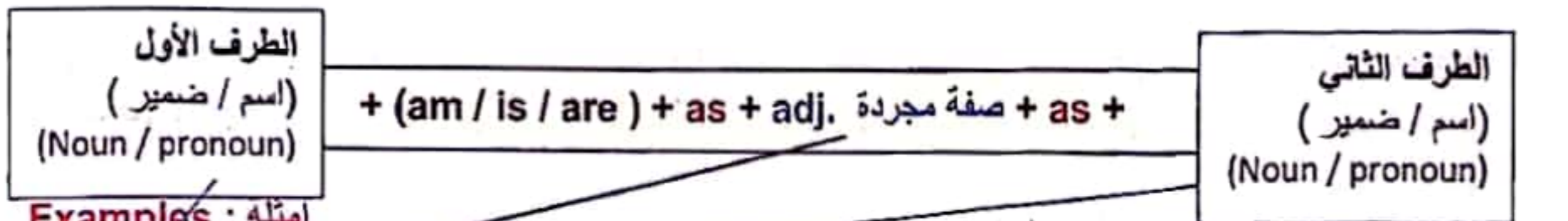
و فيما يلي الطريقة الثانية للمقارنة في صفة ما هي :

2/ Comparison (مقارنة) باستخدام (as)

مثل / ك = as * : قاعدة Rule

We use a positive statement with *as* to say that things are equal. We use a negative statement (*as + not*) to show that things are not equal.

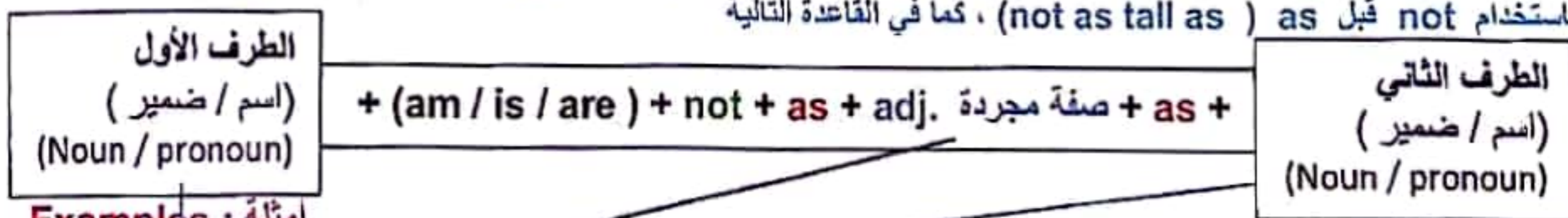
- ١/ نستخدم (as) في الجمل المثبتة (positive) لتبين أن الأشياء متشابهة أو متساوية . كما في القاعدة التالية
 * تستخدم هذه الأداة (للمقارنة) لإظهار التشابه أو التساوي بين أشياء أو أشخاص في صفة ما .
 * يتبع (as) صفة (an adjective)
 * يجب أن تكون الصفة التي بين (asas) مجردة (أي بدون الإضافات (er / est / more / most))



أمثلة : Examples :

- 1/ My sister is **as tall as** me .
 2/ She is **as beautiful as** her mother .
 3/ Khalid is **as short as** Adel .

٢/ كما تستطيع أن تنفي ذلك التساوي (التشابه) أي أن تبين الاختلاف (not equal) في جمل منفية (negative) باستخدام *not as tall as* ، كما في القاعدة التالية



أمثلة : Examples :

- 1/ My sister is **not as tall as** me .
 2/ She is **not as beautiful as** her mother .
 3/ Khalid is **not as short as** Adel .

و فيما يلي تطبيق على القاعدة بحسب ما يرد في الامتحانات الوزارية الجديدة

Q : Choose the best alternatives : اختر أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|--------------------------------|--------|---|----------|---|----------|---|-----------|
| 1 | He is asas his friend . | | | | | | | |
| | a | young | b | youth | c | younger | d | taller |
| 2 | Khalid is as.....as Ahmed . | | | | | | | |
| | a | strong | b | strength | c | stronger | d | strongest |
| 3 | He is asas his brother . | | | | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|----------------|---|----------------|---|----------------|---|----------|
| | a | tall | b | taller | c | tallest | d | a tall |
| 4 | Arwa is as.....as Fatima . | | | | | | | |
| | a | beautiful | b | more beautiful | c | most beautiful | d | beauty |
| 5 | This man is asas that man . | | | | | | | |
| | a | patient | b | patience | c | patiently | d | a and b |
| 6 | It is asas that well . | | | | | | | |
| | a | higher | b | height | c | highly | d | high |
| 7 | Nashwan is as.....as Adel . | | | | | | | |
| | a | clever | b | more clever | c | most clever | d | cleverer |
| 8 | Fast food isn't as.....as fresh food . | | | | | | | |
| | a | the healthiest | b | healthiest | c | healthier | d | healthy |
| 9 | Khalid is as.....as Sultan . | | | | | | | |
| | a | smart | b | smarter | c | smartest | d | smartly |

3/ We use (as as) to compare the quantity of things (countable nouns)

٣/ نستخدم (asas) لنقارن بين كمية (مقدار) الأشياء (أسماء معدودة)

....as + (many كثير / few قليل) + countable noun اسم قابل للعدد جمع

Example : He has as many friends as you.

4/ We use (as as) to compare the quantity of things (uncountable nouns)

٤/ نستخدم (asas) لنقارن بين كمية (مقدار) الأشياء (أسماء غير معدودة)

....as + (much كثير / little قليل) + uncountable noun اسم مفرد غير قابل للعدد

Example : He has as much money as you.

5/ We use (as as) to compare actions that are equal.

٥/ نستخدم (as.....as) لنقارن الأحداث التي تكون متساوية (متشابهة)

....main verb + as + adverb + as +

Examples : 1/ He is running as quickly as you. 2/ He is not running as quickly as you.

| | | | |
|----------------|----------------------|------------------|--|
| as (adj.) as | too (adj.) to + V1 | so (adj.) that | How + (adj.) + (am / is / are /was / were) |
|----------------|----------------------|------------------|--|

Q : Choose the best alternatives : اختر أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|--------------|---|---------|---|----------|---|-----------|
| 1 | This person has money asas you. | | | | | | | |
| | a | many | b | few | c | least | d | much |
| 2 | He ran asas you. | | | | | | | |
| | a | quickly | b | quicken | c | quick | d | quickness |
| 3 | She has as.....students as Hana'a. | | | | | | | |
| | a | little | b | much | c | more | d | many |
| 4 | He has asinformation as Mohammed. | | | | | | | |
| | a | much | b | many | c | few | d | most |
| 5 | You are asas your friend. | | | | | | | |
| | a | friendliness | b | friend | c | friendly | d | No answer |

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|-----------|---|-----------|---|-------|
| 6 | All's car is asas Abdullah's car. | | | | | | |
| a | cost | b | cheapness | c | expensive | d | price |
| 7 | This rule isimportant as that rule. | | | | | | |
| a | the same | b | like | c | as | d | than |

أما الطريقة الثالثة للمقارنة في صفة ما هي :

3/ Comparison (مقارنة) باستخدام (the same.....as) = نفس

Rule قاعدة * : the same + noun اسم +as

- 1/ the same = as.....as = like مثل = similar to مشابه
- 2/ the same ≠ difference اختلاف تشابه
- 3/ the word (same) is followed by a noun not an adjective. يتبعها اسم وليس صفة.
- 4/ we must write (the) before the word (same) . يجب أن نكتب قبل (same) أداة التعريف (the)

- the word (same) shows that things are equal in a positive sentences . تظهر كلمة (same) التساوي (التشابه) بين الأشياء أو الأشخاص في جمل مثبتة . كما في القاعدة التالية

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| الطرف الأول (اسم / ضمير) (Noun / pronoun) | + (am / is / are) + the same + noun اسم + as | الطرف الثاني (اسم / ضمير) (Noun / pronoun) |
|---|---|--|

Examples : أمثلة :

- 1- My sister is **the same** height **as** me .. أختي في نفس طولي ..
- 2/ He is **the same** age **as** Ali .. هو في نفس عمر علي ..

5/ the word (same) can be used at the end of a sentence. يمكن أن تستخدم في نهاية الجملة كما في المثال التالي. **Your car and my car are the same** . سيارتك و سيارتي متشابهتين .

- the word (same) can be used in a negative statements يمكن أن تستخدم (same) لنفي التشابه (لتبين الاختلاف) في جمل منفية باستخدام (not) كما يلي :

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| الطرف الأول (اسم / ضمير) (Noun / pronoun) | + (am / is / are) + not the same + noun اسم + as + | الطرف الثاني (اسم / ضمير) (Noun / pronoun) |
|---|---|--|

Example : مثال :

- 1/ My sister is **not the same** height **as** me .. أختي ليست في نفس طولي ..

فيما يلي جدول يبين لك بعض الأسماء و الصفات منها :

| Adjective صفة | Noun اسم | Adjective صفة | Noun اسم | Adjective صفة | Noun اسم |
|---------------|----------|---------------|------------|-------------------------------|--------------|
| old | age | important | importance | big / small/ large | size |
| young | youth | different | difference | black/ blue / ... | colour |
| strong | strength | patient | patience | round / square / ... | shape |
| long | length | confident | confidence | expensive / cheap | price |
| wide | width | diligent | dilligence | Yemeni / Indian /.. | nationality |
| true | truth | | | good / bad / | opinion |
| high | height | beautiful | beauty | short / heavy /long / big /.. | size / built |
| warm | warmth | wonderful | wonder | | |

ملحوظة هامة : عزيزي الطالب قم بالرجوع الى درس الاشتقاق في هذا الكتاب المعيز لتعرف المزيد من الاسماء و الصفات

Q / Choose the best alternatives : : اختر افضل اجابة :

| | | | | |
|---|--|-----------|---|-------------|
| 1 | She is the sameas Fatima . | | | |
| | a | old | b | age |
| | | | c | older |
| | | | d | tall |
| 2 | It is the sameas this well . | | | |
| | a | wide | b | width |
| | | | c | widely |
| | | | d | wider |
| 3 | It is the sameas that one . | | | |
| | a | deep | b | depth |
| | | | c | deeper |
| | | | d | deepest |
| 4 | It is the sameas this chair . | | | |
| | a | strong | b | strength |
| | | | c | strengthen |
| | | | d | stronger |
| 5 | She is the sameas her sister . | | | |
| | a | able | b | ables |
| | | | c | ability |
| | | | d | unable |
| 6 | This lesson is the sameas yesterday's lesson . | | | |
| | a | important | b | importance |
| | | | c | importantly |
| | | | d | importants |

و فيما يلي الطريقة الرابعة للمقارنة في صفة ما هي :

4/ Comparison (مقارنة) باستخدام (like / unlike) (Like) is the opposite of عكس ≠ (unlike)

The two words are not adjectives but they are used to make comparisons.

(like) و (unlike) ليست صفات و لكنهما يستخدمان لصنع (لإنشاء) مقارنات .

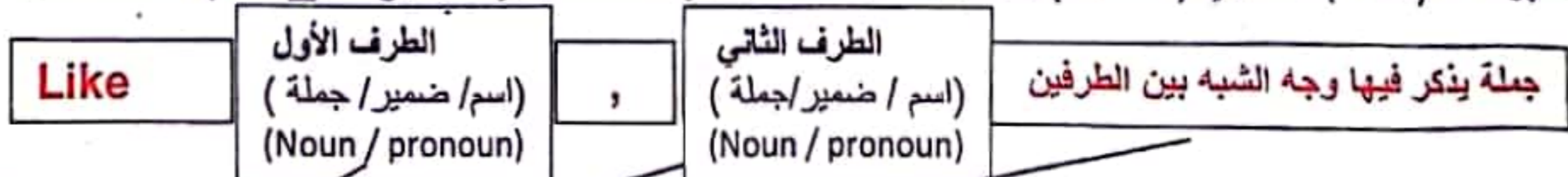
Note: The underlined phrases can be used at the end of a sentence or at the beginning. In both cases, a comma separates them from the rest of the sentence.

ملحوظة : (like) و (unlike) يمكن أن تستخدمان في نهاية الجملة أو في بدايتها . في كلا الحالتين ، لا بد أن تضع فاصلة تفصلهما عن بقية الجملة .

1/ Rule قاعدة * like : مثل ، يشبه

The word (like) shows that things are equal.

تظهر كلمة (like) التساوي (التشابه) بين الأشياء أو الأشخاص في صفة ما أو في موضوع ما . كما في القاعدة التالية



Examples : أمثلة :

1/ Like my father, I am interested in sports . . مثل أبي ، أنا مهتم بالرياضة .

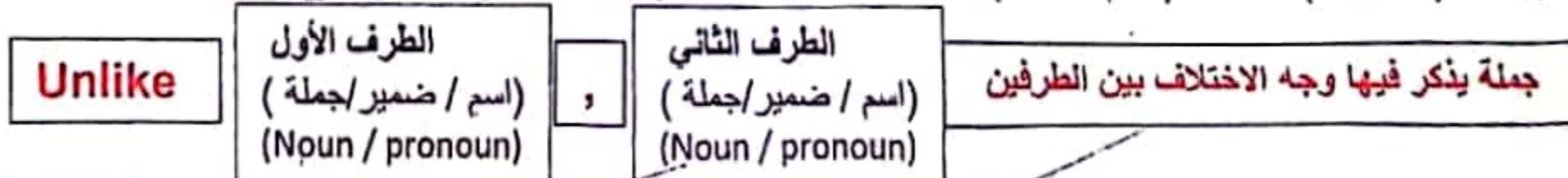
2/ I am interested in sports, like my father, . . أنا مهتم بالرياضة ، مثل أبي .

3/ Like its father , It has short ears and long tail . . مثل أبيه ، هو له آذان قصيرة و ذيل طويل .

2/ Rule قاعدة * unlike : على خلاف ، لا يشبه ، عكس

The word (unlike) shows that things are not equal.

تظهر كلمة (unlike) الاختلاف (عدم التشابه) بين الأشياء أو الأشخاص في صفة ما أو في موضوع ما . كما في القاعدة التالية



Examples : أمثلة :

1/ Unlike my father, I am not interested in football . . على خلاف أبي ، أنا غير مهتم بكرة القدم .

2/ I am **not** interested in football , **unlike** my father. . انا غير مهتم بكرة القدم **على خلاف** ابي .
3/ **Unlike** its father , It has **no** hump on its back . لا يشبه اياه ، ليس له سنام على ظهره .

Q : Choose the best alternatives : اختر أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---------------|---|-----------|---|-----------|---|--------------------|
| 1 |Abdullah , Ali isn't ready for the exam . | | | | | | | |
| | a | same | b | As | c | Unlike | d | Liking |
| 2 | you , he likes swimming . | | | | | | | |
| | a | Although | b | Whereas | c | however | d | Unlike |
| 3 |Adel , Ahmed is interested in sports . | | | | | | | |
| | a | Although | b | Like | c | Whereas | d | Another reason for |
| 4 |Adel , Ahmed is not interested in sports . | | | | | | | |
| | a | Although | b | Like | c | Whereas | d | however |
| 5 | They are not adjectives but they are used to make comparisonsand..... | | | | | | | |
| | a | like / unlike | b | same / as | c | and / but | d | whereas / and |

و فيما يلي الفقرة الثانية من الخلاصة اللغوية رقم ١ (في صفحة ٤) و هي :

2 / Contrast (الاختلاف / التناقض / التضاد)

1/ Although (مع ذلك / بالرغم من) / 2/ However (ولكن ، بالرغم من ذلك ، و لكن)
3/ Whereas (بينما)

Notes (ملاحظات)

1/ Although and however : These two words can be used to give the same meaning as **but** .

١ / هاتان الكلمتان يمكن أن تستخدمان لتعطينا نفس معنى (but) و التي معناها (لكن)

2/ Although and however : They contrast unexpected relationship between two actions or events .

٢ / هما يبينان (يظهران) علاقة (تضاد / تناقض) غير متوقعة بين فعلين أو حدثين .
تستخدم هاتان الكلمتان عندما نتحدث عن التناقض بمعنى أنه عندما نريد أن نعبر عن شيء و نقيضه بحيث تكون النتيجة غير متوقعة (عكسية) و بمعنى آخر للربط بين جملتين حدثت واحدة منهما (الحدث الثاني) على الرغم من وجود فعل (الحدث الأول) كان من الممكن أن يمنع وقوع الحدث الثاني .

3/ (although) means (though) / (even though) / (in spite of) / (despite)

1/ How can you contrast with (**although**)?..... كيف يمكنك أن تناقض بـ

We usually mention the unexpected event in the second clause, not in the clause that comes after **although**.

نحن عادة نذكر الحدث غير المتوقع في الجملة الثانية، ليس في الجملة التي تأتي بعد **although**

Although بالرغم من أن يمكن كتابتها في بداية الجملة ، أو في الوسط

1/ We can put (**although**) at the beginning .

١ / يمكننا كتابة (**Although**) بداية الجملة الأولى (clause 1) التي تحتوي على (الحدث الأول) ثم نضع فاصلة و من ثم نكتب الجملة الثانية (clause 2) التي تحتوي على الحدث غير المتوقع.

1/ **Although** + (الجملة الأولى clause 1) + , + (الجملة الثانية clause 2)

A/ **Although** he worked hard , he didn't pass his exam. بالرغم من أنه عمل بجد ، هو لم ينجح في امتحانه .

B/ **Although** they are from the same family of animals, they are very different.

بالرغم من (مع أن) انها من نفس عائلة الحيوانات ، هي مختلفة جداً.

2/ We can also put (**although**) in the middle.

٢ / كما يمكننا كتابة (**although**) في الوسط ، وسيط ما بين الجملتين ،

بحيث يذكر الحدث الثاني (**الغير متوقع** ضمن الجملة الأولى (clause 1) أي قبل (**although**))

2/ (**although** + (clause 2) + (الجملة الأولى clause 1))

(**although** + (clause 2) + (الجملة الأولى clause 1))

A/ He didn't pass his exam **although** he worked hard .. هو لم ينجح في امتحانه بالرغم من أنه عمل بجد .

B/ They are very different, **although** they are from the same family of animals.

هي مختلفة جداً ، بالرغم من انها من نفس عائلة الحيوانات .

ملاحظة : قد يكون الفاعل في الجملتين هو نفسه كما في الأمثلة السابقة ، وقد يختلف أحياناً كما في المثال التالي

C/ **Although** it was raining , I went swimming . مع أن الطقس كان ممطر ، أنا ذهبت للسباحة .

2/ How can you contrast with (**however**)?.... كيف يمكنك أن تناقض بـ

We usually mention the unexpected event in the clause that comes after **however**.

نحن عادة نذكر الحدث غير المتوقع في الجملة التي تأتي بعد **however**

يمكن كتابتها في الوسط بطريقتين أو في النهاية ومع ذلك However

1/ We can put (**however**) in the middle .

١ / يمكننا كتابة (**however**) في الوسط بطريقتين ، بحيث يذكر الحدث الثاني (**الغير متوقع** ضمن الجملة الثانية (clause 2) أي بعد (**however**))

1/ (**however** + (clause 2) + (الجملة الأولى clause 1))

A/ He worked hard . **However** , he didn't pass his exam.. هو لم ينجح في امتحانه . مع ذلك ،

B/ They are from the same family of animals. **However** , they are very different.

هم من نفس عائلة الحيوانات . مع ذلك ، هي مختلفة جداً .

2/ (**however** + (clause 2) + (الجملة الأولى clause 1))

A/ He worked hard , **however** he didn't pass his exam.. هو لم ينجح في امتحانه . مع ذلك هو لم ينجح في امتحانه .

2/ We can also put (**however**) at the end.

٢ / كما يمكننا كتابة (**however**) في النهاية ،

بحيث يذكر الحدث الثاني (**الغير متوقع** ضمن الجملة الثانية (clause 2) أي قبل (**however**) مباشرة)

2/ (**however** + (clause 2) + (الجملة الأولى clause 1))

A/ He worked hard . He didn't pass his exam , **however** . مع ذلك . هو لم ينجح في امتحانه ،

B/ The book wasn't very interesting . I read it from start to finish , **however** .

الكتاب لم يكن ممتع جداً . أنا قرأته من البداية حتى النهاية ، مع ذلك .

3/ How can you contrast with (**whereas**)?.... كيف يمكنك أن تناقض بـ

• (**whereas**) we use it to show contrast between two ideas or facts.

• نستخدمها لإظهار التناقض (الاختلاف) بين فكرتين أو حقيقتين .

• (**Whereas**) this word can also used to give the same meaning as but.

• هذه الكلمة يمكن أيضاً أن تستخدم لإعطاء نفس معنى (**but** لكن) .

• It can only be used to describe the opposites. . يمكنها فقط أن تصف العكس .

يمكن كتابتها في البداية أو في الوسط بينما / لكن whereas

1/ We can put (**whereas**) at the beginning .

١ / يمكننا كتابة (**whereas**) في بداية الجملة الأولى (clause 1) التي تحتوي على (الحدث الأول) ثم نضع فاصلة و من ثم نكتب الجملة الثانية

(clause 2) التي تحتوي على الحدث المناقض (العكسي) .

1/ **Whereas** + (clause 1) + (الجملة الأولى clause 1)

A/ **Whereas** Fatima is hard working , Arwa is lazy.. في حين أن (بينما) فاطمة مجتهدة ، أروى كسولة .

B/ Whereas Arwa is lazy, Fatima is hard working , فاطمة مجتهدة ، فاطمة مجتهدة .
C/ Whereas Tariq worked hard , his brother didn't .. أخاه لم يفعل ، طارق عمل بجد ،

2/ We can also put (whereas) in the middle.

٢/ كما يمكننا كتابة (whereas) في الوسط ، وسيط ما بين الجملتين

2/ (clause 1) + , + although + (clause 2)
الجملة الثانية (clause 2) + , + although + (clause 1)

A / Fatima is hard working , whereas her sister is lazy.. فاطمة مجتهدة ، بينما (لكن) اختها كسولة .

B / Camels live mainly in hot countries like Arabia, whereas llamas live in mountainous parts of South America where it gets very, very cold.

الجمال تعيش في الغالب في دول حارة مثل العربية ، بينما اللاما تعيش في الأجزاء الجبلية من أمريكا الجنوبية حيثما يكون الطقس بارد جداً جداً.

ملاحظات : ١/ الفاعل في الجملتين في معظم الحالات يكون مختلف

٢/ كلمة (whereas) تصف لنا العكس
٣/ إذا كانت الجملة الثانية منفية فيجب أن نكتب whereas في البداية كما في المثال التالي :

C/ Whereas Tariq worked hard , his brother didn't .. أخاه لم يفعل ، طارق عمل بجد ،

لكن but
تكتب في الوسط

الجملة الثانية (clause 2) + , + but + (clause 1)

طارق عمل بجد ، لكن أخاه لم يفعل .. Tariq worked hard , but his brother didn't ..

و فيما يلي حل تمرين مهم من كتاب الواجب في صفحة ٥ خاص بكلمات الربط السابقة

C : Complete the sentences using (however / although) أكمل الجمل باستخدام (however / although)

1/ Football is a very popular game , however not everybody enjoys it .

كرة القدم هي لعبة شعبية جداً ، ومع ذلك ليس كل شخص يستمتع بها .

2/ Although I like fishing, I don't catch a lot of fish. بالرغم من أنني أحب الصيد ، أنا لم أمسك بالكثير من السمك .

3/ The factory manager gets very angry sometimes . However, he is very good at his job .

مدير المصنع يصبح غاضباً أحياناً . ومع ذلك ، هو جيد جداً في عمله .

4/ The book wasn't very interesting . I read it from start to finish , however .

Q : Choose the best alternatives : : اختر أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|------|---|------------|---|-----------|---|----------|
| 1 |he studied hard , he didn't pass the exam . | | | | | | | |
| | a | Thus | b | but | c | Therefore | d | Although |
| 2 | He sometimes gets angry . He is very kind , | | | | | | | |
| | a | too | b | as well as | c | whereas | d | however |
| 3 | I went swimming ,it was raining . | | | | | | | |
| | a | too | b | as well as | c | although | d | however |
| 4 |Khalid is tall , Ahmed is short . | | | | | | | |
| | a | too | b | as well as | c | whereas | d | however |

صفحة ٥ Page 5 كتاب التمارين Workbook

A : Read this paragraph about three sisters. Then complete the sentences :

اقرأ هذه الفقرة عن ثلاث أخوات . ثم أكمل الجمل :

Aisha is 16 years old. She has two sisters, Noura and Huda. Noura is 17 and Huda is 11. Noura is 1.78 meters and so is Aisha.

Noura is the oldest of the three. Although Aisha is younger than Noura,

she is as tall as her sister. Since she is only 11, Huda is the youngest of the three.

B : Write these sentences another way. Use words from the box :

اكتب هذه الجمل بطريقة أخرى . استخدم كلمات من الصندوق:

most like same not as

1/ Bill's car is white and Richard's is blue. سيارة بيل بيضاء و ريتشارد زرقاء .

Richard's car is **not the same** colour as Bill's. سيارة ريتشارد ليست نفس لون سيارة بيل.

2/ Two brothers, Ahmed and Hassan, got 90% in their English exam.

إخوان ، أحمد و حسان ، حصلوا على ٩٠٪ في امتحانها الإنجليزي .

Like Hassan, Ahmed got 90% in the examination. مثل حسان ، أحمد حصل على ٩٠٪ في الامتحان .

3/ My pen was not expensive, but my friend has a very expensive one.

قلمي لم يكن غالي الثمن ، لكن صديقي له واحد غالي جداً .

My pen was **not as expensive as** my friend's pen. قلمي لم يكن غالي مثل قلم صديقي .

4/ There are three classes in year 1 . Class A has 30 pupils, class B has 35 pupils and class C has 33 pupils.

Class B has **the most** pupils. الفصل ب فيه أكثر الطلاب.

و فيما يلي قاعدتين تحتويهما دروس الوحدة الأولى السابقة و هما :

Rule 1 : لا فائدة من / لا داعي لـthere is no point * : قاعدة

There is no point (لا فائدة من / لا داعي لـ) + in + V + ing +

Examples :

1- There is no point in getting upset . . لا داعي للغضب .

2- There is no point in shouting . . لا فائدة من الصراخ .

Q / Choose the best alternatives : اختر أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | |
|---|---|-----------|--------------|--------------|
| 1 | There is no point in | | | |
| | a | b | c | d |
| | shout | shouted | shouting | shouts |
| 2 | There is no pointgetting upset . | | | |
| | a | b | c | d |
| | to | in | On | for |
| 3 | There is no point in | | | |
| | a | b | c | d |
| | cry | crying | cries | cried |
| 4 | There is no point inArabic in the class . | | | |
| | a | b | c | d |
| | speak | spoke | speaking | speaks |
| 5 | There is no point | | | |
| | a | b | c | d |
| | to scream | in scream | in screaming | of screaming |

Rule 2 : هل تمنع *Would you mind : قاعدة

Would you mind + V (infinitive) + ing + هل تمنع ؟

Examples : إذا بدأ السؤال بـ (Would you mind) فيجب أن نكتب بعده فعل في المصدر مضافاً له ing .

1- Would you mind helping us ? هل تمنع في مساعدتنا ؟

2- Would mind opening the door , please ? هل تمنع في فتح الباب ، من فضلك ؟

Q : Choose the best alternatives :

| | | | | |
|---|--|----------|---|----------|
| 1 | Would you mindus ? | | | |
| | a | visiting | b | to visit |
| | c | visited | d | |
| 2 | Would you mindme , please ? | | | |
| | a | help | b | helping |
| | c | help | d | helps |
| 3 | Would you mindthe window , please ? | | | |
| | a | to close | b | Close |
| | c | closing | d | closed |
| 4 | Would you mindyour mobile , please ? | | | |
| | a | us | b | to use |
| | c | using | d | Uses |

1.10

خلاصة لغوية 2٢ Language review

Page 7 صفحة

When you are describing something in writing, it is important that you paint a picture in the reader's mind.

عندما تصف شيء ما بالكتابة ، فإنه من المهم أن ترسم صورة في عقل (ذاكرة) القارئ .

1 Description

الوصف

قاعدة Rule

- adjective order.

ترتيب الصفات

When using two or more adjectives to describe something, follow this order:

عند استخدام صفتين أو أكثر لوصف شيء ما ، اتبع هذا الترتيب :

* يوجد لدينا سبعة أنواع من الصفات في اللغة الانجليزية ، و لترتيبها في الجمل اتبع التالي :-

| NO. | أنواع الصفات | أمثلة للصفات التابعة لكل نوع منها | | | |
|-----|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1- | الرأي Opinion | 1- good جيد | 2- bad سيئ | 3- excellent ممتاز | 4- nice لطيف (رائع) |
| | | 5- beautiful جميل | 6- ugly قبيح | 7- handsome وسيم | 8- slow بطيء |
| | | 9- fast سريع | 10- kind لطيف (طيب) | 11- easy سهل | 12- difficult صعب |
| | | 13- lovely رائع | 14- wonderful رائع | 15- amazing مذهش | |
| | | 16- fantastic رائع | 17- fabulous رائع | 18- attractive جذاب | |
| | | 19- horrible مروع | 20- awful سيئ | 21- terrible فظيع | |
| 2- | الحجم Size البنية (build) | 1- small صغير | 2- big كبير | 3- large كبير | 4- giant عملاق |
| | | 5- heavy ثقيل | 6- huge ضخم | 7- tiny صغير جداً | 8- long طويل |
| | | 9- tall طويل | 10- short قصير | 11- fat سمين | 12- slim نحيف |
| | | | | | 13- thin ضعيف |
| 3- | العمر Age | 1- young صغير السن | 2- old كبير السن | 3- new حديث | 4- modern حديث |
| | | 5- traditional تقليدي | 6- ancient قديم السن | 7- five-year-old | ... في الخامسة من العمر |
| 4- | الشكل Shape | 1- round دائري | 2- square مربع | 3- rectangular مستطيل | |
| | | 4- triangular مثلث | 5- straight مستقيم | 6- curved مقوس | |
| | | 7- oval بيضاوي | 8- cubic مكعب | 9- cylindrical اسطواني | |
| 5- | اللون Colour | 1- black أسود | 2- blue أزرق | 3- brown بني | 4- green أخضر |
| | | 5- grey رمادي | 6- red أحمر | 7- white أبيض | 8- orange برتقالي |
| | | 9- yellow أصفر | 10- pink وردي | 11- fair أشقر | 12- blond أشقر |
| | | 13- purple أرجواني | 14- dark blue أزرق غامق | 15- light blue أزرق فاتح | ... |
| 6- | الجنسية Nationality | 1- Yemeni يعني | 2- Egyptian مصري | 3- French فرنسي | |
| | | 4- American أمريكي | 5- British بريطاني | 6- Spanish إسباني | |
| | | 7- Japanese ياباني | 8- Chinese صيني | | |
| 7- | المادة Material | 1- metal معدن | 2- wood خشب | 3- plastic بلاستيك | |
| | | 4- glass زجاج | 5- paper ورق | 6- cloth قماش | |
| | | 7- rubber مطاط | 8- leather جلد | 9- iron حديد | 10- silk حرير |

ملاحظات مهمة : لترتيب الصفات علينا أن نتبع ما يلي :

١/ نحفظ ترتيب الصفات ولحفظ هذه العبارة (راح عمر شلجم) بحيث أن (را - رأي) - (ح - حجم) - (عمر - للعمر)

(ش - شكل) - (ل - لون) - (ج - جنسية) - (م - مادة)

٢/ إذا أنت إحدى أدوات التعريف من ضمن الكلمات المراد ترتيبها فعلياً أن نضعها في البداية (أي بعد الفاعل و الفعل)

(a \ an \ the) أو إحدى هذه الكلمات : (a pair of \ some \ may \ a lot of)

1/ S فاعل + v فعل + adjective (صفة) + er + and + adjective (صفة) + er

Examples: أمثلة: 1/ He drove faster and faster. هو قاد أسرع فأسرع.
2/ It is getting smaller and smaller. . هو أصبح أصغر فأصغر . .

2/ S فاعل + v فعل + + more + and + more + adjective (صفة)

Examples: أمثلة: 1/ I became more and more worried. . أنا أصبحت قلقاً أكثر وأكثر . .
2/ The prices are getting more and more expensive. . الأسعار تفلو أكثر وأكثر . .

3/ S فاعل + v فعل + + worse + and + worse +

4/ S فاعل + v فعل + + less + and + less +....

5/up, up and up /down, down and down

مثال example

(Up, up and up went the balloon, until it was a small dot in the sky) .
عالياً ، أعلى فاعلي ذهب البالون ، حتى كان نقطة صغيرة في السماء

Q : Choose the best alternatives : اختار أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|----------------|---|------------------|---|------------------|---|-------------|
| 1 | I became more andworried . | | | | | | | |
| | a | more | b | most | c | much | d | many |
| 2 | The weather is gettingand colder. | | | | | | | |
| | a | cold | b | colder | c | coldest | d | more |
| 3 | The prices became and..... . | | | | | | | |
| | a | less / little | b | much / much | c | many / many | d | less / less |
| 4 | It is gettingand | | | | | | | |
| | a | worse , worse | b | bad , bad | c | best , best | d | ----- |
| 5 | The situation is gettingand | | | | | | | |
| | a | worse , worse | b | bad , bad | c | worst , worst | d | good , good |
| 6 | The balloon went,and | | | | | | | |
| | a | up , up and up | b | up , down and up | c | down , up and up | d | ----- |

الفقرة الثانية من الخلاصة هي :

2 / Information focus تغيير تركيز معلومة

The Rule : القاعدة

You can change the focus of a sentence by moving adjectival or adverbial phrases .

يمكنك أن تغير تركيز المعلومة للجمل بنقل الجمل الوصفية أو الظرفية.

You may want to do this for reasons of style or emphasis.

و قد تريد أن تفعل هذا من أجل أسباب الأسلوب أو التأكيد . أو من أجل جذب انتباه المستمع إلى الجملة الأهم.

يمكننا تغيير تركيز المعلومة بنقل الجملة الوصفية أو الظرفية إلى بداية الجملة أو نهايتها (حسب مكان وجودها)
و المقصود بالجملة الوصفية و الظرفية هو :

أولاً : الجملة الوصفية (adjectival) : هي جملة عادة ما تتضمن صفة (adjective) ، و تتضمن الجملة أحد أفعال be و لا يوجد فعل رئيسي في الجملة الوصفية (عادة) .

ثانياً : العبارة الظرفية (adverbial)

هي جملة تحتوي على (ظرف زمان أو ظرف مكان أو ظرف طريقة (كيفية / أسلوب)

بحيث ستقوم بنقل (تحريك) العبارات الوصفية أو الظرفية مع مراعاة الشروط التالية و التي هي

١/ عدم تبديل مكاني الفعل و الفاعل (يبقى ترتيبهما كما هو بعد تحريك العبارة الظرفية) و ذلك في الحالات التالية

• وجود كلمة (there) قبل تحريك العبارة الظرفية، أو وجود (إضافة) كلمة (there) بعد تحريك العبارة الظرفية
بحيث يجب عليك أن تقوم بحذف كلمة (there) إذا أنت بداية الجملة بعد تحريك العبارة الظرفية و لا تقوم بالتبديل بين مكاني الفعل و الفاعل ، بل يبقى الترتيب كما هو ، كما في المثال الأول من كتاب الحصة صفحة ٧ .

كما يجب عليك أن تقوم بإضافة كلمة (there) بعد تحريك العبارة الظرفية إلى نهاية الجملة ، إذا بدأت الجملة بإحدى الكلمات التالية
(some / many / much / a few / a little / a / an ... / one / two / three /)

و سيبقى ترتيب الفعل و الفاعل كما هما (لن يتم التبديل) لأننا سنضيف كلمة (there) بعد التحريك.

كما في الفقرة رقم ٤ في التمرين الخاص بالدرس في صفحة ١١ من كتاب الواجب ، و لا تقوم بالتبديل بين مكاني الفعل و الفاعل .

- وجود فعل رئيسي متعدي في الجملة .
- وجود أحد أفعال (am / is / are / was / were) be بشرط وجود فعل رئيسي متعدي .

٢/ أن تقوم بتبديل مكان الفعل المساعد و الفاعل في حالتين وهما

١/ وجود أحد أفعال be المساعدة (am / is / are / was / were) بشرط عدم وجود فعل رئيسي متعدي

٢/ وجود فعل رئيسي بشرط أن يكون هذا الفعل غير متعدي مثل (run / walk / sleep / go / move / live / die)

ملحوظة : يقصد بالفعل غير المتعدّي هو فعل لا يأتي بعده مفعول به .

| Examples (على الأفعال المتعدية) : أمثلة | Examples (على الأفعال الغير متعدية) : أمثلة |
|---|---|
| 1/ I <u>do</u> my homework. أنا <u>أعمل</u> واجبي المنزلي . | 1/ I <u>go</u> to school. أنا <u>أذهب</u> إلى المدرسة . |
| 2/ She <u>helps</u> her mother. هي <u>تساعد</u> أمها . | 2/ She <u>sleeps</u> at nine o'clock. هي <u>تنام</u> في الساعة التاسعة . |
| 3/ He <u>played</u> football. هو <u>لعب</u> كرة القدم . | 3/ He <u>run</u> fast. هو <u>يجري</u> بسرعة . |
| لاحظ وجود مفعول به في كل جملة من الجمل السابقة ، لأن الأفعال التي استخدمناها في الجمل في العادة لا يد أن يتبعها مفعول به ، و بالتالي تسمى أفعال متعدية. | فكما تلاحظ عدم وجود مفعول به في كل جملة من الجمل السابقة ، لأن الأفعال التي استخدمناها في الجمل في العادة لا يتبعها مفعول به ، و إنما يتبعها حروف جر و التكملة لها أو غيرها (ظرف مكان أو زمان أو حال) . و بالتالي تسمى أفعال غير متعدية |

و الآن بعد أن تعرفت على شروط تغيير مركز المعلومة في الجمل و معنى الأفعال المتعدية و غير المتعدية ، و المقصود من العبارات الوصفية و الظرفية ، سنقوم بتطبيقها على كلا النوعين :

أولاً : الجملة الوصفية (adjectival) : هي جملة عادة ما تتضمن صفة (adjective) ، و تتضمن الجملة أحد أفعال be و لا يوجد فعل رئيسي في الجملة الوصفية (عادة) .

أمثلة : Examples :

1/ Ali is very sad . علي كان حزين جداً .

كلمة (sad) هي صفة و لتغيير مركز المعلومة سنقوم بنقلها إلى بداية الجملة مع كلمة (very) ثم نضع فاصلة كالتالي

Very sad , is Ali . كان علي .

لاحظ أن موقع الفعل و الفاعل قد تغيرا أي أننا بدأنا بكتابة (is) أولاً ثم كتبنا الفاعل (Ali) و هذا سيحدث مع جميع الجمل

التي تتضمن أفعال مساعدة be (is / are / was / were) بشرط عدم تضمينها لفعل رئيسي متعدي

2/ My car was too old . سيارتي كانت قديمة جداً .

Too old , was my car . قديمة جداً ، كانت سيارتي (الجملة بعد تغيير مركز المعلومة)

ثانياً : العبارة الظرفية (adverbial)

هي جمل تحتوي على (ظرف زمان أو ظرف مكان أو ظرف طريقة (كيفية / اسلوب) بحيث ستقوم بنقل العبارات الظرفية مع مراعاة الشروط السابقة و المذكورة أعلاه ، مع العلم أنه في الجمل التي تحتوي على عبارات ظرفية تتضمن غالباً أحد أفعال be أو فعل متعدي أو غير متعدي و يجب التركيز عليهما

| أنواع الظروف | مثل | أمثلة : Examples : |
|--|--|---|
| 1/ Adverb of time and adverb frequency ظرف الزمان و التكرار | yesterday - ago / next - tomorrow - soon - shortly / often - always - never - sometimes - seldom - rarely / today - tonight - early - late - ever - already / recently - still - since - then - generally - before - after / in the morning / at night /.. | 1- He <u>always</u> helps me. . هو دائماً يساعدني . 2- I saw him <u>yesterday</u> . 3- We'll <u>soon</u> find him . و ستكون الجمل السابقة بعد تغيير مركز المعلومة كالتالي مع العلم أن جميع الجمل تحتوي على أفعال متعدية لذلك لن يتم تبديل مكاني الفعل و الفاعل: 1/ <u>Always</u> , he helps me . . دائماً ، هو يساعدني . 2/ <u>Yesterday</u> , I saw him . 3/ <u>Soon</u> , we'll find him . |
| 2/ adverb of place ظرف المكان | here هنا / there هناك / abroad في الخارج / somewhere ما مكان / everywhere كل مكان / nowhere لا مكان / together / away بعيداً / through / at home / (in.... / on..... / under / above ... / down / up ... / to | 1/ I am <u>here</u> . . أنا هنا 2/ It was <u>there</u> . 3/ I looked for him <u>everywhere</u> . و ستكون الجمل السابقة بعد تغيير مركز المعلومة كالتالي مع العلم أنه سيتم تبديل مكاني الفعل و الفاعل في الجملتين (٢ / ١) أما في الجملة (٣) فسيفعل الفعل و الفاعل مكانيهما لوجود فعل متعدي (looked) : 1/ <u>Here</u> , am I . . هنا ، أكون أنا . 2/ <u>There</u> , was it . 3/ <u>Everywhere</u> , I looked for him . |
| 3/ adverb of manner ظرف الحال (الطريقة / الكيفية / الاسلوب) | well / politely / quickly / slowly / badly / clearly / happily / carefully / hardly | 1-He is talking to you <u>frankly</u> . هو يتحدث إليك بصراحة . 2-He is driving the car <u>recklessly</u> . و ستكون الجمل السابقة بعد تغيير مركز المعلومة كالتالي مع العلم أنه لن يتم تبديل مكاني الفعل و الفاعل لوجود أفعال متعدية: 1/ <u>Frankly</u> , he is talking to you . 2/ <u>Recklessly</u> , he is driving the car. |

و بالنسبة للأمثلة الموجودة في كتاب الحصة و هما :

1/ There were lots of goats on top of the hill . . يوجد هناك الكثير من الماعز على قمة التلة .
لاحظ أن الجملة تحتوي على عبارة ظرفية مكانية هي (on top of the hill) و تعتبر عبارة ظرفية مكانية لوجود حرف الجر (on) + اسم مكان (قمة التلة) ستكتب في البداية ثم نكتب بقية الجملة مع مراعاة الشروط و هي أن تحذف كلمة there ، و لن يتم التبديل بين مكاني الفعل و الفاعل لوجود كلمة (there) في الجملة بحيث ستصبح الجملة بعد تغيير مركز المعلومة كالتالي :

On top of the hill were lots of goats .

2/ Some of the hills were to the right of the road . . بعض التلال كانت إلى يمين الطريق .
لاحظ أن الجملة تحتوي على عبارة ظرفية مكانية هي (to the right of the road) ستكتب في البداية ثم نكتب بقية الجملة مع مراعاة الشروط ، فكما تلاحظ وجود (were) أحد أفعال be و عدم وجود فعل رئيسي متعدي في الجملة ، و بالتالي يجب أن يتم تبديل مكان الفعل المساعد (were) مع مكان الفاعل (some of the hills) مع حذف (of the) من بعد كلمة (some) بحيث ستصبح الجملة كالتالي :

To the right of the road were some of the hills .

و فيما يلي تمرين من كتاب الواجب صفحة ١١

B : Re-write these sentences to change the information focus: أعد كتابة هذه الجمل بتغيير مركز (تركيز) المعلومة

1-He felt very happy looking at the wonderful view .

Looking at the wonderful view he felt very happy :

توضيح الإجابة السابقة : الجملة الظرفية هنا هي التي وضعنا تحته الخط لذلك تم نقلها إلى بداية الجملة ، و لم يتم التبديل بين مكاني الفعل و الفاعل لعدم وجود أحد أفعال be ، و لوجود فعل متعدي (looking) .

2-There were many boats on the water.

On the water were many boats.

توضيح الإجابة السابقة : الجملة الظرفية هنا هي التي وضعت تحتها الخط لذلك تم نقلها إلى بداية الجملة ، و قمنا بحذف كلمة (there) و لوجود كلمة (there) لن نقوم بالتبديل بين مكاني الفعل (were) و الفاعل (many boats) .

3-After eating his dinner, he went to look at his cows.

He went to look at his cows after eating his dinner.

توضيح الإجابة السابقة : الجملة الظرفية هنا (after eating his dinner) لأنها تحتوي على الظرف after لذلك تم نقلها إلى نهاية الجملة ، و لم يتم التبديل بين مكاني الفعل و الفاعل لعدم وجود أحد أفعال be و لوجود فعل رئيسي متعدي (eating)

4-In the distance were some high mountains.

There were some of the high mountains in the distance.

توضيح الإجابة السابقة : الجملة الظرفية هنا هي التي وضعت تحتها الخط لذلك تم نقلها إلى نهاية الجملة ، و لوجود كلمة (some) في الجملة الأولى فيجب علينا أن نضيف كلمة (there) في الجمل التي يتطلب وجودها بعد نقل العبارة الظرفية إلى النهاية و لن نقوم بالتبديل بين مكاني الفعل (were) و الفاعل (some high mountains) لوجود كلمة (there) و سنضيف فقط (of the) بعد some.

5-The cold, clear stream ran down the valley .

Down the valley, ran the cold , clear stream .

توضيح الإجابة السابقة : الجملة الظرفية هنا (down the valley) لأنها تحتوي على الظرف down لذلك تم نقلها إلى بداية الجملة ، و سيتم التبديل بين مكاني الفعل و الفاعل لوجود فعل رئيسي غير متعدي (ran) مع العلم أن الفاعل هو (the cold, clear stream) و فيما يلي تمرين على الفقرة السابقة بالطريقة الوزارية (الأتمتة)

Q : Choose the best alternatives : : اختر أفضل الخيارات

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|--------------------------------|------------|---|--------|---|---------|---|----------|
| 1 | To my leftsome of hills. | | | | | | | |
| | a | there were | b | were | c | was | d | There |
| 2 | Politely ,..... . | | | | | | | |
| | a | Ali is | b | is Ali | c | Ali | d | Ali were |
| 3 | Frankly..... talking to you . | | | | | | | |
| | a | he is | b | is he | c | were he | d | he |

و فيما يلي ما يخص الفقرة الثالثة و الأخيرة من الخلاصة اللغوية في صفحة ٧ من كتاب الحصة :

3 / joining sentences with the -ing form ربط الجمل

The Rule : القاعدة

لربط جملتين باستخدام (ing) نتبع الخطوات التالية :

- 1- نكتب الجملة الأولى كما هي إلى النهاية .
- 2- نكتب بدل النقطة الموجودة في نهاية الجملة الأولى فاصلة (,) .
- 3- نحذف الفاعل والفعل المساعد : (were , was , are , is , am) الموجودين في بداية الجملة الثانية
- 4- ثم نكتب بعد الفاصلة مباشرة الفعل الرئيسي الذي بعد الفعل المساعد (الفعل المضاف له ing) في الجملة الثانية ونواصل بقية الجملة الثانية كما هي إلى الأخير .
- 5- إذا كان الفعل الذي في الجملة الثانية في التصريف الثاني (ماضي) فنقوم بكتابة التصريف الأول له ثم نضيف إليه ing كما في المثال التالي

Q : Join these sentences using the -ing form of the verb .

اربط هذه الجمل باستخدام (ing) مع الفعل .

| | |
|--|--|
| The birds followed the plough. They looked for something to eat. | <u>الإجابة :</u> The birds followed the plough , looking for something to eat . |
|--|--|

صفحة ١١ Page 11 كتاب التمارين Workbook

Q : Choose the best alternatives : اختار افضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|---------------|---|----------|---|--------------------|---|-----------|
| 1 | The birds followed the plough ,for something to eat . | | | | | | | |
| | a | looking | b | look | c | They were looking | d | No answer |
| 2 | The men felt happy,in the sun after work. | | | | | | | |
| | a | lied | b | lying | c | They were lying | d | in lay |
| 3 | Rashed swam near his house ,the cool water . | | | | | | | |
| | a | enjoying | b | enjoyed | c | enjoys | d | to enjoy |
| 4 | The children ran out of school ,and shouting happily . | | | | | | | |
| | a | were laughing | B | laughing | c | They were laughing | d | laugh |

و فيما يلي تمرين شامل لقواعد الوحدة الأولى بطريقة الأتمة الجديدة :

Q 2 : Choose the best alternatives :

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|--|-------------|---|------------------|---|------------------|---|----------------|
| 1 | This dress is madeChinese people . | | | | | | | |
| | a | in | b | from | c | of | d | By |
| 2 | The bus is madeEgypt . | | | | | | | |
| | a | in | b | from | c | of | d | by |
| 3 | It is made Japanese . | | | | | | | |
| | a | in | b | from | c | of | d | by |
| 4 | A chicken is a kindbirds . | | | | | | | |
| | a | of | b | by | c | with | d | at |
| 5 | The word (same) is followeda noun not an adjective . | | | | | | | |
| | a | of | b | by | c | with | d | at |
| 6 | Don't lookyour book . It's with me . | | | | | | | |
| | a | to | b | in | c | on | d | for |
| 7 | There is no pointgetting upset . | | | | | | | |
| | a | to | b | in | c | on | d | for |
| 8 | Holiday means not beingwork . | | | | | | | |
| | a | to | b | in | c | at | d | for |
| 9 | The word (difficult) is an adjective whose noun is | | | | | | | |
| | a | difficult | b | difficults | c | difficulter | d | difficulty |
| 10 | The word (lost) is an adjective whose noun is | | | | | | | |
| | a | loss | b | lose | c | lost | d | losed |
| 11 | The word (valuable) is an adjective whose noun is | | | | | | | |
| | a | value | b | valuable | c | valuible | d | valueful |
| 12 | She is the sameas Fatima . | | | | | | | |
| | a | beauty | b | beautiful | c | beautifully | d | more beautiful |
| 13 | Khalid isthan Abdullah . | | | | | | | |
| | a | intelligent | b | more intelligent | c | most intelligent | d | intelligently |
| 14 | Arwa is asas Hana'a . | | | | | | | |
| | a | good | b | gooder | c | better | d | best |
| 15 | The wordhas a silent letter . | | | | | | | |
| | a | information | b | hour | c | help | d | come |
| 16 | This word isn't countable noun . | | | | | | | |
| | a | luggage | b | bags | c | pen | d | man |
| 17 | Wesoonthem . | | | | | | | |
| | a | have / find | b | will / find | c | would / found | d | had / find |
| 18 | Football is a very popular game ,not everybody enjoys it . | | | | | | | |
| | a | although | b | furthermore | c | however | d | as well as |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|---------------|---|-------------------|---|--------------------|---|---------------------|
| 19 | The book wasn't very interesting . I read it from start to finish, | | | | | | | |
| | a | although | b | moreover | c | however | d | as well |
| 20 | I like fishing , I don't catch a lot of fish . | | | | | | | |
| | a | Although | b | Furthermore | c | Also | d | Therefore |
| 21 |Ahmed likes swimming , his friend doesn't . | | | | | | | |
| | a | Although | b | Whereas | c | Like | d | Unlike |
| 22 |Adel , Ahmed is interested in sports . | | | | | | | |
| | a | Although | b | Like | c | Whereas | d | Another reason for |
| 23 |Adel , Ahmed is not interested in sports . | | | | | | | |
| | a | Although | b | Like | c | Whereas | d | Unlike |
| 24 | She is thegirl in the class | | | | | | | |
| | a | tall | b | taller | c | tallest | d | a tallest |
| 25 | He droveand | | | | | | | |
| | a | fast and fast | b | fastly and fastly | c | faster and faster | d | fastest and fastest |
| 26 | Nashwan isthan his friend . | | | | | | | |
| | a | good | b | better | c | best | d | gooder |
| 27 | He has justthe plane . | | | | | | | |
| | a | got out of | b | got of | c | got off | d | get into |
| 28 | The word () can be both a verb and a noun . | | | | | | | |
| | a | shape | b | lost | c | describe | d | possibility |
| 29 | The past of crossbreed is | | | | | | | |
| | a | crossbred | b | cross | c | crossbreed | d | crossbreded |
| 30 | The contraction of I will is | | | | | | | |
| | a | I'd | b | I'll | c | I've | d | I'm |
| 31 | The abbreviation of kilometers is | | | | | | | |
| | a | k.G | b | k.m | c | K.w | d | k.p.H |
| 32 | They give the same meaning as (but)and | | | | | | | |
| | a | like / Unlike | b | same / as | c | however / although | d | whereas / and |
| 33 | They are not adjectives but they are used to make comparisonsand..... | | | | | | | |
| | a | like / Unlike | b | same / as | c | and / but | d | whereas / and |
| 34 | Her shirt is made.....silk . | | | | | | | |
| | a | in | b | by | c | with | d | of |
| 35 | A farmer often uses a plough to turnthe soil . | | | | | | | |
| | a | up | b | over | c | down | d | back |
| 36 | A cowus milk . | | | | | | | |
| | a | give | b | gives | c | gaves | d | given |
| 38 | Her hair isn't as long as | | | | | | | |
| | a | your | b | you | c | yours | d | our |
| 39 | Wesoon travel . | | | | | | | |
| | a | are | b | have | c | will | d | had |
| 40 | Faron the horizon was a wall of white mist . | | | | | | | |
| | a | up | b | over | c | way | d | away |
| 41 | We add () to make the word (appear) negative . | | | | | | | |
| | a | im | b | un | c | mis | d | dis |
| 42 | I began to feel | | | | | | | |
| | a | hunger | b | hungry | c | hungerly | d | nothing |
| 43 | Helate yesterday . | | | | | | | |
| | a | don't | b | doesn't | c | wasn't | d | didn't |
| 44 | They were lookingsomething to eat . | | | | | | | |
| | a | up | b | after | c | for | d | at |
| 45 | Hethe car and drove back down the valley . | | | | | | | |
| | a | got off | b | got out off | c | got on | d | got into |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|--|-----------|---|--------------|---|-------------|---|----------------|
| 46 | Her hair is the sameas yours . | | | | | | | |
| | a | big | b | black | c | colour | d | beautiful |
| 47 |she studied hard, she didn't succeed in the exam . | | | | | | | |
| | a | Like | b | Whereas | c | Although | d | Ing-form |
| 48 | This lesson hasimportance as that lesson . | | | | | | | |
| | a | the same | b | like | c | as | d | although |
| 49 | He is interested in sports, Ahmed . | | | | | | | |
| | a | same | b | however | c | llke | d | unlike |
| 50 | She isn't good at Arabic, Hana'a . | | | | | | | |
| | a | same | b | although | c | unlike | d | however |
| 51 | If the weather is misty, it isn't easy to seeyou are going . | | | | | | | |
| | a | where | b | what | c | which | d | who |
| 52 | We saw himhour ago . | | | | | | | |
| | a | a | b | an | c | the | d | any |
| 53 | A camel is coveredhair . | | | | | | | |
| | a | In | b | on | c | by | d | from |
| 54 | He doesn't havemoney . | | | | | | | |
| | a | some | b | a few | c | a number of | d | any |
| 55 | The word () has silent letters . . الكلمة () فيها حروف صامتة . | | | | | | | |
| | a | big | b | plough | c | cackling | d | liger |
| 56 | The word (well-known) is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 57 | There is no point in | | | | | | | |
| | a | cry | b | cried | c | crying | d | cries |
| 58 | We saw a number ofthere . | | | | | | | |
| | a | wolf | b | wolfs | c | wolfes | d | wolves |
| 59 | The students left the class,happily . | | | | | | | |
| | a | shouting | b | are shouting | c | shouted | d | were shouting |
| 60 | A cow's mouth never stops | | | | | | | |
| | a | to move | b | moving | c | movement | d | moveable |
| 61 | We add () to make the word (chew) a noun . | | | | | | | |
| | a | ed | b | s | c | ness | d | ing |
| 62 | Would you mindme, please? | | | | | | | |
| | a | help | b | helping | c | to help | d | helped |
| 63 | Heyet . | | | | | | | |
| | a | arrive | b | arriving | c | is arrive | d | hasn't arrived |
| 64 | The word () is uncountable noun . | | | | | | | |
| | a | luggage | b | desert | c | liger | d | shape |
| 65 | I decided to go for a <u>drive</u> . The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 66 | He saw a number of chickens.....noisily . | | | | | | | |
| | a | ploughing | b | singing | c | cackling | d | grazing |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|--|-------|---|--------|---|-----------|---|---------|
| 67 | The boys ran in the streets,to catch the bus. | | | | | | | |
| | a | tries | b | to try | c | tried | d | trying |
| 68 | Jalal isn't as.....as his friend. | | | | | | | |
| | a | fast | b | faster | c | fastness | d | fastest |
| 69 | A forest isthan a wood. | | | | | | | |
| | a | small | b | large | c | larger | d | largest |
| 70 | After hehis lunch, he went to do his homework. | | | | | | | |
| | a | eat | b | eating | c | had eaten | d | eats |
| 71 |sandwiches that my mother makes are delicious. | | | | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|--------------|---|--------------|---|---------------|---|------------------|
| | a | a | b | an | c | the | d | |
| 72 | Those two buildings areheight. | | | | | | | |
| | a | as | b | unlike | c | like | d | the same |
| 73 | The farmer turnsthe soil with his tractor. | | | | | | | |
| | a | over | b | on | c | up | d | above |
| 74 |Waleed was sick, he played football with his brother. | | | | | | | |
| | a | as well | b | therefore | c | although | d | because |
| 75 | He never.....what's up on Fridays. | | | | | | | |
| | a | use | b | uses | c | used | d | using |
| 76 | You haveremove the scales of the fish before cooking. | | | | | | | |
| | a | on | b | of | c | to | d | in |
| 77 |Ashraf plays football, his brother doesn't. | | | | | | | |
| | a | Whereas | b | However | c | Also | d | Therefore |
| 78 | The strongest earthquakein Dhamar in 1982. | | | | | | | |
| | a | has happened | b | happened | c | happens | d | happening |
| 79 | He is a veryrunner. | | | | | | | |
| | a | well | b | quick | c | quickly | d | slowly |
| 80 | Howwater is there in the tanker? | | | | | | | |
| | a | more | b | little | c | much | d | many |
| 81 | Both students have the same..... | | | | | | | |
| | a | intelligent | b | Intelligence | c | intelligently | d | more intelligent |
| 82 | The camel is thepatient animal. | | | | | | | |
| | a | less | b | more | c | little | d | most |
| 83 | Theyup late yesterday for school. | | | | | | | |
| | a | get | b | got | c | getting | d | gotten |
| 84 | We arethe news about the recent earthquake. | | | | | | | |
| | a | watch | b | watched | c | watches | d | watching |
| 85 | Could youthese sentences? | | | | | | | |
| | a | complete | b | completed | c | Completely | d | completes |
| 86 | Before he left, Ihim a lot of questions. | | | | | | | |
| | a | had asked | b | asks | c | ask | d | asking |
| 87 | Dana won'tthe exams, because she didn't study well. | | | | | | | |
| | a | pass | b | passes | c | passed | d | passing |
| 88 | Dealwith those kids. | | | | | | | |
| | a | soft | b | softly | c | softer | d | softness |
| 89 | She neverthe answer. | | | | | | | |
| | a | know | b | knew | c | knowing | d | knows |
| 90 | Animals areinto families. | | | | | | | |
| | a | classify | b | classified | c | classifying | d | |
| 91 | Sameer isof giving up his work. | | | | | | | |
| | a | think | b | thinks | c | thinking | d | thought |
| 92 | We don't havetime to finish the assignment. | | | | | | | |
| | a | many | b | few | c | some | d | any |
| 93 | My friend always gets thescores. | | | | | | | |
| | a | good | b | best | c | better | d | less |
| 94 | Ahmed's hair is asas mine. | | | | | | | |
| | a | long | b | longer | c | length | d | lengthen |
| 95 | After heuniversity, he worked as a doctor. | | | | | | | |
| | a | finish | b | had finished | c | finishes | d | finishing |
| 96 | We are interested inEnglish. | | | | | | | |
| | a | speak | b | speaks | c | speaking | d | spoke |

| | | | | | | | | | |
|-----|---|---|-----------------|---|----------|---|--------------|---|---------------|
| 97 | Ahmed was bornApril 29th. | a | In | b | on | c | at | d | of |
| 98 |he was sick, he went to work. | a | but | b | because | c | so | d | although |
| 99 | The fence of our house is | a | high | b | higher | c | highly | d | highest |
| 100 | Nursesafter patients in hospital. | a | look | b | looks | c | looking | d | |
| 101 | My son hashis father's car since 2020. | a | driving | b | drives | c | drove | d | been driving |
| 102 | He is asas a horse. | a | strong | b | strength | c | strengthen | d | stronger |
| 103 | Sheher homework yet. | a | hasn't finished | b | finished | c | has finished | d | have finished |
| 104 | Do we havesugar left? | a | some | b | many | c | any | d | few |
| 105 | After theytheir homework, they watched T.V. | a | had done | b | do | c | are doing | d | done |

الوحدة الثانية Unit 2

2.5

Language review 3 خلاصة لغوية 3

Page صفحة 12

1 Use of the Passive

استخدام المبني للمجهول

You use the Passive when you want to make the thing done more important than the person who does it.

Examples: The doctors let Ed Shaw out of hospital. →
Ed Shaw was let out of hospital.
The police arrested a man for dangerous driving. →
A man was arrested for dangerous driving.

عزيزي الطالب سنقوم بشرح كيفية تحويل جملة من مبنية للمعلوم إلى مبنية للمجهول في زمن الماضي البسيط فقط ، أما بالنسبة لبقية الأزمنة فقم بالرجوع إلى درس المبني للمجهول (في قسم القواعد) لاحقاً في هذا الكتاب لتعرف المزيد عن هذا الموضوع

زمن الماضي البسيط The past simple tense

| مبنى للمعلوم Active | مبنى للمجهول Passive |
|---|--|
| مفعول به O + التصريف الثاني / فعل ماضي (past) V + فاعل S | تصريف ثالث للفعل (was / were) + مفعول به O |
| أمثلة : 1/ Khalid bought a car last week . خالد اشترى سيارة الاسبوع الماضي . 2/ Fatima wrote the homework yesterday. 3/ All visited the Pyramids in 2010. | أمثلة : 1/ A car was bought last week by Khalid . سيارة اشترى الاسبوع الماضي بواسطة خالد . 2/ The homework was written by Fatima yesterday. 3/ The Pyramids were visited by Ali in 2010. |
| مفعول به O + فعل في المصدر (V.(inf.) + didn't + فاعل S | تصريف ثالث (wasn't / weren't) + مفعول به O |
| أمثلة : 1/ He didn't explain the rule . 2/ We didn't find Ali yesterday . | أمثلة : 1/ The rule wasn't explained by him . 2/ Ali wasn't found yesterday by us . |

اختار افضل الخيارات : : Choose the best alternatives : Q

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|-------------|---|--------------|---|--------------|---|------------------|
| 1 | The new hospitalby the prime Minister last week. | | | | | | | |
| | a | open | b | opened | c | Is opened | d | was opened |
| 2 | These applesyesterday, so they must be fresh. | | | | | | | |
| | a | were bought | b | bought | c | are bought | d | are being bought |
| 3 | A nice presentto me two days ago. | | | | | | | |
| | a | give | b | is given | c | was given | d | given |
| 4 | My homework.....two hours ago. | | | | | | | |
| | a | finished | b | is finished | c | was finished | d | finishes |
| 5 | Last Thursday two small childrenkilled by a speeding car. | | | | | | | |
| | a | are | b | were | c | have | d | was |
| 6 | A manfor dangerous driving. | | | | | | | |
| | a | arrest | b | was arrested | c | arresting | d | were arrested |
| 7 | A windowyesterday by Khalid. | | | | | | | |
| | a | broke | b | break | c | is broken | d | was broken |

و فيما يلي الفقرة الثانية من الخلاصة اللغوية :

2/ Use of the Past continuous استخدام الماضي المستمر

The usage : الاستخدام

You use the Past continuous when you want to set the scene for a story.

تستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر عندما تريد أن تعرض (تعين) مشهد لقصة

Examples: We were working in the fields (when something happened).

Note: Use the Past simple to say *what* happened, e.g. *I heard somebody*.

كيف يمكننا صياغة جملة مثبتة في هذا الزمن ؟ Q : How to form (make) a positive sentence in this tense?
1/ يستخدم هذا الزمن بشكل منفصل للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمر في الماضي لوقت معين و انتهى كما في أمثلة القاعدة التالية (القاعدة الرئيسية للزمن) .

| | القاعدة Rule: | أمثلة Examples : |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| 1 / Affirmative الإثبات | S فاعل + (was / were) + المصدر + ing + .. (اسم مفرد / I / he / she / it) → was (اسم جمع / you / they / we) → were | 1- I was reading a book last night. أنا كنت أقرأ كتاباً الليلة الماضية . 2- She was helping her mother at 9 o'clock yesterday night. هي كانت تساعد أمها في الساعة ٩ ليلة أمس . 3- We were playing football from 8 to 11 o'clock yesterday. نحن كنا نلعب كرة القدم من الساعة ٨ إلى ١١ أمس |
| 2/ Negative النفي | S فاعل + (was / were) + not + المصدر + ing + .. | 1- I was not reading a book last night. 2- We were not playing football from 8 to 11 o'clock yesterday. |

2/ و لكن عادةً ما يستخدم هذا الزمن بشكل أوسع للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمر في الماضي و أثناء حدوثه أتى حدث آخر و قطعه ، بحيث يكون الحدث الذي كان مستمر لوقت معين في زمن الماضي المستمر ، بينما يكون الحدث الآخر الذي أتى و قطع الحدث السابق في زمن الماضي البسيط ، و للربط بين الزمنين نستخدم ثلاث كلمات و هي : When / While / as كما في أمثلة القاعدة الثانية .

(أثناء ، عندما as / بينما While / عندما When) الكلمات الدالة على الزمن: The keywords

| القاعدة الثانية : Rule 2 | | امثله : Examples |
|---------------------------------|--|---|
| 1 / Affirmative الاثبات | <p>1-When (عندما) +ماضي بسيط (تصريف ثانی للفعل) (When + past simple) + ماضي مستمر (was / were + v (ing)) (ماضي مستمر) او قد تأتي when في وسط الجملة كالتالي Past continuous tense (ماضي مستمر) (was / were + v (ing) + , + when + past simple) (تصريف ثانی للفعل) أي أنه و باختصار بعد (when) يأتي الفعل في التصريف الثاني (فعل ماضي) (سواء أنت (when) في البداية أو في الوسط .</p> | 1/ When he called me , I was watching this film. عندما اتصلت بي ، أنا كنت أشاهد هذا الفلم . 2/ When I saw you , you were watching T.V with your father. 3/ I was watching this film, when he called me. 4/ We were writing the lesson, when the teacher asked us. |
| | <p>2-While (بينما) While +Past continuous (ماضي مستمر) (was / were + v(ing) + , + Past simple tense (تصريف ثانی للفعل) (ماضي بسيط) أي أنه و باختصار بعد (While) يأتي الفعل في المصدر مضاف له ing و قبل الفعل يأتي إما (was) او (were)</p> | 1/ While he was writing his homework, his mother called him. بينما هو كان يكتب واجبه المنزلي ، أمه . اتصلت به . 2/ While they were playing football, they saw a very bad accident. 3/ While I was praying the noon prayer, Adel came to ask me some questions. |
| | <p>3- As (أثناء ، عندما) هذه الكلمة من علامات الماضي المستمر وتأخذ نفس قاعدة (While).</p> | * As I was watching T.V, my father called me. أثناء ما كنت أشاهد التلفاز ، أبي اتصل بي |
| 2 Negative النفي | S + (was / were) + not + VI(Inf.) المصدر + ing + ... | 1/ When he called me , I was not watching this film. |
| 3/ Yes / No Question | (Was / Were) + S + VI(Inf.) المصدر + ing + ? | 1/ Were you playing football when he came ? هل كنت تلعب كرة القدم عندما أتى ؟ 2/ Was he playing football when you came ? |
| 4/ (WH) Question | WH + (was / were) + S + VI(Inf.) المصدر + ing +....? | What were you doing when he called you ? ماذا كنت تفعل عندما اتصل بك ؟ |

اختار أفضل الخيارات : : Q : Choose the best alternatives :

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|---|--------------|---|-----------------------|---|---------------------|---|----------------|
| 1 | While he , the telephone | a | sleep / ring | b | was sleeping / ringed | c | was sleeping / rang | d | sleeped / ring |
| 2 | When the telephone, he | a | ring / sleep | b | rang / was sleeping | c | ring / was sleep | d | rings/sleep |
| 4 | While he , his father saw him. | a | smoke | b | smoking | c | was smoking | d | is smoking |
| 2 | When his fatherhim, he was smoking . | a | see | b | saw | c | seen | d | sees |

و فيما يلي الفقرة الثالثة من الخلاصه اللغويه :

3 / Sense verbs أفعال الحواس

| NO. | الحواس Sense | أفعال الحواس Sense verbs | | | |
|-----|-----------------|--------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| | | مصدر (Inf.) Verb | ماضي Past | مصدر (Inf.) Verb | ماضي Past |
| 1 | الرؤية Sight | 1 see يرى | saw رأى | 5 watch يشاهد | watched شاهد |
| | | 2 look ينظر | looked نظر | 6 sight يلمح / يرى | sighted لَمَح |
| | | 3 notice يلاحظ | noticed لاحظ | 7 observe يراقب | Observed |
| | | 4 find يجد | found وجد | | |
| 2 | التذوق Taste | 1 taste يتذوق / يذوق | tasted ذاق / تذوق | | |
| | | | | | |
| 3 | السمع Hearing | 1 hear يسمع | heard سمع | | |
| | | 2 listen يستمع | listened استمع | | |
| | | 3 sound | sounded | | |
| 4 | الشم Smelling | 1 smell يشم | smelt شم | | |
| | | | | | |
| 5 | الإحساس Feeling | 1 feel يشعر | felt شعر | 2 touch يلمس | touched لمس |
| | | | | | |

| فعل Verb | اسم Noun |
|----------|----------|
| see | sight |
| taste | taste |
| hear | hearing |
| smell | smelling |
| feel | feeling |

feel , hear , smell , taste and see are called sense verbs . (يشعر ، يسمع ، يشم ، يتذوق ، يرى) تسمى أفعال حواس .

3. Sense verbs (hear, see, feel) followed by an object then a verb.

1- يأتي بعد أفعال الحواس المفعول به. 2- وبعد المفعول به نكتب الفعل في المصدر مضافاً له (ing) ، و لا يصح أن يأتي قبله (am / is / are / was / were) و لا حرف جر .

قاعدة Rule

S + sense verb + O + فعل حواس + V1 + ing + ..

You can use these structure to continue the scene-setting.

نستخدم هذه الصيغة (التركيب) للاستمرارية في وصف حالة مشهد ما . (إذا الحدث لا زال مستقر)

Examples: I heard somebody. He was shouting. →
I heard somebody shouting.أنا سمعت شخصاً ما . هو كان يصرخ .
أنا سمعت شخصاً ما يصرخ .

أمثلة Examples

1/ I saw him. He was running.

2/ I can smell something. It is burning.

3/ I watched the goats. They were coming down the street.

| فعل حواس | مفعول به | فعل + ing |
|--------------------------|------------------------|------------------|
| 1- I saw him | running | أنا رأيته يجري . |
| 2- I can smell something | burning | |
| 3- I watched the goats | coming down the street | |

Q : Choose the best alternatives : اختيار أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | |
|---|-----------------------------|-------|------------|---------|
| 1 | I can smell something | | | |
| | a | b | c | d |
| | burning | burnt | is burning | is burn |
| 2 | He felt something | | | |
| | a | b | c | d |
| | to move | moves | movement | moving |

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|---|---------|---|---------|---|-------------|---|------------|
| 3 | We heard her | a | to cry | b | cried | c | crying | d | is crying |
| 4 | I saw him | a | runs | b | to run | c | are running | d | running |
| 5 | I smelt the meat | a | burnt | b | burns | c | burning | d | is burning |
| 6 | I watched the kidsalong the street . | a | walked | b | walks | c | is walking | d | walking |
| 7 | The noun of see is..... الاسم من يرى هو | a | sight | b | hearing | c | smelling | d | taste |
| 8 | I heard the band..... | a | to sing | b | sang | c | sung | d | singing |
| 9 | In our village, I feel the snakesbeneath our legs. | a | moves | b | moving | c | to move | d | moved |

و فيما يلي الفقرة الرابعة من الخلاصة اللغوية :

4 The verb to be + to + infinitive

فعل في المصدر be (am / is / I) + to + V1 (inf.)

You can use these structure to talk about future plans or forecasts. You often see it in newspaper.

يمكنك استخدام هذه الصيغة (التركيب) لتتكلّم عن الخطط المستقبلية أو التنبؤات. أنت غالباً تراه في صحف الأخبار.

قاعدة Rule

.....+ فعل مصدر (am / is / are) + to + v (inf.) + فاعل Subject

(I) → am

(He / She / It / اسم مفرد) → is

(You / We / They / اسم جمع) → are

Examples: The President is to meet the ambassador tomorrow.

ترتيب لمقابلة في المستقبل

The thick fog is to clear this afternoon.

تنبؤ لحالة الطقس في المستقبل

* The president is to meet the ambassador tomorrow . الرئيس سيقابل السفير غداً .

* The thick fog is to clear this afternoon . الضباب السميك سيخلو (سيصفو) بعد ظهر اليوم .

Q1 : Choose the best alternatives : اختار أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|-------|---|--------------|---|----------|---|-------------|
| 1 | Weto visit the teacher tomorrow. | a | will | b | going | c | are | d | can |
| 2 | Shetravel abroad this evening. | a | is to | b | is | c | is will | d | going to |
| 3 | I amsee you next Friday. | a | going | b | will | c | to | d | will to |
| 4 | The studentsstudy this rule after 2 days. | a | will | b | are going to | c | are to | d | 1 , 2 and 3 |
| 5 | Mohammedcome tomorrow. | a | is to | b | to | c | going to | d | is |

اما الفقرة الخامسة و الأخيرة من الخلاصة اللغوية فهي :

5 Punctuation

ترقيم

In newspaper reports the writer uses a mixture of direct and reported speech for variety and interest.

These are called speech marks.

هذه تسمى بعلامات الحديث ،

'It's a miracle they were found,' a Rescue Service spokesman said. 'We can't explain it.'

Note the comma here.

ملاحظة : الفاصلة هنا

Q : Choose the best alternatives : اختار أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | |
|---|-------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 | What a beautiful girl | a . | b ? | c ! | d , |
| 2 | Can you help meplease ? | a . | b ? | c ! | d , |

و فيما يلي شرح لعلامات الترقيم بالكامل:

الترقيم (التنقيط) Punctuation

Q : What are punctuation marks? ما هي علامات الترقيم ؟

They are specific signs that are placed in different parts of the sentence, whether at the beginning, middle or end of the sentence, according to what is appropriate for the sentence. هي علامات محدد توضع في أماكن مختلفة من الجملة ، سواء في بدايتها أو وسطها أو نهايتها على حسب ما يناسب الجملة.

1/ Capital letter حرف كبير :

| متى تستخدم | امثلة : Examples : |
|--|---|
| 1/ At the beginning of sentence and question. /1 في بداية الجملة الخبرية و في بداية السؤال . | 1/ He is playing football now . 2/ Can you speak Arabic ? |
| 2/ The first person (I) /2 ضمير المتكلم أنا (I) أينما وجد حتى ولو كان في الوسط | 1/ I go to school early . 2/ You and I will travel tomorrow . |
| 3/ Proper names including أسماء الأعلام Human names أسماء البشر , country and city names أسماء الدول و المدن , names of squares أسماء الميادين , streets الشوارع , alleys الحواري and و المنتزهات . Names of continents الجزر , oceans المحيطات , islands الجزر , deserts الصحاري , seas البحار , lakes البحيرات , rivers الأنهار , mountains الجبال , valleys الأودية etc. الخ / Names of companies أسماء الشركات , institutions الجامعات , banks البنوك , schools المدارس , universities و Nationalities الجنسيات , languages اللغات , and religious sect المسرحيات الأفلام , plays المسرحيات , movies الأفلام , titles of books عناوين الكتب , الطوائف الدينية / Titles of books الأفلام , plays المسرحيات , and TV series المسلسلات التلفزيونية / Months الشهور , days of the week أيام الاسبوع , and their abbreviations الخ etc. (Sat. السبت / Apr. أبريل ...) اختصاراتها | 1/ Ali and Mohammed go to school . 2/ Sana'a is capital of Yemen . 3/ Tahrir Square ميدان التحرير 4/ Africa , South America أفريقيا 5/ The Pacific Ocean المحيط الهادي 6/ the Alps جبال الألب , ... 7/ Mitsubishi شركة ميتسوبيشي 8/ Cambridge University جامعة كامبرج 9/ She is Yemeni . هي يمنية . 10/ I can speak French . أستطيع أن أتحدث الفرنسية . 11/ I am a Muslim . أنا مسلم . 12/ It will rain in March . ستمطر في مارس . 13/ I don't come to school on Friday . |
| 4/ (After the full stop). (.) بعد النقطة | I go to school . He is my brother. |
| 5/ Newspaper headline عناوين صحف الأخبار بحيث تبدأ كل كلمة في العنوان بحرف كبير ما عدا حروف الجر و لا نكتب في نهايتها نقطة . | Boxer Weds Sweetheart |

| | |
|--|--|
| 6/ Titles of respect الاحترام , scientific titles العلمية , titles of rulers وألقاب الحكام...and their abbreviations اختصاراتها : such as , Mr. السيد / Mrs. السيدة / Ms. / Lady ...Doctor, Dr. الدكتور / Professor, Prof. البرفيسور / ... King الملك , Queen الملكة , Prince الأمير , President الرئيس , Prime Minister رئيس الوزراء , Ambassador السفير... | 1/ Hello Mr. Nashwan . 2/ Dr. Ali... 3/ The President Saddam |
| 7/ أيضا يكتب (') حرف الكبير في بداية الكلام المباشر | He said ' We can't explain it'. |
| 8/ Abbreviations الاختصارات : * (AIDS) كلمة إيدز : تكتب كل حروفه كبيره لأن كل حرف منه اختصار لكلمه (خاص بالقسم العلمي) أنظر ص ٧٠ | The first cases of <u>AIDS</u> in humans were diagnosed in the early 1970s |
| ٩ / مقياس ريختر (Richter) يبدأ بحرف كبير ، أنظر الكتاب ص ١٦ . | We use <u>Richter</u> Scale to measure the strength of an earthquake . |
| ١٠ / مقياس (PH) (خاص بالقسم العلمي) أنظر الكتاب ص ٦٥ . | The strength of an acid or alkali is measured on the PH scale. |
| ١١ / كلمة (North Pole) القطب الشمالي تكتب أول حرف من كل كلمة بحرف كبير أنظر كتاب الحصه ص ١٠ كذلك كلمة (The Arctic) لها نفس المعنى | The <u>Arctic</u> ice layer is half as thick as it was ten years ago, a Scientist working at the <u>North Pole</u> said yesterday. |
| ١٢ / اسم الحيوان راما (Rama) يبدأ بحرف كبير أينما وجد للتأكد أنظر صفحة ٣ | What does Rama look like? |

2/ Comma (,) الفاصلة السفلى / الفارزة السفلى

| | |
|---|--|
| 1/ A comma is used to separate two words or groups of words in a number sentence containing three or more elements. تستخدم الفاصلة للفصل بين كلمتين أو مجموعة كلمات في جملة تعدد تحتوي على ٣ عناصر أو أكثر . | 1/ I have books , pens , pencils and bags. 2/ I need sugar, bananas, mangoes, milk and water. |
| 2/ when describing anything with more than one adjective. عند وصف أي شيء بأكثر من صفة . | Mohammed bought a nice , new , red , American car . محمد اشترى سيارة رائعة ، جديدة ، حمراء ، أمريكية. |
| 3/ A comma is used to separate two clauses in sentences containing linking words . تستخدم الفاصلة للفصل بين عبارتين في جمل تحتوي على كلمات ربط . | 1/ Although he was busy , he took his children to the park. 2/ Tariq worked hard , but his brother didn't . |
| ٤ / بعد كلمتي No, Yes. | 1/ Yes , he is. 2/ No , he is not |
| ٥ / قبل كلمة please , خصوصاً إذا أتت كلمة please في نهاية السؤال أو الجملة . | Can you help me , please? |
| ٦ / قبل كلمة Sir , | Can you describe your luggage , sir ? |
| 7/ In conditional sentences في الجمل الشرطية بعد جملة الشرط إذا أتت أداة الشرط في بداية الجملة وأداة الشرط هي (IF) | If I study hard , I will pass the exam. Unless he works hard , he will not finish. |
| 8/ in a complex sentence (containing 2 parts) begins with a main clause followed by a subordinate clause. في جملة معقدة (تحتوي على شقين) تبدأ بالعبارة الرئيسية و تتبع بعبارة ثنوية . | If you are not sure about this , let me know now. لو أنك غير متأكد من هذا ، دعني أعرف الآن . |
| 9/ before and after proper nouns and nicknames when speaking directly to them. قبل و بعد أسماء العلم و الكنية عند توجيه الكلام إليهم مباشرة . | 1/ Will you, Aisha, do that assignment for me? 2/ Good day, Teacher. 3/ All, come her. علي ، تعال هنا . |
| 10/ to separate the day in the month and the year, as well as before the year when writing dates. لفصل بين اليوم في الشهر و السنة ، و كذلك قبل السنة عند كتابة التواريخ . | 1/ It was in the Sun's June 5, 2003, edition. 2/ 23 November , 1996 3/ 1st April , 1997 |
| 11/ A comma is used to introduce or interrupt sentences that come between quotation marks. تستخدم الفاصلة لتقديم أو مقاطعة جمل القول التي تأتي بين علامتي التنصيص . | 1/ "I don't care," he said. 2/ "Stop," he said. |
| 12/ A comma is used to separate the affirmative sentence from the question (In Tag Questions في الأسئلة التثبية) | 1- He is good , isn't he ? 2- He has written the lesson , hasn't he? |

3/ Apostrophe (') (الفارزة العليا) تسمى الفاصله العليا

1/ An apostrophe is used in the Possessive to indicate that something is owned or belongs to someone, by adding an apostrophe (') to the noun followed by the letter s .

1/ تستخدم الفاصله العلوية في الملكية لتوضيح ان ذلك الشيء مملوك أو يعود إلى شخص ما ، بإضافة فاصله عليا (') إلى الاسم متبوعاً بالحرف s .

1/ This is Ali's car. . هذه سيارة علي .
2/ Arwa is Ali's sister . . أروى هي أخت علي .
3/ This is my sisters' room. . هذه غرفة أخواتي .

2/ في الاختصارات (Contractions) بحيث تحل الفاصله العليا (') محل الحرف المحذوف . كما في الأفعال المساعدة والناقصة التالية :-

I am = I'm \ I have = I've \ I will = I'll \ I would = I'd \ can not = can't \ does not = doesn't \ do not = don't \ did not = didn't /
He has = He's / It is = It's /

1/ He didn't do his homework yesterday.
2/ I'm from Yemen.
3/ I'd like some tea.

4/ Question mark (?) علامة الاستفهام ؟

استخدم علامة الاستفهام في نهاية الأسئلة المباشرة . Use a question mark at the end of direct questions .

| | |
|---|---|
| 1/ السؤال قد يبدأ بأحد الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة مثل:- (Am \ Is \ Are \ Was \ Were \ Have \ Has \ Had \ Do \ Does \ Did \ Can \ Could \ May \ Shall \ Should / Will) | 1/ Are you Adel? 2/ Do you speak English? 3/ Will you come? |
| 2/ كما أن السؤال قد يبدأ بأحد هذه الكلمات (WH- Questions) (Who \ Why \ Where \ When \ Which \ Whom \ Whose \ How old \ How \ How many \ How much \ How far \ How often \ How long . | 1/ What do you want ? 2/ Where are you going now ? 3/ How are you ? 4/ How tall is he? |
| 3 / في نهاية السؤال النيلي (Tag Question) . | 1- They are playing football now , aren't they ? 2- He has written the lesson , hasn't he? |

5/ Full Stop (.) النقطة

| | |
|---|-----------------------|
| 1/ At the end the declarative sentence في نهاية الجملة الخبرية | He is fine . |
| 2/ with abbreviations مع الاختصارات (Ok.) , (Sat.) , (Mrs.) , (Mr.) | Mr. Nashwan is fine . |

6/ (" ") / (' ') / Speech marks = Inverted commas = quotation marks

علامات الحديث = علامات الاقتباس = علامات التنصيص

Use quotation marks to convey what someone said without change.

استخدم علامات التنصيص لنقل الكلام الذي قاله شخص ما كما هو دون تغيير (أي الكلام المباشر) . و يمكنك التعرف على الكلام المباشر إذا أتى قبله أو بعده أحد الأفعال التالية Said قال / أخبر / answered / أجاب / mentioned / ذكر ، أشار / أخبر / نقل / reported / أجاب

| | | | |
|---|---|--|--|
| A | (" ") علامات الاقتباس المزدوجة | إذا تم نقل كلام شخص واحد فقط | 1/ "There is no clean drinking water, " a nurse said. قالت ممرضة : " لا يوجد مياه صالحة للشرب." 2/ "The flats were very badly built," an eye-witness said. 3/ "Will you still be my friend?" she asked. 4/ He said, " I don't care." |
| B | (' ') علامات التنصيص المفردة | إذا تم ذكر كلام شخص آخر داخل الاقتباس (أي أن تنقل ما قاله شخص ما عن شخص آخر) فيتم تمييز كل من الحديثين (الاقتباسين) بعلامات التنصيص المزدوجة والمفردة لفصلهما عن بعضهما البعض. | ' I haven't spoken to Ali for months, ' Mohammed said . ' The last time I spoke to him he said , " I'm going to Aden and won't be back for about three years", I have heard nothing since then ' . قال محمد : " لم أتحدث إلى علي منذ شهور " . آخر مرة تحدثت إليه قال : " سأذهب إلى عدن ولن أعود لحوالي 3 سنوات " ، لم أسمع شيئاً منذ ذلك الحين . |

| الجواب بعد وضع علامات الترقيم | Punctuate the following: رقم التالي | الجواب بعد وضع علامات الترقيم | Punctuate the following: رقم التالي |
|--|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| He is <u>Ali</u> . | 1/ he is all | I've got to go <u>please</u> . | 10/ I've got to go please |
| She isn't <u>a nurse</u> . | 2/ she isnt a nurse | How old is <u>Ahmed</u> ? | 11/ how old is ahmed |
| Do you go to school <u>every day</u> ? | 3/ do you go to school every day | I'm from <u>Yemen</u> . | 12/ Im from yemen |
| Yes <u>I do</u> . | 4/ yes I do | I like <u>English</u> . | 13/ i like english |

| | | | |
|---|--|--|---|
| 5/ are you a student | <u>Are</u> you a student ? | 14/ he is british | <u>He</u> is <u>British</u> . |
| 6/ no i am not | <u>No</u> , I am not . | 15/ Its my car | <u>It's</u> my car . |
| 7/ Whats your job | <u>What's</u> your job ? | 16/ i ll come on monday with abduallah | <u>I'll</u> come on <u>Monday</u> with <u>Abduallah</u> . |
| 8/ i am going to visit adels father on Monday | <u>I</u> am going to visit <u>Adel's</u> father on <u>Monday</u> . | 17/ i ll live in taiz he said | <u>"I'll</u> live in <u>Taiz</u> ." he said . |
| 9/ id like to go | <u>I'd</u> like to go . | | |

Q : Choose the best alternatives : : اختار أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | |
|---|--|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 | What a beautiful girl | a . | b ? | c ! | d , |
| 2 | Can you help meplease ? | a . | b ? | c ! | d , |
| 3 | What an interesting film | a . | b ? | c ! | d , |
| 4 | He is good, isn't he | a . | b ? | c ! | d , |
| 5 | Have the boy move the chair away | a . | b ? | c ! | d , |
| 6 | Have you understood it | a . | b ? | c ! | d , |

Workbook (تخلص الخلاصة بالكامل) صفحات 17/18 ١٨/ ١٧

A : اكتب الشكل الصحيح للفعل الذي بين الأقواس :

The answers الاجابات

1/ is 2/ woke up - was working - was playing 3/ coming - ran 4/ bought
5/ were dancing - started 6/ will be built 7/ burning 8/ was opened

B : أعد كتابة هذه الجمل بعلامات ترقيم صحيحة :

1/ 'I heard somebody shouting,' Don said . 'Then I saw two men running towards us.'
2/ 'Who were they?,' Jim asked . 'And what were they doing.'

C : اكتب هذه العناوين كجمل كاملة :

- 1-A victim of a road accident has died .
- 2- There are 220 people have been dead in an air crash :
There are no survivors .
- 3- The thick fog is to clear by this afternoon , then will be sunny .
- 4- New cars are a sign of weather.

2.10

Language review 4 : خلاصة لغوية

Page 15 صفحة

1 / Use of the Present perfect tense. استخدام زمن المضارع التام

Use the Present perfect tense to describe the present situation.

نستخدم زمن المضارع التام لوصف الحالات الحالية

Example: The worst hurricane in living memory has caused terrible damage.

The usage: الاستخدام

1/ We use this tense when we want to talk about something that happened in the past at unspecified time.

1/ نستخدم هذا الزمن عندما نريد أن نتحدث عن شيئاً ما حدث في الماضي في وقت غير معروف (لا يذكر في الجملة كلمة تدل على وقت)

Example : I have watched this film . (لكن لا تعرف متى شاهدته) أنا قد شاهدت هذا الفلم .

2/ نستخدم هذا الزمن عند التعبير عن حدث ما وقع في الماضي و لا يزال أثره ظاهر حتى الآن (حتى وقت الكلام)

Example : She has just cooked the lunch . (الغداء لا يزال حاراً) هي قد طبخت الغداء .

3/ كما نستخدم هذا الزمن للتعبير عن حدث ما بدأ في الماضي ولكنه مستمر حتى الآن (حتى وقت الكلام)

The keywords : الكلمات الدالة على الزمن

- 1.Already بالفعل / 2.just فقط / 3.never أبداً / 4.ever قد / 5.yet (حتى الآن) /
6.recently (حالياً) / 7. so far / 8. for a long time / 9.over the years / 10. upto now /
11. Until now / 12.at last أخيراً / 13.lately مؤخراً / 14.several times / many times عدة مرات
15. before في حياة شخص ما . / 16. In (my, his, her, Ali's ,) life . بشرط أن تكون آخر كلمة في الجملة

(for) + (Length of time) / (for) describes a duration / (for) + (period of time)

| | | | | | |
|----------|--|--|---|-----------------------|--|
| 17. لمدة | 3 hours half an hour 5 minutes 10 seconds 20 moments | a day days one week 2 months years | -ages -a long time -several days -ever -a while | a decade a century | We use (for) with all tenses نستخدم (for) مع كل الأزمنة |
|----------|--|--|---|-----------------------|--|

(Since) + point in time from the past (specific)

| | | | | |
|---------|--|---|---|---|
| 18. منذ | Friday April Summer March 2nd | yesterday last 2010 this morning | 7 o'clock childhood S + V2 I was a child. / He was young. | We use (since) with the Perfect tenses نستخدم (since) مع أزمنة التام |
|---------|--|---|---|---|

ملاحظات هامة :

- 1- تستخدم كلمة (already) عادة بعد الفعلين (has-have) وأحياناً في نهاية الجملة في الجمل المثبتة وفي الأسئلة .
- 2- تستخدم كلمة (just) بعد الفعلين (has-have) مباشرة في الجمل المثبتة .
- 3- تستخدم كلمة (never) بعد (has-have) في الجمل المنفية بحيث تستقني عن كلمة (not) .
- 4- تستخدم كلمة (yet) في نهاية الجملة في الجمل المنفية وفي الأسئلة .
- 5- تستخدم كلمة (ever) في الأسئلة .

| | القاعدة Rule: | أمثلة Examples |
|--------------------------|---|--|
| 1 Affirmative الاثبات | S + (has) + P.p + فعل تصريف ثالث للفعل S + (have) + P.p + فعل تصريف ثالث (اسم مفرد / he / she / it) → has (اسم جمع / I / you / we / they) → have | 1-He has found his pen in the class. 2/ She has just cooked the lunch 3/ She has played football since 1998 . 4/ They have studied English for ten months . |
| 2/ Negative : النفى | S + (has) + not + P.p + فعل تصريف ثالث للفعل S + (have) + not + P.p + فعل تصريف ثالث للفعل عند استخدام كلمة never لنفي جملة لا يصح أن نكتب كلمة not | 1/ We haven't played cards yet . 2/ I have not watched this film. 3/ He has never found his pen in the class. |

| | | |
|----------------------|---|--|
| 3/ Yes / No Question | Has + S فاعل + P.p ...? Have + S فاعل + P.p ...? | 1/ Has he ever visited Macca ? 2/ Have you played cards yet ? 3/ Have you ever travelled abroad? |
| 4/ (WH) Question | WH + has + S + P.p ...? WH + have + S + P.p ...? | 1/ Where has she been? 2/ What have you done? |

Q : Choose the best alternatives : : اختار أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|----------------|---|---------------|---|-------------------|---|-------------------|
| 1 | HealreadyIt . | | | | | | | |
| | a | is/finish | b | was/ finished | c | had/ finish | d | had/ finished |
| 2 | The teacherjusthim this question . | | | | | | | |
| | a | has/asked | b | have/ asked | c | asked/ has | d | is/ asks |
| 3 | Theyyet . | | | | | | | |
| | a | arrive | b | have arrived | c | haven't arrived | d | arrived |
| 4 | We havethe lesson . | | | | | | | |
| | a | understand | b | understood | c | understanced | d | understands |
| 5 | Over the years, physicistsdifferent ideas about bow light. | | | | | | | |
| | a | have had | b | have has | c | had have | d | has had |
| 6 | In his life, my fathermany different countries. | | | | | | | |
| | a | visited | b | visits | c | has visited | d | visit |
| 7 | His luggageyet. | | | | | | | |
| | a | hasn't arrived | b | has arrived | c | arrive | d | didn't arrived |
| 8 | So far, rescue teams.....no survivors. | | | | | | | |
| | a | find | b | have found | c | finds | d | finding |
| 9 | She hasher homework. | | | | | | | |
| | a | write | b | wrote | c | written | d | writen |
| 10 | They havequickly. | | | | | | | |
| | a | run | b | ran | c | running | d | runs |
| 11 | We haven'tthis film before. | | | | | | | |
| | a | watched | b | watch | c | watching | d | being watched |
| 12 | I've justthe plane from Paris. | | | | | | | |
| | a | get off | b | get of | c | got off | d | got out off |
| 13 | He has never.....him. | | | | | | | |
| | a | meet | b | met | c | meat | d | meeting |
| 14 | Have youbeen to Macca? | | | | | | | |
| | a | ever | b | never | c | for | d | since |
| 15 | Has shethe lesson? | | | | | | | |
| | a | understand | b | understood | c | understands | d | understanding |
| 16 | Whereyou been? | | | | | | | |
| | a | do | b | did | c | have | d | will |
| 17 | Theythis place several times. | | | | | | | |
| | a | visit | b | have visited | c | are visit | d | visiting |
| 18 | I've known him2010. | | | | | | | |
| | a | in | b | on | c | since | d | for |
| 19 | The managerto your song twice and to be honest, he doesn't like it. | | | | | | | |
| | a | listen | b | listens | c | has listened | d | has been listened |
| 20 | I my best friend for almost fourteen years. | | | | | | | |
| | a | know | b | known | c | have been knowing | d | have known |
| 21 | The drought is terrible. Itfor the last five years. | | | | | | | |
| | a | rain | b | rains | c | hasn't rained | d | has raining |
| 22 | Why haven't they? | | | | | | | |
| | a | arrived | b | arrive | c | arriving | d | arrives |
| 23 | I have never to Great Britain. I hope to go one day. | | | | | | | |
| | a | be | b | being | c | visit | d | been |

| | | | | | | | |
|----|---|---|------------|---|------|---|-------------|
| 24 | Ihere for six years. (perhaps the speaker will not continue living here (المتكلم ربما لن يستمر في العيش هنا) | | | | | | |
| a | have been living | b | have lived | c | live | d | have living |

2/ Use of the Past simple tense استخدام زمن الماضي البسيط

Page 15 صفحة

Use the Past simple tense to describe something that happened at a known time. Use adverbs to say when the event happened.

نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط لوصف شيء حدث في وقت معروف. استخدم الظروف لنقول متى حدث الحدث.

Example: The storm hit the area late on Tuesday evening.

The usage: الاستخدام:

*We use this tense when we want to talk about something that happened in the past and finished at Specific time
يستخدم هذا الزمن للتحدث أو التعبير عن أي شيء حدث في الماضي وانتهى في وقت محدد.

The keywords: الكلمات الدالة على الزمن:

1. yesterday أمس 2. ago منذ 3. in the past في الماضي 4. In 1999 في هذا الزمن
5. last... سابق / ماضي (last day اليوم السابق / last week الأسبوع السابق / ...) 7. this morning هذا الصباح

1 Positive (Affirmative) الاثبات

Q: How can we form positive sentence in this tense? كيف يمكننا تشكيل (تكوين) جملة مثبتة في هذا الزمن ؟

تكملة Complete / مفعول به Object + فعل في التصريف الثاني (ماضي) V2 (2nd conjugation) + فاعل Subject

| | القاعدة الأولى : Rule 1 | أمثلة Examples |
|--------------------------|---|---|
| 1 Affirmative الاثبات | S + C + فعل في التصريف الثاني (ماضي) V2 + فاعل S مهما كان الفاعل سواء اسم مفرد أو جمع أو أحد الضمائر (I / You / We / They / He / She / It) | 1-He drank juice last Saturday. 2-He bought a new car in 1990. 3-I saw Ahmed two days ago. 4-We visited Aden last year. |
| 2/ Negative النفي | S ... + C + فعل في المصدر (inf.) + V1 (didn't) + فاعل S نستخدم (didn't) بعد الفاعل و من ثم نضع الفعل في المصدر (أي نضعه في التصريف الأول) | 1-He didn't drink juice last Saturday. 2-He didn't buy a new car in 1990. 3-I didn't see Ahmed two days ago. 4-We didn't visit Aden last year. |
| 3/ Yes / No Question | Did + S + الفاعل + V1 (inf.) + المصدر ؟ نستخدم (Did) بداية السؤال بمعنى (هل) و من ثم الفاعل ثم نضع الفعل في المصدر (بدون أي إضافات) و يجب أن تبدأ الإجابة بـ Yes أو No (Yes, S فاعل did.) (No, S فاعل didn't.) | 1/Did you go to school last week ? Yes, I did . / No, I didn't . 2/ Did he help his father yesterday? 3/Did they play football last month ? هل لعبوا كرة القدم الشهر الماضي ؟ |
| 4/ (WH) Question | WH + (did) + S + الفاعل + V1 (inf.) + المصدر ؟ نستخدم (Did) بعد كلمات الاستفهام التي تبدأ بحرفي (Wh) | 1/ When did you get up yesterday? متى استيقظت أمس ؟ 2/ Where did he go last week? أين ذهب الأسبوع الماضي ؟ 3/ What did they do yesterday ? 4/ What did Ali do yesterday ? |

| | القاعدة الثانية : Rule 2 مع الفعل had شرط عدم وجود فعل رئيسي في الجملة | أمثلة Examples |
|-----------------------------|---|--|
| 1 Affirmative الاثبات | اسم (had) + فاعل S اسم (had) + (adj. صفة + noun) بجانب سيكون معنى had هنا إما (كان عندي / كنت أمتلك) أو بمعنى (تناول) | 1/ I had a problem last week . كان عندي مشكلة الاسبوع الماضي . 2/ I had my breakfast with Ahmed this morning .. أنا تناولت فطوري مع أحمد هذا الصباح .. 3/ They had an important meeting two hours ago . هم كان عندهم مقابلة منذ ساعتين .. |

| | القاعدة الثالثة : Rule 3 Verb to be شرط عدم وجود فعل رئيسي في الجملة | أمثلة Examples |
|-----------------------------|---|--|
| 1 Affirmative الاثبات | اسم + be (was / were) + فاعل S + adj. صفة + adverb (ظرف) I → was (اسم مفرد / he / she / it) → was (اسم جمع / you / they / we) → were | 1/ I was a teacher . . أنا كنت مدرس . 2/ I was sad last week . أنا كنت حزينا الاسبوع الماضي . 3/ They were in the park yesterday . هم كانوا في الحديقة أمس . 4/ He was at home ten minutes ago . هو كان في البيت منذ ١٠ دقائق . |
| 2/ Negative النفي | اسم + be (was / were) + not + فاعل S + adj. صفة + adverb (ظرف) | 1/ I wasn't a teacher . . أنا لم أكن مدرس . 2/ I was not sad last week . 3/ They were not in the park yesterday . هم لم يكونوا في الحديقة أمس . |
| 3/ Yes / No Question | اسم + الفاعل + Be (was / were) + noun ؟ + adj. صفة ؟ + adverb (ظرف) ؟ بجانب سيكون معنى (Was / Were) هل و يجب أن تبدأ الإجابة بـ Yes أو No | 1/ Was I a teacher ? هل كنت مدرس ؟ Yes, you were . / No, you weren't . 2/ Was he happy ? هل كان سعيد ؟ Yes, he was . / No, he wasn't . 3/ Were they at home ? هل كانوا في البيت ؟ Yes, they were . / No, they weren't . |
| 4/ (WH) Question | WH + (was / were) + S الفاعل +؟ | 1/ How was he yesterday ? كيف كان حاله أمس ؟ 2/ Where were the students yesterday ? |

اختر أفضل الخيارات : : Q : Choose the best alternatives :

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|---|------|---|-------|---|--------|---|-----------|
| 1 |he here yesterday ? | a | Did | b | Had | c | Was | d | Is |
| 2 | She didn'tany money last week . | a | had | b | have | c | has | d | No answer |
| 3 | Theyit on the desk two hours ago . | a | find | b | found | c | finded | d | finds |

صفحتي ٢٤ / ٢٥ Pages 24/25 كتاب التمارين Workbook

أكمل هذه الجمل بالزمن الصحيح للفعل الذي بين الأقواس : A:

- 1/ have been 2/ took place 3/ lost
4/ has crashed 5/ have found 6/ took off
7/ had contacted crashed 8/ have died 9/ were 10/ went - drove

ملاحظة : هذا التمرين يشمل فقرات تخص كلاً من زمني المضارع التام البسيط و الماضي البسيط

3 / Prepositions in relative clauses : استخدام حروف الجر في الجمل الوصلية

عزيزي الطالب عليك أن تعرف أولاً ما المقصود بالعبارات الوصلية و فيما يلي شرح تفصيلي :

العبارات الوصلية Relative Clauses

في اللغة الإنجليزية هناك ما يسمى بالضمائر الوصلية (Relative pronouns) للبشر و لغير البشر (غير عاقل) (who / whom / that / which / whose) .
ولكن مهنا ما يستخدم مع البشر وهي (who / whom / that / whose)
ومنها ما يستخدم مع الأشياء (غير البشر) وهي (which / that / whose)
وهناك ما يسمى بالظروف الوصلية للمكان (where) و للزمان (when)
و كل الكلمات السابقة تستخدم للربط بين جملتين بسيطتين لنحصل على جملة واحدة معقدة .

| ضمائر الوصل Relative pronouns | ظروف الوصل Relative adverbs |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (who / whom / that / which / whose) | (where / when / why) |

1/ A relative pronoun is one which is used to refer to nouns mentioned previously, whether they are people, things, animals, or ideas.

1/ ضمير الوصل هو الضمير الذي يعود على (يشير إلى) أسماء ذكرت سابقاً (من قبل) ، سواء كانت أشخاص ، أشياء ، حيوانات ، أو أفكار.

2/ Relative pronouns take the place of nouns or pronouns.

3/ They are called relative pronouns because they always relate back to something or someone else.

4/ Relative pronouns can be used to join two sentences.

5/ They are used to join two sentences about the same person or thing.

ضمائر الوصل يمكن أن تستخدم لربط جملتين حول (عن) نفس الشخص أو الشيء.

The Rules : القواعد

| Relative pronoun ضمير الوصل | الاستخدام : | امثلة: Examples |
|---|--|---|
| Who الذي / التي / اللذان / اللتان / الذين / اللاتي يمكن أن تستخدم ضمير الوصل (that) بدلاً عن (who) | 1/ refers (relates) to people (subject) 2/ replace the subject pronouns (I / He / She / You / We) or nouns. 1/ تعود على البشر (الفاعل العاقل) 2/ تحل مكان ضمائر الفاعل (I / he / she / you / they / we) أو الأسماء (أسماء بشر أو ما يدل على أنه بشر مثل man / woman / girl / boy / student / teacher / doctor / my father /) (و بالتالي فإن (who) تعود على الفاعل الذي قبلها سواء كان مفرد أو جمع) و يأتي بعدها فعل | 1/ This is the student. He broke the window. هذا هو الطالب الذي كسر النافذة. This is the student <u>who</u> broke the window. 1/ The man is Ali. He killed the snake . الرجل الذي قتل الثعبان هو علي . The man <u>who</u> killed the snake is Ali. 2/ Those women are nurses. They are working in this hospital. Those women <u>who</u> are working in this hospital are nurses. |
| whom الذي / التي / اللذان / اللتان / الذين / اللاتي | 1/ refers (relates) to people (object) 2/ replace the object pronouns (me / you / him / her / us / them) . 1/ تعود على البشر (المفعول به العاقل) الذي قبلها سواء كان المفعول به مفرد أو جمع 2/ تحل مكان ضمائر المفعول به . ويأتي بعده ضمير فاعل مثل (I / you / he / she / we / they / you) أو اسم . | 1/ That is the man. I met him yesterday. ذلك هو الرجل الذي قابلت بالأمس That is the man <u>whom</u> I met yesterday . 2/ The students are from Taiz. You taught them last year. The students <u>whom</u> you taught last year are from Taiz. |

| | | |
|-------|--|--|
| that | refers (relates) to people or things and animals. تعود على البشر أو الأشياء و الحيوانات. (book / pen / dog / ...) مثل (جمع) * يمكن أن نستبدل (that) بـ (which) مع الأشياء و الحيوانات فقط . * يمكن أن نستبدل (that) بـ (who) مع البشر فقط | 1/ The dog is black. It bit the girl last week. The dog <u>that</u> bit the girl last week is black . الكلب الذي عض البنت الاسبوع الماضي أسود. 2/ The pens are yours. They were on the desk. The pens <u>that</u> were on the desk are yours . |
| Which | refers (relates) to things or animals. تعود على الأشياء أو الحيوانات. (سواء كانت مفردة أو جمع) يمكن أن نستبدل (which) بـ (that) | 1/ This is my car. I bought it last year. This is my car <u>which</u> I bought last year . هذه سيارتي التي اشتريتها السنة الماضية . 2/ The car is mine. It is in front of the bank. The car <u>which</u> is in front of the bank is mine السيارة التي أمام البنك هي ملكي . |
| Whose | 1/ refers (relates) to possession. تشير إلى (للملكية) 2/ used for people, animals and things. تستخدم للبشر و الحيوانات و الأشياء. * يأتي قبل (whose) اسم و بعدها اسم ، بينهما علاقة ملكية (اسم عاقل أو غير عاقل) 3/ we use (whose) instead of using a possessive adjective (my/ your / his / her / their / our / its) | 1/ This is the horse. Its hair is white. This is the horse <u>whose</u> hair is white . هذا هو الحصان الذي له شعر أبيض . الاسمين هما (the horse) و (hair) 2/ I know a friend. His father is a doctor. I know a friend <u>whose</u> father is a doctor. أعرف صديق والده طبيب. |

| Relative adverb ظرف الوصل | الاستخدام : | أمثلة: Examples |
|---|--|---|
| Where (هي ظرف مكان) بمعنى (حيثما) أو (المكان الذي) | refers (relates) to places. تشير إلى (تعود على) الأماكن. يأتي قبلها اسم مكان مثل (place / school / institute / college / company / city /) (بشرط أن لا يأتي حرف جر في الجملة مثل (in / on / at) (مالم فبن كلمة (which) تحل مكان (where) | 1/ That is the institute. I studied at it. That is the institute <u>where</u> I studied . ذلك هو المعهد حيثما درست . اسم المكان هنا هو (institute) و معناه (معهد) That is the institute <u>which</u> I studied at . ذلك هو المعهد الذي درست فيه. |
| When (هي ظرف زمان) بمعنى (حينما) أو (الوقت الذي) أو (عندما) | refers (relates) to time. تشير إلى (تعود على) وقت (زمان) ، و يأتي قبلها اسم يدل على وقت مثل (day / week / month / year / season / time / date / clock / era / 1992 / century /decade) ، و كذلك بالنسبة لكلمة (when) إذا أتى في الجملة حرف جر فنستخدم (which) | 1/ Ramadan is the month <u>when</u> we must fast. رمضان هو الشهر الذي (حينما) نحن يجب علينا أن نصوم 2/ Ramadan is the month <u>in which</u> we must fast. |
| Why بمعنى (بسبب) | refers (relates) to reason. تشير إلى (تعود على) السبب. | 1/ It was late. That was <u>why</u> I didn't call. 2/ He didn't explain the reason <u>why</u> he did that. |

ملحوظة هامة : تستخدم كلمة (which) للإشارة إلى اسم مكان بدلاً عن (where) ما إذا أتى بعدها أحد الأفعال التالية مثل
..... (has / have يمتلك) (بنى / built / يبني) (اشترى / bought / يشتري) (باع / sold / يبيع)
ذلك البيت الذي باعت السنة الماضية . . That is the house which I sold last year . / مثال : Ex . :
* وقد يأتي السؤال الخاص بهذا الدرس عن طريق وضع علامة صح أو خطأ أو عن طريق اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة:

| NO. | Q1: Choose the best alternatives: | المسبب : |
|-----|---|---|
| 1 | Abdullah is the person.....wrote this poem.(who/where/whose) | إذا أتى اسم شخص (أو ما يدل على اسم بشر) قبل الفراغ وأتى بعد الفراغ فعل فعلينا أن نستخدم who . و الكلمات التي تدل على البشر أو العاقل هي مثل: أن يذكر اسم شخص أو أي كلمة من هذه الكلمات مثل: (man / boy / teacher / person / someone / somebody /) |
| 2 | A bus driver is somebody ----- drives buses. (who \ which \ whom) | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | That is the penI bought from the bookshop.(who/when/which) | ١- إذا أتى قبل الفراغ اسم شيء (غير عاقل) فعلينا ان نستخدم (that) او (which). |
| 4 | Is this the penyou are looking for ? (who/where/ which) | و في الجملتين المعابلتين أتى قبل الفراغ (pen) و هو القلم (غير عاقل) |
| 5 | Let me know the timeyou will return .(who/where/when) | - إذا أتى قبل الفراغ كلمة تدل على الوقت (الزمان) فعلينا ان نستخدم كلمة (when). و هنا أتى قبل الفراغ كلمة (time) و معناها (وقت) |
| 6 | The boyhair is long has taken my book.(who/whose/which) الولد الذي يمتلك (له) شعر طويل أخذ كتابي . | إذا أتى قبل الفراغ اسم وأتى بعد الفراغ اسم له علاقة ملكية بالاسم الذي قبل الفراغ فعلينا أن نستخدم كلمة (whose). لانها تأتي للربط بين اسمين لاحظ أنه أتى قبل الفراغ (The boy) اسم وبعد الفراغ اسم أيضاً (hair) |

Q : Choose the best alternatives : اختر أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | | | | | |
|----|--|---|-------|---|-------|---|-------|---|-------|
| 1 | Mohammed is the student gets the best marks . | a | which | b | who | c | when | d | where |
| 2 | That is the dogbit Ahmed . | a | who | b | whom | c | which | d | whose |
| 3 | The students.....you taught last year are from Taiz . | a | who | b | whom | c | which | d | whose |
| 4 | Here is the instituteI studied at . | a | who | b | which | c | where | d | whose |
| 5 | The company I work is great . | a | where | b | which | c | whose | d | when |
| 6 | I remember the dayI got married . | a | whom | b | why | c | which | d | When |
| 7 | I'll never forget the day onI met you. | a | where | b | which | c | whose | d | when |
| 8 | I'll never forget the dayI met you. | a | where | b | which | c | whose | d | when |
| 9 | The building inhe lives is very old. | a | where | b | which | c | whose | d | when |
| 10 | That is the placethe accident occurred. | a | where | b | which | c | who | d | when |
| 11 | We know the manbus was stolen. | a | where | b | which | c | whose | d | when |
| 12 | Taiz is the city, in I was born. | a | where | b | which | c | whom | d | when |
| 13 | This is the book.....I read it last year. | a | who | b | whose | c | which | d | whom |
| 14 | We saw the personhair is white . | a | who | b | whom | c | which | d | whose |
| 15 | I killed the mousekept eating my books . | a | who | b | which | c | where | d | when |
| 17 | The people with I work , are very nice . | a | who | b | whom | c | whose | d | which |
| 18 | Ramadan is the monthevery Muslim's start fasting . | a | who | b | where | c | when | d | which |

بعد أن تعرفت على العبارات الوصلية ، الآن سيتم شرح حروف الجر في الجمل الوصلية

حروف الجر في العبارات الوصلية : Prepositions in relative clauses

العبارات الوصلية (هي جزء من جملة) تحتوي على ضمير وصل (وقد يتم الاستغناء عنه في الجمل التي تحتوي على معلومات ضرورية) و تستخدم لربط جملتين تتحدثان عن نفس الشخص أو الشيء ، و قد تعطي معلومات (information) إما ضرورية (necessary) أو إضافية (additional) و موقع حرف الجر في الجملة الوصلية يحدد فيما إذا كانت الجملة تعطي معلومة ضرورية أو أنها تعطي معلومة إضافية .

3 Prepositions in relative clauses

• Relative clauses giving necessary information

*العبارات الوصلية تعطي (تقدم) معلومات ضرورية

Example: The house is very old. I used to live in it.

The house I used to live in is very old.

Note: The preposition is at the end of the relative clause.

= The house which I used to live in is very old.

عبارة الوصل Relative clause

• Relative clauses giving additional information.

*العبارات الوصلية تعطي (تقدم) معلومات إضافية

Example: Sana'a Secondary School is one of the biggest schools in the country.

I went to it when I was younger.

Sana'a Secondary School, to which I went when I was younger,

is one of the biggest schools in the country.

Note: The preposition is at the beginning of the relative clause. The clause is written between commas.

....., to which I went I was younger,...

عبارة الوصل Relative clause

القاعدة : The Rule

| المعلومات الإضافية (additional information) | المعلومات الضرورية (necessary information) |
|---|--|
| ١ - يأتي حرف الجر في بداية العبارة الوصلية | ١ - يأتي حرف الجر في نهاية العبارة الوصلية |
| ٢ - يجب كتابة ضمير الوصل فيها | ٢ - قد يتم الاستغناء عن ضمير الوصل فيها |
| ٣ - تكتب العبارة الوصلية بين فاصلتين | ٣ - لا يوجد فيها فواصل |

صفحة ٢٥ Page 25 كتاب التمارين Workbook

انظر إلى هذا الجمل . فكر في ما إذا الجملة الثانية في كل زوج تعطي معلومات إضافية أم ضرورية . ثم اربط كل زوج لتصنع جمل مفردة . B:

1/ necessary information 2/ additional information 3/ necessary information

4/ additional information 5/ additional information

1/ The bus I come to school on has had an accident .

عبارة الوصل Relative clause

2/ The Great Fire of London , in which thousands of buildings were destroyed in , happened in 1666.

3/ The man I was talking to yesterday has mysteriously disappeared.

4/ The Armenian earthquake, about which I have to write in the next lesson , killed over 25,000 people.

5/ The flood of 1953, after which new dams were built , is still the worst in living memory for the people of The Netherlands .

Q : Choose the best alternatives : : اختيار أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | |
|---|--|------------|---|-----------|
| 1 | The man I was talking to yesterday has gone to Cairo. (This sentence includesinformation) | | | |
| | a | additional | b | necessary |
| | | | c | more |
| | | | d | less |
| 2 | The house he used to live in was sold in 1997. (This sentence includesinformation) | | | |
| | a | additional | b | necessary |
| | | | c | more |
| | | | d | less |

| | | | | |
|---|--|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| 3 | Omar school, to which he went when he has young , is one of the best school. (This sentence includesInformation) | | | |
| | a additional | b necessary | c adverbial | d adjectival |
| 4 | Sana'a secondary school, which I went When I was younger, is one of the biggest schools in the country. | | | |
| | a at | b to | c on | d of |
| 5 | The house he used to live was sold yesterday. | | | |
| | a at | b to | c in | d of |

4 Adverbs and adverbial phrases

ظروف و عبارات ظرفية

These tell us more about actions.

The Rule : القاعدة

هناك ما يسمى بظرف الحال أو الطريقة (Adverb of manner) و ظرف الزمان (Adverb of time) و ظرف المكان (Adverb of place) ، و كما تعرف أنه عادة تأتي كلمات الحال مضافاً في آخرها by في معظم ظروف الحال ، أما ظروف الزمن فهي كلمات تدل على الوقت و هي غالباً ما تكون الكلمات الدالة على بعض الأزمنة ، بينما ظروف المكان فهي كلمات تدل على المكان أو بعض حروف الجر التي تدل على المكان .

| أنواع الظروف | أمثلة | Examples |
|--|---|----------|
| 1/ Adverb of time and adverb frequency ظرف الزمان و ظرف التكرار نستخدم معها (when) متى | yesterday - ago / next - tomorrow - soon - shortly / often - always - never - sometimes - seldom - rarely / today - tonight - early - late - ever - already / recently - still - since - then - generally - before - after / in the morning / at night / .. | |
| 2/ Adverb of place ظرف المكان نستخدم معها (where) أين | here هنا / there هناك / abroad في الخارج / somewhere ما مكان / everywhere كل مكان / nowhere لا مكان / together / away بعيداً / through / at home / (in.... / on..... / under / above ... / down / up ... / to | |
| 3/ Adverb of manner ظرف الحال (الطريقة / الكيفية) نستخدم معها (How) كيف | well / politely / quickly / slowly / badly / clearly / happily / carefully / hardly | |

و بالتالى فباتك عند السؤال عن ظرف الحال فباتك ستستخدم في السؤال كلمة How و التي معناها كيف ، بينما تسأل عن ظرف الزمان بكلمة When و التي معناها متى ، و عن ظرف المكان ستستخدم كلمة Where و التي تعني أين .

- 1- (كيف How) People stood around silently . الناس التفتوا (وقفوا بشكل دائري حول) بصمت .
- 2- (أين Where) In the countryside whole villages have disappeared. في الريف اختفت قرى بأكملها .
- 3- (متى When) The storm hit the area late on Tuesday evening . العاصفة ضربت المنطقة في وقت متأخر من مساء الثلاثاء .

صفحتى ٢٥ / ٢٦ Pages 25/26 (يخص الخلاصة رقم ٤ ؛ بالكامل) كتاب التمارين Workbook

C Complete these sentences with a suitable adverb or adverbial phrase in answer to the questions.

- 1 (When?) _____ (Where?) _____ a terrible famine killed thousands of people.
- 2 After the heavy rain, water rushed down the wadi (How?) _____ and demolished tens of houses (Where?) _____.
- 3 During the drought (Where?) _____ people queued (How?) _____ (How long?) _____ for just a litre of water.
- 4 (Where?) _____ (When?) _____ a forest fire destroyed over 100 hectares of woodland in (How long?) _____.

اكمل هذه الجمل بالظرف أو العبارة الظرفية المناسبة لتجيب عن هذه الأسئلة

- 1/ In 1968 / in Ethiopia
- 2/ In a flash flood / In local village
- 3/ In southern France / patiently / for hours
- 4/ In California / in 1998 / two hours

Q : Choose the best alternatives : : اختار افضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|--------|---|----------|---|----------|---|------------|
| 1 | He is talking to me | | | | | | | |
| | a | polite | b | politely | c | Impolite | d | politeness |
| 2 | People stood around | | | | | | | |
| | a | silnt | b | silence | c | silently | d | no answer |
| 3 | (.....)The Great Fire of London happened in 1666. | | | | | | | |
| | a | Where | b | When | c | How | d | Why |
| 4 | A: does Ali live? B: Ali lives in Sana'a. | | | | | | | |
| | a | Where | b | When | c | How | d | Why |

Q 2 : Choose the best alternatives :

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|------------|---|-----------|---|------------|---|----------|
| 1 | The stormthe area late on Tuesday evening destroying everything in its path . | | | | | | | |
| | a | hit | b | heat | c | hat | d | hate |
| 2 | The words (crash and accident) are | | | | | | | |
| | a | Synonyms | b | antonyms | c | prefixes | d | suffixes |
| 3 | We use the verb to+ to + infinitive to talk about future plans or forecasts . | | | | | | | |
| | a | be | b | do | c | have | d | modal |
| 4 | Ito meet you tomorrow . | | | | | | | |
| | a | will | b | going | c | shall | d | am |
| 5 | Hear , feel , taste and smell areverbs . | | | | | | | |
| | a | helping | b | modal | c | regular | d | sense |
| 6 | Ito visit him tomorrow . | | | | | | | |
| | a | will | b | going | c | am | d | shall |
| 7 | We watched themfootball . | | | | | | | |
| | a | plays | b | played | c | plays | d | playing |
| 8 | This is the houseI live in . | | | | | | | |
| | a | which | b | where | c | who | d | whose |
| 9 | She felt somethingbehind her . | | | | | | | |
| | a | moves | b | moving | c | is moving | d | moved |
| 10 | Boxersweetheart . | | | | | | | |
| | a | wed | b | wedded | c | is wedding | d | weds |
| 11 | Winds of over 240demolished all the wood on houses and tore the roofs off other . | | | | | | | |
| | a | k.m | b | k.G | c | kpH | d | k.W |
| 12 | What a beautiful house | | | | | | | |
| | a | ! | b | ? | c | . | d | ; |
| 13 | Richter scale was inventedCharles Richter . | | | | | | | |
| | a | with | b | in | c | on | d | by |
| 14 | Only the wordisn't compound . | | | | | | | |
| | a | sweetheart | b | nightmare | c | landslide | d | mango |
| 15 | We add (.....) to make the word (volcano) adjective . | | | | | | | |
| | a | age | b | ity | c | ic | d | ful |
| 16 | (taste , smell and feel) areverbs . | | | | | | | |
| | a | modal | b | regular | c | not | d | sense |

و فيما يلي تمرين شامل لقواعد الوحدة الثانية بطريقه الاتمه الجديدة :

Q : Choose the best alternatives :

| | | | | |
|----|---|------------|---|------------|
| 1 | The stormthe area late on Tuesday evening destroying everything in its path . | | | |
| | a | hit | b | heat |
| | | | c | hat |
| | | | d | hate |
| 2 | The words (crash and accident) are | | | |
| | a | Synonyms | b | antonyms |
| | | | c | prefixes |
| | | | d | suffixes |
| 3 | We use the verb to+ to + infinitive to talk about future plans or forecasts . | | | |
| | a | be | b | do |
| | | | c | have |
| | | | d | modal |
| 4 | Ito meet you tomorrow . | | | |
| | a | will | b | going |
| | | | c | shall |
| | | | d | am |
| 5 | Hear , feel , taste and smell areverbs . | | | |
| | a | helping | b | modal |
| | | | c | regular |
| | | | d | sense |
| 6 | Ito visit him tomorrow . | | | |
| | a | will | b | going |
| | | | c | am |
| | | | d | shall |
| 7 | We watched themfootball . | | | |
| | a | plays | b | played |
| | | | c | plays |
| | | | d | playing |
| 8 | This is the houseI live in . | | | |
| | a | which | b | where |
| | | | c | who |
| | | | d | whose |
| 9 | She felt somethingbehind her . | | | |
| | a | moves | b | moving |
| | | | c | is moving |
| | | | d | moved |
| 10 | Boxersweetheart . | | | |
| | a | wed | b | wedded |
| | | | c | is wedding |
| | | | d | weds |
| 11 | Winds of over 240demolished all the wood on houses and tore the roofs off other . | | | |
| | a | k.m | b | k.G |
| | | | c | kpH |
| | | | d | k.W |
| 12 | What a beautiful house | | | |
| | a | ! | b | ? |
| | | | c | . |
| | | | d | ; |
| 13 | Richter scale was inventedCharles Richter . | | | |
| | a | with | b | in |
| | | | c | on |
| | | | d | by |
| 14 | Only the wordisn't compound . | | | |
| | a | sweetheart | b | nightmare |
| | | | c | landslide |
| | | | d | mango |
| 15 | We add (.....) to make the word (volcano) adjective . | | | |
| | a | age | b | ity |
| | | | c | ic |
| | | | d | ful |
| 16 | (taste , smell and feel) areverbs . | | | |
| | a | modal | b | regular |
| | | | c | not |
| | | | d | sense |

Unit 3 الوحدة الثالثة

3.5

Language review 5 خلاصة لغوية

Page 20 صفحة

1/ The Present perfect continuous : المضارع التام المستمر

The present perfect continuous tense زمن المضارع التام المستمر

The usage : الاستخدام

We use this tense to:

يمكننا أن نستخدم هذا الزمن لـ:

1 talk about the present effects of something that happened over a period of time in the recent past.

١/ للتحدث عن التأثيرات الحالية لشيء حدث خلال فترة زمنية في الماضي القريب.

2 talk about a continuous action that started in the past, continued up to now and may be continuing now.

٢/ للتحدث عن حدث مستمر بدأ في الماضي ، و استمر حتى الآن وربما يستمر الآن .

3 show that something has been changing or developing over a period of time and has been happening regularly.

٣/ لإظهار أن شيئاً ما يتغير أو يتطور على مدى فترة من الزمن و يحدث بانتظام.

The keywords : الكلمات الدالة على الزمن

| | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1/ recently حديثاً / مؤخراً | 2/ still لا يزال | 3/ May be will continue ربما سيستمر |
| 4/ will.....soon قريباً | 6/ just now الآن | 8/ The speaker will continue المتحدث سيستمر |
| 7/ The speaker will probably المتكلم ربما يستمر | 10/ for لمدة | 11/ Perhaps will go on ربما سوف يستمر |
| 9/ since منذ | 12/.....didn'tyet لم يأتي بعد | 13/ I don't know when - 'll stop finish |
| 14/ Come and help | 15/ .enough now | 16/.must be tired 17/ tired |
| 18/ I can't go out | 19/ in the last | 20/ stop 21/ non-stop 22/ how long |
| 23/ that's why ... لهذا | 24/ as a result | 25/ accordingly |
| 26/ consequently | 27/ therefore | 28/ thus 29/ so لهذا 30/ all + time |

| | القاعدة Rule: | أمثلة : Examples |
|----------------------------|--|--|
| 1 / Affirmative الإثبات | S + have, has + been + V (مصدر) + ing + .. (اسم مفرد / he / she / it) → has (اسم جمع / I / you / we / they) → have | 1/ I have been studying English for ten years. And I am still studying English أنا أدرس الإنجليزية لمدة عشر سنوات ، و لا أزال أدرس . 2/ He has been writing his homework since ten o'clock. And he is still writing it. 3/ I have been living here since 1994. |
| 2/ Negative النفي | S + have, has + not + been + V (مصدر) + ing + .. | 1/ I have not been studying English since last year . أنا لم أدرس الإنجليزية منذ العام الماضي . |
| 3/ Yes / No Question | Has/ Have + S فاعل + been + V (مصدر) + ing + .. ? | 1/ Has he been studying English since last year ? 2/ Have you been studying English since last year ? |
| 4/ (WH) Question | WH+ has/ have + S + been + V (مصدر) + ing + ...? | 1/ When has she been studying English ? 2/ Where have you been living since 1994? |

Examples: He has been playing football. (That's why his clothes are dirty.)
It has been raining. (That's why the clothes are wet.)
Mona has been studying English for six years. (And she is still studying English.)
The weather has been getting warmer recently.

ملاحظة :

- The following verbs are not used with the **continuous** tense:
be, have (=own), believe, know, need, like, love, prefer

الأفعال التالية لا يصح أن تستخدم مع زمن المضارع التام المستمر (أي لا يصح أن تضيف لها ing حتى وإن أتت إحدى الكلمات الدالة على زمن المضارع التام المستمر مثل (since / for /) بل تستخدم زمن المضارع التام البسيط (S + has / have + P.p)
be / have = own (يمتلك) like - love - know - hate - prefer - believe - need - seem - want.
I have known him since 2010 . (✓) → I have been knowing since 2010 . (X)

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|--|-------------------|---|--------------|---|--------------------|---|-------------------|
| 2 | Fatima English since 2018. (She is still studying .) | | | | | | | |
| | a | has been studying | b | has studied | c | studies | d | studied |
| 3 | Wefor three hours now. Can you stop for a rest? | | | | | | | |
| | a | walk | b | have walked | c | have being walked | d | have been walking |
| 4 | Iat the computer for ten hours non-stop. It's no wonder my eyes hurt. | | | | | | | |
| | a | have been working | b | have worked | c | work | d | will working |
| 5 | Tell Faisal to come and help. Heto his cassettes for long enough now. | | | | | | | |
| | a | listens | b | has listened | c | has been listening | d | listened |
| 6 | Hefootball . That's why his clothes are dirty. | | | | | | | |
| | a | plays | b | has played | c | has been playing | d | played |
| 7 | Ithat book just now. | | | | | | | |
| | a | have read | b | read | c | have been reading | d | reading |
| 8 | Iout a lot recently. That's why I'm tired. | | | | | | | |
| | a | have gone | b | go | c | have been going | d | went |
| 9 | Imy homework for hours. | | | | | | | |
| | a | have been doing | b | have done | c | do | d | done |
| 10 | Hehere since 1991. (The speaker will probably go on living here.) | | | | | | | |
| | a | lives | b | lived | c | has lived | d | has been living |
| 11 | MonaEnglish for six years. And she is still studying English. | | | | | | | |
| | a | studies | b | has studied | c | has been studying | d | studying |
| 12 | Since the beginning of the year sheall the class trips and activities. | | | | | | | |
| | a | plans | b | has planed | c | has been planning | d | has been plan |
| 13 | The weatherwarmer recently. | | | | | | | |
| | a | has get | b | has getting | c | has been getting | d | has got |
| 14 | Theyall day. | | | | | | | |
| | a | have been working | b | have worked | c | have work | d | working |
| 15 | I have beenabout it but.... | | | | | | | |
| | a | think | b | thinking | c | thinked | d | being think |

3.5

تابع Language review 5 خلاصة لغوية ه

Page 20 صفحة

Compare the Present perfect simple and the Present perfect continuous tenses.

مقارنة بين زمن المضارع التام البسيط و زمن المضارع التام المستمر

The simple tense

- emphasizes the completion of the action
- can refer to actions that happened a long time ago

The continuous tense

- emphasizes how long the action has been going on
- usually refers to something that has been happening recently

| The present perfect simple tense زمن المضارع التام البسيط | The present perfect continuous tense زمن المضارع التام المستمر |
|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • يؤكد على الانتهاء من الحدث • يمكن أن يشير إلى الأحداث التي حدثت منذ وقت طويل | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • يؤكد على المدة التي يستغرقها الحدث • عادة ما يشير إلى شيء ما حدث مؤخراً |
| <p>Examples: I've done my homework. I've read that book.</p> | <p>Examples: I've been doing my homework for hours. I've been reading that book. (just now)</p> |

- Both tenses can be used to describe actions that started in the past

and are still continuing. كلا الزمنين يمكن أن يكونا مستخدمين لوصف أحداث بدأت في الماضي و لا تزال مستمرة.

Examples: I have lived here for six years. (Perhaps the speaker will not continue living there.)

I have been living here since 1994. (The speaker will probably go on living here.)

- The following verbs are not used with the continuous tense: be, have (=own), believe, know, need, like, love, prefer

هذه الفقرة تم شرحها سابقاً ضمن زمن المضارع التام المستمر

Workbook كتاب التمارين Pages 32/ 33

اقرأ هذه الجمل و ضع خط تحت الفعل في الشكل الأكثر ملائمة : A

| The answer الإجابة | السبب في اختيارنا |
|---|--|
| 1/ She <u>has never visited</u> India in her life. | لأن كلمة (in her life) من علامات المضارع التام البسيط |
| 2/ * Why haven't you tidied your room ? لماذا لم ترتب غرفتك ؟ * I <u>have been doing</u> my homework . | أي أن الغرفة لم ترتب حتى الآن ، معنى ذلك أنه مشغول حتى الآن و ربما سيستمر حتى وقت لاحق بعمل واجبه المنزلي ، لذلك كان اختيارنا في زمن المضارع التام المستمر |
| 3/ We <u>have known</u> him for a long time . نحن نعرفه لوقت طويل. | لأن كلمة (for a long time) من الكلمات الدالة على زمن المضارع التام البسيط ، و كذلك الفعل (know) لا يصح أن نستخدمه في المضارع التام المستمر |
| 4/ Why <u>haven't they arrived</u> ? | اخترنا زمن المضارع التام البسيط لعدم تحديد فترة زمنية |
| 5/ I <u>have been going</u> out a lot recently . That's why I'm tired . | كلمة (that's why....) من علامات المضارع التام المستمر |
| 6/ We <u>have been walking</u> for three hours now . Can we stop for a rest ? نحن نمشي لمدة ٣ ساعات الآن . هل يمكننا أن نتوقف للراحة؟ | كلمة (for) + زمن محدد (٣ ساعات) + كلمة (now) تدل على زمن المضارع المستمر. |

اكتب الفعل الذي بين الأقواس في أكثر شكل مناسب في زمن المضارع التام : B :

| الإجابة The answer | السبب في اختيارنا |
|--|---|
| 1/ Well done, Fareed! You (to get) <u>have been getting</u> much better marks in the last months. | لأن كلمة (in the last) من علامات المضارع التام المستمر |
| 2/ The drought is terrible. It (to rain) <u>hasn't rained</u> for the last five years. | لأن كلمة (for the last) + زمن محدد (5 سنوات) تنل على زمن المضارع التام البسيط |
| 3/ I (to be; never) <u>have never been</u> to Great Britain. I hope to go one day. | لأن كلمة (never) من الكلمات الدالة على زمن المضارع التام البسيط ، والفعل (be) لا يصح أن نستخدمه في زمن المضارع التام المستمر |
| 4/ In his life my father (to visit) <u>has visited</u> many different countries. He often tells us about them. | لأن كلمة (in his life) من علامات المضارع التام البسيط |
| 5/ The manager (to listen) <u>has listened</u> to your new song twice and, to be honest, he doesn't like it. | المدير استمع إلى أغنيتك الجديدة مرتين ، و لاكون صادق معك ، هو لم يحبها . أي أن المدير استمع للأغنية مرتين فقط و انتهى الحدث لذلك استخدمنا زمن المضارع التام البسيط. |
| 6/ Tell Faisal to come and help . He (to listen) <u>has been listening</u> to his cassettes for long enough now. | لأن كلمة (for long enough now) من علامات المضارع التام المستمر |
| 7/ I (to know) <u>have known</u> my best friend for almost fourteen years. | لأن كلمة (for) + زمن محدد (14 سنة) من الكلمات الدالة على زمن المضارع التام البسيط ، وكذلك الفعل (know) لا يصح أن نستخدمه في المضارع التام المستمر |
| 8/ I (to work) <u>have been working</u> at the computer for ten hours non-stop. It's no wonder my eyes hurt. | لأن كلمة (for) + زمن محدد (10 ساعات) + كلمة (non-stop) من الكلمات الدالة على زمن المضارع التام المستمر . |

اختر أفضل الخيارات : Q : Choose the best alternatives :

| | | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|---|-------------------|---|-------------|---|-------------------|---|-------------------|
| 1 | Itall day <u>non-stop</u> . (بلا توقف ، أي أن المطر مستمر و يمكن أن يستمر) | a | rain | b | raining | c | has rained | d | has been raining |
| 2 | Fatima English since 2018. (She is still studying . هي لا تزال تدرس .) | a | has been studying | b | has studied | c | studies | d | studied |
| 3 | Wefor three hours now. Can you stop for a rest. | a | walk | b | have walked | c | have being walked | d | have been walking |
| 4 | Ithat book just now. | a | have read | b | read | c | have been reading | d | reading |
| 5 | Iout a lot recently. That's why I'm tired. | a | have gone | b | go | c | have been going | d | went |
| 6 | Hehere since 1991. The speaker will probably go on living here. (المحدث ربما سيستمر في العيش هنا .) | a | lives | b | lived | c | has lived | d | has been living |
| 7 | MonaEnglish for six years. And she is still studying English. وهي لا تزال تدرس الإنجليزية. | a | studies | b | has studied | c | has been studying | d | studying |
| 8 | Theyall day. (day) وقت + all لاحظ وجود كلمة) | a | have been working | b | have worked | c | have work | d | working |
| 9 | I have beenabout it but..... | a | think | b | thinking | c | thought | d | being think |
| 10 | The managerto your song twice and be honest, he doesn't like it. | a | listen | b | listens | c | has listened | d | has been listened |
| 11 | I my best friend for almost fourteen years. | a | know | b | known | c | have been knowing | d | have known |
| 12 | The drought is terrible. Itfor the last five years. | a | rain | b | rains | c | hasn't rained | d | has raining |
| 13 | Why haven't they? | | | | | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|--|------------------|---|------------|---|----------|---|-------------|
| | a | arrived | b | arrive | c | arriving | d | arrives |
| 14 | I have never to Great Britain. I hope to go one day. | | | | | | | |
| | a | be | b | being | c | visit | d | been |
| 15 | Ihere for six years. (perhaps the speaker will not continue living here المتكلم ربما لن يستمر في العيش هنا) | | | | | | | |
| | a | have been living | b | have lived | c | live | d | have living |

3.5

خلاصة لغوية ه Language review 5 تابع

Page 20 صفحة

Rule : قاعدة :

Verb + infinitive فعل في المصدر + فعل ing (مع) أو + or

2 Verb + infinitive or + -ing form

The verbs may be followed either by the infinitive or the -ing form:
begin, continue, start, like, love, prefer, hate

هذه الأفعال (begin , continue , start , like , love , prefer , hate) ربما تكون متبوعة بفعل في المصدر أو فعل مضاف له ing

Examples: It began to rain / began raining. I (don't) like to sail / like sailing.
Note: When would is used in front of like, love, prefer, hate, you must use to ÷ infinitive.

أي أن الأفعال التالية (begin , continue , start , like , love , prefer , hate ,) أو أي فعل آخر تستخدم بطريقتين و هما بمعنى أنه لا يصح أن يأتي فعلان متتابعان في جملة ، فلا بد أن :
1/ إما فصلهما بحرف الجر to و يكتب الفعل التالي في المصدر .
2/ أو أن يكون الفعل الثاني مضاف إليه ing بشرط عدم وجود كلمة (would) في الجملة أو في السؤال
و ذلك كما يلي:

| 1/ either إما | | | 2/ or أو | | |
|--|--|-----------------------|---|--|----------------|
| S فاعل + | begin continue start like love prefer hate | مصدر (inf.) V1 + to | S فاعل + | begin continue start like love prefer hate | + V1 + (ing) |
| <p>أمثلة : 1/ It began to rain. 2/ I don't like to sail. 3/ He likes to swim. 4/ They hate to watch T.V. 5/ She loves to draw.</p> | | | <p>أمثلة : 1/ It began raining. 2/ I don't like sailing. 3/ He likes swimming. 4/ They hate watching T.V. 5/ She loves drawing.</p> | | |

ملحوظة : أما إذا سبقت الأفعال الأربعة التالية (like / love / prefer / hate) بكلمة (would) فلا يوجد لديك إلا خيار واحد و هو أن تلحقهما بحرف الجر to و من ثم فعل في المصدر

| | | | | |
|------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| S فاعل + would + | like love prefer hate | مصدر (inf.) V + to | ملحوظة : كلمة would تختصر بـ ('d) | <p>أمثلة : 1/ I'd like to play volleyball . 2/ They'd love to travel abroad . 3/ We would prefer to study English . 4/ She'd hate to swim.</p> |
|------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------|--|

Q : Choose the best alternatives : اختار أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|------------------------------|-----------|---|------------|---|--------|---|---------|
| 1 | Would you likeabroad ? | | | | | | | |
| | a | to travel | b | travelling | c | travel | d | travels |

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|-------------------------------|---------|---|---------|---|----------|---|------------|
| 2 | Would you likehere ? | | | | | | | |
| | a | come | b | coming | c | to come | d | to coming |
| 3 | I'd hate | | | | | | | |
| | a | smoke | b | smoking | c | to smoke | d | to smoking |
| 4 | I'd likeat home . | | | | | | | |
| | a | to stay | b | stayed | c | staying | d | studies |
| 4 | They prefer | | | | | | | |
| | a | swim | b | to swim | c | swimming | d | b and c |
| 4 | Would you likewith us ? | | | | | | | |
| | a | to come | b | come | c | came | d | coming |
| 4 | It began | | | | | | | |
| | a | raining | b | to rain | c | a and b | d | rainy |

كتاب التمارين Workbook

Page 32 في الجمل التي بالأسفل ، اشطب الفعل غير الصحيح . ملحوظة : هناك بعض الجمل كلا الفعلين هما صحيحين : C

C In the sentence below, cross out the incorrect forms of the verbs.
Note that in some sentences both forms are correct.

- 1 Would you like ~~staying~~/to stay at home or would you prefer ~~going~~/to go for a walk along the corniche?
- 2 I hate to ~~work~~/working in the evenings so I start ~~work~~/to work very early in the morning.
- 3 I would hate ~~being~~/to be in his shoes when his father starts to ~~look~~/looking at his homework.
- 4 Ali's father continues to ~~live~~/living in the town although the rest of the family would prefer ~~living~~/to live in the country.

3.10

Language review 6 خلاصة لغوية 6

Page 23 صفحة

1/ Nouns, adjectives and verbs + prepositions أسماء ، صفات و أفعال + حروف جر

Some adjectives, nouns and verbs are commonly followed by prepositions. These are the ones you have seen in Unit 3:

| Nouns | Adjectives | Verbs |
|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
| training in | interested in | look forward to |
| experience of | grateful for | applying for |
| chance of | | |

Examples: I would like to apply for the job.
I have experience of working with children.
Note: They are always followed by either a noun or a gerund (the-*ing* form).

عزيزي الطالب هناك أسماء و أفعال و صفات يجب أن يتبعها حرف جر معين و ان اخترت حرف جر غيره فيعتبر المعنى خاطئ أو أنك تحصل على معنى غير الذي تقصده . و يأتي بعد حروف الجر إما (noun) اسم أو (gerund) فعل مضاف له *ing*

1/ Nouns + prepositions: أسماء + حروف جر :

| Preposition (in) | Preposition (of) | Preposition (to) |
|---------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| training in | chance of | chance to + inf. |
| success in | experience of | solution to |
| belief in | a shortage of | ability to |
| course in | advantage of | reference to |
| difficulty in | a group of | experience to |
| delay in | knowledge of | |
| increase in | part of | |
| Preposition (for) | Preposition (from) | Preposition (about) |
| reason for | departure from | opinion about |
| excuse for | | information about |
| responsibility for | | |
| opportunity for | Preposition (with) | |
| application for | relationship with | |
| explanation for | contrast with | |

2/ Adjectives + prepositions: صفات + حروف جر :

| Preposition (at) | Preposition (for) | Preposition (in) |
|--------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| good at | grateful for | interested in |
| excellent at | thankful for | |
| bad at | famous for | Preposition (on) |
| hopeful at | responsible for | based on |
| hopeless at | suitable for | |
| clever at | qualified for | Preposition (from) |
| brilliant at | important for | different from |
| | sorry for | |
| | ready for | |
| Preposition (to) | Preposition (of) | Preposition (with) |
| possible to | afraid of | crowded with |
| able to | fond of | satisfied with |
| willing to | confident of | popular with |
| capable to | proud of | pleased with |
| ready to | full of | angry with |
| married to | kind of | connected with |
| kind to | sick of | sick with |
| polite to | capable of | Preposition (about) |
| similar to | incapable of | worried about |
| related to | | crazy about |
| important to | | sorry about |
| nice to | | excited about |
| thankful to | | angry about |

3/ Verbs + prepositions: : أفعال + حروف جر :

| Preposition (on) | | Preposition (for) | | Preposition (into) | |
|---------------------------------|--------------|----------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| depend on | يعتمد على | look for | يبحث عن | divide into | ينقسم إلى |
| rely on | يثق بـ | wait for | ينتظر لـ | | |
| focus on | يركز على | ask for | يسأل عن / يطلب الحصول على شيء ما | Preposition (at) | |
| concentrate on | يركز على | blame for | يلقي اللوم على | look at | ينظر إلى |
| put on | يلبس / يرتدي | apply for | يتقدم بطلب للحصول على | laugh at | يضحك من / على |
| decide on | يقرر أن | used for | يستخدم لـ / من أجل | shout at | يصرخ على |
| | | excuse for | يعتذر عن | | |
| Preposition (to) | | Preposition (in) | | Preposition (of) | |
| look forward to + v(inf.) + ing | يتطلع إلى | fill in | يملا | get rid of | يتخلص من |
| belong to | ينتمي إلى | believe in | يصدق بـ / يؤمن بـ | take care of | يعني بـ |
| lead to + noun | يؤدي إلى | live in | يعيش في | make sure of | يتأكد من |
| talk to | يتكلم إلى | succeed in | ينجح في | get out of | يخرج من |
| decide to | يقرر أن | made in + اسم دولة | صنع في | think of | يفكر بـ |
| explain to | يشرح لـ | Preposition (with) | | dream of | يحلم بـ |
| refer to | يشير إلى | deal with | يتعامل مع | frighten of | يخاف من |
| listen to | يستمع إلى | agree with | يتفق مع | made of + material | مصنوع من |
| point to | يشير إلى | disagree with | يختلف مع | Preposition (after) | |
| try to | يحاول أن | fill with | يملى بـ | look after | يعني بـ |
| used to | اعتاد أن | get along with | يتسجم مع | Preposition (about) | |
| Write to | يكتب لـ | talk with | يتكلم مع | Write about | يكتب عن |
| ask to | يطلب أن | focus with | يركز مع | talk about | يتكلم عن |
| | | concentrate with | يركز مع | think about | يفكر حول |
| | | live with | يعيش مع | | |
| | | Covered with/ in | مغطى بـ | | |

4/ (instead (adverb) + of) بدلاً عن / عوضاً عن

فيما يلي جدول يحتوي على حروف جر مختلفة تستخدم مع نفس الكلمات و ما الذي يجب أن يتبعها في شكل مقارنة لتعرف الفرق في كيفية اختيار حرف الجر المناسب في كل مرة :

| | | |
|----|--|--|
| 1 | at school في المدرسة | in the school laboratory / in the school holidays / |
| 2 | important to (مهم لـ) + v(inf.) فعل مصدر Ex. / It is important to understand this rule | important for (مهم من أجل) + v(ing) فعل مضاف له Ex. / It is important for us that we choose the |
| 3 | Chance to + v(inf.) فعل مصدر | Chance of + v(ing) (ing فعل مضاف له) or noun اسم |
| 4 | Ask + noun اسم + to + verb فعل Ex. / Ask the boy to put away his bag . | Ask + noun اسم + for + noun اسم Ex. / Ask your school office for an application from . |
| 5 | ...used to (اعتاد أن) + v(inf.) فعل مصدر Ex. / A telescope used to study the stars . | ...used for (مستخدم لـ) + v(ing) فعل مضاف له Ex. / A telescope is used for studying the stars . |
| | ...used by (مستخدم بواسطة) + اسم بشر | ...used in اسم + مستخدم في |
| 6 | .. made of (مصنوع من) + اسم المادة المصنوع منها شيء ما Ex. / The tree is made of wood . | اسم دولة + (صنع في) made in Ex. / this car is made in China . |
| | ...made by (صنع بواسطة) + اسم بشر Ex. / This cars are made by Japanese. | اسم دولة + (صنع في) ...made from Ex. / This bread is made from flour . |
| 7 | Fill in Ex. / Fill in the blanks below to make.. ... املأ الفراغات | Fill ...with يملأ بـ Ex. / Fill the bottle with water . املأ القارورة بالماء . |
| 8 | ...think about اسم شيء + يفكر في Ex. / Thinking about the future . | ...think of اسم شخص + يفكر في Ex. / I am thinking of the prophet Mohammed . |
| 9 | ...live in + اسم مكان (He lives in Sana'a) | live with + اسم بشر (He lives with Ali .) |
| 10 | ...stay at / stay at اسم مكان + يبقى أو يمكث في | stay with + اسم بشر (يمكث أو يبقى مع) |
| 11 | ready to (جاهز أن) + v(inf.) فعل مصدر Ex. / He is ready to go . | ready for (جاهز لـ) + noun اسم Ex. / We are ready for the exam . |

| | | |
|----|--|--|
| 12 | able to (قادر على) + verb فعل Ex./ He is able to swim. | capable of (قادر على) + v(ing) Ex./ A scale is capable of weighing objects . |
| 13 | measured in يقاس بـ Ex./ The distance is measured in K.m. | measured on يقاس بـ Ex./ The strength of an earthquake is measured on the Richter Scale . |

Q : Choose the best alternatives : : اختار أفضل الخيارات :

| | |
|----|---|
| 1 | The cat is coveredfur . a in b with c by d on |
| 2 | The window is madeglass . a in b of c by d on |
| 3 | We don't teachthe weekend . a in b with c at d of |
| 4 | They livethe first floor . a of b in c on d at |
| 5 | Hana'a is badbiology . a at b in c on d for |
| 6 | Abdullah gets up7 o'clock . a at b in c on d of |
| 7 | They camea bus . a on b in c by d for |
| 8 | This car is madeBritain . a in b of c by d on |
| 9 | I am gratefulyou . a for b of c in d with |
| 10 | He has experienceteaching children . a for b of c in d to |
| 11 | Animals are dividedfamilies . a for b with c into d onto |
| 12 | They are interestedreading . a in b on c at d with |
| 13 | She is goodArabic . a in b on c at d for |
| 14 | They are gooddealingpeople . a at / in b in / at c at / with d on / with |
| 15 | I believeAllah . a in b on c by d with |
| 16 | Fill the bottlewater . a into b with c by d in |
| 17 | They usually come to schoolfoot . a in b on c by d with |
| 18 | They always come to workbus . a in b with c by d on |
| 19 | He is willingtravel abroad . a in b to c on d at |
| 20 | Don't lookyour dictionary . It's with me . a up b after c for d to |
| 21 | They are going to apply this job . a in b of c for d on |
| 22 | I'm leaving the countrythe end of the month . a on b to c at d in |
| 23 | You should applythe job . a for b by c of d in |
| 24 | Is there any chancegetting tickets for tonight concert ? |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|--|-------|---|------|---|------|---|-------|
| | a | of | b | for | c | at | d | in |
| 25 | Yemeni people are famoustheir generosity . | | | | | | | |
| | a | about | b | of | c | by | d | for |
| 26 | Can you explain this ruleme, please? | | | | | | | |
| | a | at | b | for | c | to | d | of |
| 27 | This car is differentthat car. | | | | | | | |
| | a | from | b | at | c | of | d | by |
| 28 | A nurse looksthe patients. | | | | | | | |
| | a | after | b | for | c | to | d | of |
| 29 | I look forwardmeeting you. | | | | | | | |
| | a | on | b | in | c | at | d | to |
| 30 | We believepaying people well. | | | | | | | |
| | a | on | b | at | c | in | d | for |
| 31 | She is marriedAli. | | | | | | | |
| | a | to | b | from | c | of | d | with |
| 32 | He is hopelessit. | | | | | | | |
| | a | at | b | on | c | of | d | in |
| 33 | A plough used to turnthe soil. | | | | | | | |
| | a | about | b | up | c | in | d | over |
| 34 | The streets are crowdedcars and people. | | | | | | | |
| | a | to | b | for | c | with | d | of |
| 35 | I am satisfiedmy fate. | | | | | | | |
| | a | with | b | at | c | in | d | on |
| 36 | Dependyourself. | | | | | | | |
| | a | on | b | from | c | in | d | at |
| 37 | Be confidentyourself. | | | | | | | |
| | a | in | b | at | c | for | d | of |
| 38 | He is thinkinghis future. | | | | | | | |
| | a | into | b | on | c | at | d | about |

و فيما يلي الفقرة الثانية من الخلاصة رقم ٦ :

2 Addition

الإضافة

Addition, here, means giving information. To do this, we use connecting words,

- inside a sentence,
- at the end of a sentence,
- at the beginning of a sentence.

الإضافة ، هنا ، تعني إعطاء (تقديم) معلومات. لفعل هذا ، نستخدم كلمات ربط ،
• بداخل جملة ،
• في نهاية جملة ،
• في بداية جملة.

توضح هذه الفقرة أن هناك كلمات تستخدم لربط جملة تضيف معلومات إلى الجملة الأولى و الكلمات هي :

- أيضاً 5/ too / أيضاً 4/ also / أيضاً 3- as well مع 2- together with / بالإضافة إلى 1- as well as
سبب آخر 8- Another reason / بالإضافة 7- In addition علاوة على ذلك / فوق ذلك 6- Furthermore

| كلمة الربط Joining Word | The usage : الاستخدام | أمثلة : Examples |
|---|--|--|
| 1 1/ as well as بالإضافة إلى ذلك 2/ together with بالإضافة إلى ذلك / مع 3/ and و | *inside a sentence بداخل الجملة عادة ما تأتي الجملتين متشابهتين في الفعل والفاعل لذلك سنقوم بحذفهما من الجملة الثانية و نكتب مباشرة ما بعدهما ولا ننسى أن نحذف النقطة من نهاية الجملة الأولى. 1/ Clause 1 الجملة + as well as + المفعول به من الجملة الثانية (object) 2/ Clause 1 الجملة + together with + المفعول به من الجملة الثانية (object) | 1/ He likes swimming. He likes reading. He likes swimming as well as reading. 2/ He wore a hat and a coat. He put on woolen gloves. • He wore a hat and a coat as well as woolen gloves. • He wore a hat and a coat together with woolen gloves. |
| 2 1/ as well أيضاً 2/ too أيضاً يكتبان في نهاية الجملة الثانية . 3/ also أيضاً تكتب في نهاية الجملة الثانية أو في وسطها بعد الفاعل . | *at the end of a sentence في نهاية الجملة 1/ Clause 1 الجملة + Clause 2 الجملة + as well . 2/ Clause 1 الجملة + Clause 2 الجملة + too . 3/ * Clause 1 الجملة + Clause 2 الجملة + also . Note: also can be used inside a sentence. ملاحظة : also يمكن أن تستخدم بداخل الجملة. تكملة الجملة ٢ + also + (الفاعل في الجملة ٢ S) + الجملة ١ | 1/ He wore a hat and a coat. He put on woolen gloves. He wore a hat and a coat. He put on woolen gloves as well . He wore a hat and a coat. He put on woolen gloves also . Or He wore a hat and a coat. He also put on woolen gloves. 2/ He is short . His brother is short. * He is short . His brother is short as well . * He is short . His brother is short too . * He is short . His brother is short also . Or * He is short . His brother also is short. |
| 3 1/ Furthermore زيادة على ذلك 2/ In addition بالإضافة إلى ذلك | *at the beginning of a sentence في بداية الجملة 1/ Clause 1 الجملة + , + Furthermore + , + Clause 2 2/ Clause 1 الجملة + , + In addition + , + Clause 2 | 1/ She is polite and friendly. She is very conscientious. *She is polite and friendly. Furthermore , she is very conscientious . * She is polite and friendly. In addition , she is very conscientious. |
| 4 Another reason سبب آخر تكتب في البداية | ت حذف الفاعل و من ثم نضع الفعل في المصدر و نضيف للفعل ing تكملة الجملة + Another reason + for + V. ing + | Another reason for giving her the job is her patience . سبب آخر لإعطائها الوظيفة هو صبرها . |

Q : Choose the best alternatives : : اختر أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|---------------|---|----------------|---|-------------|---|---------------|
| 1 | Samar washed the dishes . She washed the car | | | | | | | |
| | a | in addition | b | as well as | c | as well | d | together with |
| 2 | He likes swimmingtravelling . | | | | | | | |
| | a | as well | b | another reason | c | as well as | d | furthermore |
| 3 | Eman is polite,, she is very conscientious . | | | | | | | |
| | a | as well | b | as well as | c | In addition | d | together with |
| 4 | Sara is polite , she is helpful . | | | | | | | |
| | a | as well as | b | furthermore | c | although | d | because |
| 5 |for giving her the job is her patience . | | | | | | | |
| | a | as well as | b | Another reason | c | although | d | because |
| 6 | He wore a coat and a hatwoolen gloves . | | | | | | | |
| | a | together with | b | Another reason | c | as well | d | also |

اما بالنسبة للفقرة الثالثة من الخلاصه رقم ٦ فهي:

3 Consequence النتيجة

Consequence is about one idea being the result of another.
The expressions used to connect the ideas are as follows:

النتيجة هي أن تكون فكرة ما نتيجة فكرة أخرى.
العبارات المستخدمة لربط الأفكار هي كما يلي:

- بناء على ذلك / و بالتالي 4- consequently / لذا / بناء على ذلك 3- therefore / لذلك 2- so / لأن 1- because
وفقاً لذلك / و هكذا 7- accordingly / نتيجة لذلك 6- as a result / نتيجة لذلك 5- as a consequence
و هكذا / و بالتالي 9- thus / ولهذا السبب / لهذا 8- that is why

هذه كلمات تستخدم لربط جملتين أحدهما تسمى جملة السبب (reason) و الأخرى تسمى جملة النتيجة (result) ، (أي أن السبب الموجود في جملة السبب قد تسبب في نشوء النتيجة الموجودة في جملة النتيجة) .
١/ ولكن عند الربط يختلف موقع كلمة (because) بالنسبة للجملتين عن بقية الكلمات ، بحيث أن كلمة because لا بد أن تكتب بعدها جملة السبب ، أينما وجدت كلمة (because) سواء في البداية أو في الوسط بين الجملتين ، و نضع فاصلة سفلية بعد الجملة الأولى في حالة إذا أنت (because) في البداية فقط .

| NO. | كلمة الربط Joining Word | كيف تستخدم |
|-----|--|--|
| 1 | Because (بسبب لأن) قد تأتي في البداية | 1/ Because + (reason) (جملة السبب) + , + (result) (جملة النتيجة) تكملة C + فعل V + فاعل S + , + تكملة C + فعل V + فاعل S + Because |
| | أمثلة: Examples | 1/ Because it rained all day , Ali couldn't leave. بسبب أنها أمطرت طوال اليوم ، علي ما استطاع أن يغادر. |
| | قد تأتي في الوسط | 2/ (result) (جملة النتيجة) + because + (reason) (جملة السبب) |
| | أمثلة: Examples | 2/ Ali couldn't leave because it rained all day . علي ما استطاع أن يغادر لأنها أمطرت طوال اليوم . |

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| | Because of بسبب | 1/ Because of + (reason) (جملة السبب) + , + (result) (جملة النتيجة) 2/ (result) (جملة النتيجة) + because of + (reason) (جملة السبب) |
| | أمثلة: Examples Because of + * noun اسم * pronoun ضمير * V1 + ing | 1/ Because of his injuries , he died . بسبب جروحه ، هو مات . 2/ He died because of his injuries . هو توفي (مات) بسبب جروحه . 3/ Because of the war , many people died . بسبب الحرب ، الكثير من الناس ماتوا . ملحوظة هامة : عندما يأتي حرف الجر (of) بعد كلمة (because) ، عادة ما يأتي بعدها (اسم أو ضمير أو فعل مضاف له ing) |

٢/ بينما بقية الكلمات عادة ما نضعها في الوسط بين الجملتين ، بحيث تكتب جملة السبب قبل هذه الكلمات ، و نضع فاصلة سفلية قبل أو بعد هذه الكلمات على حسب الكلمة .

| | | | |
|---|-----------------|---|---------------------------|
| 2 | So لذلك | (result) (جملة النتيجة) + so + (reason) (جملة السبب) | يجب أن تضع الفاصلة قبل so |
| | أمثلة: Examples | It was raining , so they couldn't go out . هي كانت تمطر ، لذلك هم ما استطاعوا أن يخرجوا . | |

| | | |
|---|-------------------------|---|
| 3 | that is why لهذا | (result) (جملة النتيجة) + that is why + (reason) (جملة السبب) |
| | أمثلة: Examples | They want to pass the exam , that is why they are studying hard . هم يريدون أن ينجحوا في الامتحان ، لذلك هم يدرسون بجد . |
| | | They want to pass the exam . That is why , they are studying hard . |

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| 4 | Therefore / لذا بناء على ذلك | 1/ He didn't get up early . Therefore , he was late for work. هو لم يستيقظ مبكراً . لذا ، هو تأخر عن العمل . 2/ He didn't get up early ; therefore , he was late for work. 3/ He came first . Therefore he got a seat . |
| 5 | consequently و بالتالي | 1/ I forget my keys , consequently I was late for work. أنا نسيت مفاتيحي ، و بالتالي أنا تأخرت عن العمل. 2/ He didn't study well , consequently he failed in the exam. هو لم يدرس جيداً ، و بالتالي هو رسب (فشل) في الامتحان. |

| | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|---|
| 6 | as a result نتيجة لذلك | (جملة السبب reason) + As a result + , + (جملة النتيجة result) |
| | أمثلة : Examples : | 1/ He was injured. As a result , he died. هو كان مجروح . نتيجة لذلك ، هو مات . 2/ I forget my keys . As a result , I was late for work. أنا نسيت مفاتيحي . نتيجة لذلك ، أنا تأخرت عن العمل. 3/ He made one big mistake . As a result , he lost his job. هو عمل خطأ كبير . نتيجة لذلك ، هو خسر عمله. |
| | as a result of نتيجة لـ | 1/ (جملة السبب reason) + as a result of + (جملة النتيجة result) 2/ As a result of + (جملة السبب reason) + , + (جملة النتيجة result) |
| | أمثلة : Examples : | 1/ He died as a result of his injuries. هو توفي (مات) نتيجة لـ جروحه . 2/ As a result of his injuries , he died. نتيجة لـ جروحه ، هو مات . 3/ As a result of the war , many people died. نتيجة لـ لحرب ، الكثير من الناس ماتوا . ملحوظة هامة : عندما يأتي حرف الجر (of) بعد كلمة (as a result) يحدث العكس ، بحيث تكتب جملة السبب بعد (as a result of) |

٤/ وهناك اختلاف في كيفية استخدام كلمة **thus** بحيث نحذف الفاعل الذي في جملة النتيجة و نضيف للفعل **ing** بعد وضعه في المصدر.

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| 7 | Thus لذلك / و بالتالي + v (ing) | (جملة النتيجة result) + thus + , + (جملة السبب reason) بحيث يأتي بعد thus فعل مضاف له ing |
| | | They want to pass the exam , thus studying hard. هم يريدون أن ينجحوا في الامتحان ، و بالتالي (لذلك) يدرسون بجد. |

Q : Choose the best alternatives : : اختر أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|-----------|---|----------------|---|----------------|---|-------------|
| 1 | Ali wants to pass the exam ,studying hard . | a | thus | b | that is why | c | another reason | d | Because |
| 2 | He was driving fastthey had an accident . | a | Thus | b | Another reason | c | Although | d | so |
| 3 | The weather was cold , they wore coats . | a | therefore | b | as well as | c | because | d | but |
| 4 | He lost his jobhe was late for work . | a | Thus | b | because | c | Although | d | as well |
| 5 | he was late for work , he lost his job. | a | so | b | because | c | That is why | d | as a result |
| 6 | He was late for work., he lost his job. | a | thus | b | because | c | That is why | d | as well |

كتاب التمارين (خاص بالخلاصة رقم ٦) Workbook

Page 39

استخدم الكلمات التي في الصندوق لإكمال هذا الجمل . أولاً اختر حرف الجر الصحيح من الصندوق الأول . ثم اختر العبارة المناسبة من : A
الصندوق الثاني ، استخدم كل عبارة مرة واحدة فقط . و اكتب أي فعل في الشكل الصحيح : (قم بمراجعة درس حروف الجر)

- 1/ for the job advertised . 2/ in working aboard . 3/ in animal care .
4/ in shouting at animals . 5/ of the Far East 6/ of to show you some of my work
7/ to getting a higher salary . 8/ for a quick reply .

انظر إلى أزواج الجمل التي بالأسفل . قرر الربط بينهما بواحدة من أدوات الربط الخاصة بالإضافة أو الخاصة بالنتيجة. B :
ملحوظة : هذا التمرين يعتمد على مدى معرفتك بترجمة الجمل .

- ١/ هو كان كسول و لم يستطع أن يتحدث لغة أجنبية . هو لم يحصل على وظيفته في الوزارة .
٢/ على تقدم بطلب الكثير من الأعمال في صنعاء . هو تقدم لطلب كثير من الوظائف في الخارج .
٣/ فاطمة مجتهدة و بارعة في الكمبيوتر . هي ممتازة في مهارات التواصل . هي رانعة في التعامل مع المشاكل .
٤/ محمد دائماً حصل على علامات جيدة في العلوم . هو أراد أن يصبح طبيب .

الإجابات

١/ لأن الجملتين أحدهما جملة سبب و الأخرى جملة نتيجة سنستخدم واحدة من كلمات ربط النتيجة (consequence) مثل (because / so / ...)

٢/ لأن الجملة الثانية تحتوي على معلومات إضافية إلى الجملة الأولى سنستخدم واحدة من كلمات ربط الإضافة (addition)

٣/ لأن الجملتين الثانية و الثالثة تحتويان على معلومات إضافية للجملة الأولى سنستخدم واحدة من أدوات الربط الخاصة بالإضافة (addition)
٤/ لأن الجملتين أحدهما جملة سبب و الأخرى جملة نتيجة سنستخدم واحدة من كلمات ربط النتيجة (consequence) مثل (because / so / ...)

C Join the pairs of sentences in as many ways as you can.

- اربط أزواج الجمل بطرق عديدة كيفما تستطيع . (ربطنا الزوجين ١ و ٢ من التمرين كما يلي و عليك بربط الزوجين ٣ و ٤ بنفسك)
١/ He was not given the job in the Ministry because he was lazy and could not speak a foreign language .
أو / He was lazy and could not speak a foreign language , so he was not given the job in the Ministry .
٢/ Ali applied for a lot of jobs in Sana'a . He applied for a lot of position abroad also .
أو / Ali applied for a lot of jobs in Sana'a as well as abroad .

Q 2 : Choose the best alternatives :

| | | | | |
|----|---|--------------------|---|----------------------|
| 1 | You must beand showif you want to be an excellent teacher . | | | |
| | a | Patient / patience | b | Patiently / Patient |
| | c | Patience / Patient | d | Patience / Patiently |
| 2 | I don't know what to do afterschool . | | | |
| | a | leave | b | left |
| | c | leaving | d | leaves |
| 3 | I am gratefulyou . | | | |
| | a | in | b | at |
| | c | of | d | for |
| 4 | He looks forward toyou . | | | |
| | a | meet | b | meeting |
| | c | met | d | meat |
| 5 | If Iyou , I'd study English . | | | |
| | a | were | b | are |
| | c | was | d | am |
| 6 | We would like | | | |
| | a | travel | b | travelling |
| | c | to travel | d | traveled |
| 7 | It began | | | |
| | a | to rain | b | rain |
| | c | raining | d | 1 and 3 |
| 8 | He bought a hosea car . | | | |
| | a | as well | b | furthermore |
| | c | thus | d | as well as |
| 9 | She is interestedsports . | | | |
| | a | in | b | on |
| | c | at | d | of |
| 10 |for giving her the job , is her patience . | | | |
| | a | Another reason | b | thus |
| | c | Together with | d | In addition |
| 11 | Salary ismoney as pay . | | | |
| | a | a pair of | b | a crowd of |
| | c | amount of | d | a group of |

| | | | | |
|----|---|------------------|---|------------|
| 12 | Hevolleyball . That's why his clothes are dirty . | | | |
| | a | has been playing | b | has played |
| | | | c | play |
| | | | d | is play |
| 13 | The teacher will explain this lessonyou . | | | |
| | a | for | b | to |
| | | | c | at |
| | | | d | on |
| 14 | She is bad atwith them . | | | |
| | a | deal | b | deals |
| | | | c | dealing |
| | | | d | dealt |
| 15 | Fillthis application form . | | | |
| | a | in | b | with |
| | | | c | at |
| | | | d | of |
| 16 | If I were in your , I'd travel there . | | | |
| | a | shorts | b | sandals |
| | | | c | shoes |
| | | | d | clothes |
| 17 | They like swimming . They like travelling | | | |
| | a | together with | b | as well |
| | | | c | also |
| | | | d | 1 and 3 |
| 18 | We add the suffix () to make the word (conscious) noun . | | | |
| | a | less | b | ly |
| | | | c | ness |
| | | | d | ment |
| 19 | The word (friendly) is a / an | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun |
| | | | c | adjective |
| | | | d | adverb |
| 20 | She has experienceworking with children . | | | |
| | a | of | b | for |
| | | | c | wih |
| | | | d | at |
| 21 | He is | | | |
| | a | biology | b | ambitious |
| | | | c | adventure |
| | | | d | ambition |

و فيما يلي تمرين شامل لقواعد الوحدة الثالثة بطريقة الأتمة الجديدة :

Q 2 : Choose the best alternatives :

| | | | | |
|----|---|--------------------|---|----------------------|
| 1 | You must beand showif you want to be an excellent teacher . | | | |
| | a | Patient / patience | b | Patiently / Patient |
| | | | c | Patience / Patient |
| | | | d | Patience / Patiently |
| 2 | I don't know what to do afterschool . | | | |
| | a | leave | b | left |
| | | | c | leaving |
| | | | d | leaves |
| 3 | I am gratefulyou . | | | |
| | a | in | b | at |
| | | | c | of |
| | | | d | for |
| 4 | He looks forward toyou . | | | |
| | a | meet | b | meeting |
| | | | c | met |
| | | | d | meat |
| 5 | If Iyou , I'd study English . | | | |
| | a | were | b | are |
| | | | c | was |
| | | | d | am |
| 6 | We would like | | | |
| | a | travel | b | travelling |
| | | | c | to travel |
| | | | d | traveled |
| 7 | It began | | | |
| | a | to rain | b | rain |
| | | | c | raining |
| | | | d | 1 and 3 |
| 8 | He bought a hosea car . | | | |
| | a | as well | b | furthermore |
| | | | c | thus |
| | | | d | as well as |
| 9 | She is interestedsports . | | | |
| | a | in | b | on |
| | | | c | at |
| | | | d | of |
| 10 |for giving her the job , is her patience . | | | |
| | a | Another reason | b | thus |
| | | | c | Together with |
| | | | d | In addition |
| 11 | Salary ismoney as pay . | | | |
| | a | a pair of | b | a crowd of |
| | | | c | amount of |
| | | | d | a group of |
| 12 | Hevolleyball . That's why his clothes are dirty . | | | |
| | a | has been playing | b | has played |
| | | | c | play |
| | | | d | is play |
| 13 | The teacher will explain this lessonyou . | | | |
| | a | for | b | to |
| | | | c | at |
| | | | d | on |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|---------------|---|-----------|---|-----------|---|----------|
| 14 | She is bad atwith them . | | | | | | | |
| | a | deal | b | deals | c | dealing | d | dealt |
| 15 | Fillthis application form . | | | | | | | |
| | a | in | b | with | c | at | d | of |
| 16 | If I were in your , I'd travel there . | | | | | | | |
| | a | shorts | b | sandals | c | shoes | d | clothes |
| 17 | They like swimming . They like travelling | | | | | | | |
| | a | together with | b | as well | c | also | d | 1 and 3 |
| 18 | We add the suffix () to make the word (conscious) noun . | | | | | | | |
| | a | less | b | ly | c | ness | d | ment |
| 19 | The word (friendly) is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 20 | She has experienceworking with children . | | | | | | | |
| | a | of | b | for | c | wih | d | at |
| 21 | He is | | | | | | | |
| | a | biology | b | ambitious | c | adventure | d | ambition |

الوحدة الرابعة Unit 4

الأسئلة الذيلية Tag Questions

The Rule : القاعدة

- ١ / يستخدم السؤال الذيلي للتأكيد ، بمعنى (أليس كذلك) ؟
 ٢ / السؤال الذيلي هو الذي يكتب بعد الفاصلة في نهاية السؤال .
 ٣ / إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة ، فيجب أن يكون السؤال الذيلي منفيًا ، أما إذا كانت الجملة منفية ، فيجب أن يكون السؤال الذيلي مثبت .
 ٤ / كما سبق و أن عرفت أن معنى أن تكون الجملة منفية هو وجود كلمة (not) أو (no) فيها
 ٥ / الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة مثل : (am – is – are – was – were – has – have – had – could – would – will – can –)
 ٦ / تكون صيغة السؤال الخاص بالسؤال الذيلي كالتالي : (shall – should – may – might – must)

Q: Add question tag to the following sentences : أضف سؤال ذيلي إلى الجمل التالية :

يتم تكوين السؤال الذيلي على حسب الفاعل و الفعل المساعد الموجودين في الجملة (قبل الفاصلة) كالتالي :

| الإجابة (إضافة السؤال الذيلي للجمل) | الشرح و التوضيح |
|--|---|
| 1- He is good , <u>isn't he</u> ? | ١ / الجمل الثلاث مثبتة و بالتالي يجب أن تكون الأسئلة الذيلية منفية . ٢ / إذا كان الفاعل هو أحد الضمائر (I / she / it / we / they) فإتينا نضع نفس الضمير في السؤال الذيلي ٣ / إذا أتى بعد الفاعل أحد الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة فإتينا نضع نفس الفعل في السؤال الذيلي و نضيف له not لكي تنفيه |
| 2- They are playing football now , <u>aren't they</u> ? | الجملة المقابلة منفية و بالتالي سيكون السؤال الذيلي مثبت (بدون not) |
| 3- He has written the lesson , <u>hasn't he</u> ? | إذا بدأت الجملة بـ (I am) فنكتب في السؤال الذيلي (aren't) |
| 4- He can't speak English , <u>can he</u> ? | في حالة أنه لم يكن يوجد فعل مساعد أو ناقص في الجملة فهو يحتوي على فعل رئيسي و هذا الفعل إذا انتهى بـ (s أو es) فإتينا سنكتب في السؤال الذيلي doesn't |
| 5-Iam helping my mother, <u>aren't I</u> ? | أما إذا كان الفعل في المصدر (بدون أي إضافات) فإتينا سنكتب في السؤال الذيلي don't |
| 1- He goes there every day , <u>doesn't he</u> ? | أما إذا كان الفعل في التصريف الثاني (ماضي) فإتينا سنكتب في السؤال الذيلي didn't |
| 2- They watch this channel every day , <u>don't they</u> ? | إذا أتى في الجملة doesn't فإتينا سنكتب في السؤال الذيلي does ليصبح السؤال الذيلي مثبت |
| 3- He helped me yesterday , <u>didn't he</u> ? | إذا أتى في الجملة didn't فإتينا سنكتب في السؤال الذيلي did ليصبح السؤال الذيلي مثبت |
| 4- She doesn't help us every day , <u>dose she</u> ? | * إذا بدأت الجملة بـ (This) و (That) أو كان الفاعل (اسم شيء غير عاقل) فإتينا نكتب بدلاً عنها في السؤال الذيلي ضمير الفاعل (it) . |
| 5- They didn't go there yesterday , <u>did they</u> ? | * إذا بدأت الجملة بـ (These) أو (Those) أو كان الفاعل اسم جمع فإتينا نكتب بدلاً عنها في السؤال الذيلي ضمير الفاعل (they) |
| 6- This is a pen , <u>isn't it</u> ? 7- That is an apple , <u>isn't it</u> ? | إذا كان الفاعل في الجملة اسم مذكر مفرد فإتينا نكتب بدلاً عنه ضمير الفاعل he |
| 8-The cat was here yesterday , <u>wasn't it</u> ? | إذا كان الفاعل في الجملة اسم مؤنث مفرد فإتينا نكتب بدلاً عنه ضمير الفاعل she |
| 9- These are chairs , <u>aren't they</u> ? | |
| 10- Those are students , <u>aren't they</u> ? | |
| 11-The students are in the class , <u>aren't they</u> ? | |
| 12-Ahmed is good at English , <u>isn't he</u> ? | |
| 13-Arwa is good at English , <u>isn't she</u> ? | |

Q : Choose the best alternatives : اختار أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|------------|---|-------------|---|--------------|---|-------------|
| 1 | They aren't teachers , ? | a | are they | b | aren't they | c | aren't we | d | aren't you |
| 2 | He helps his father daily , ? | a | is he | b | does he | c | isn't he | d | doesn't he |
| 3 | They bought a car yesterday , ? | a | don't they | b | didn't they | c | haven't they | d | aren't they |
| 4 | He doesn't have pens , does he ? | a | . | b | ? | c | ! | d | , |
| 5 | He is excellent at English , isn't he ? | a | . | b | ? | c | ! | d | , |
| 6 | He is a student , ? | a | is he | b | does he | c | isn't he | d | doesn't |

4.6

خلاصة لغوية ٧ Language review 7

Page 28 صفحة

1 Use of sequence words and phrases (first, then, next, after that, finally)

استخدام كلمات و عبارات التتابع (التعاقب) :

You use these words to introduce each stage of a process.

Examples: First you fry the onions and garlic.
Then you add the spices.
Next you add the tomatoes.
After that you cover the mixture.
Finally you simmer for fifteen minutes.

تستخدم هذه الكلمات عند كتابة خطوات إجراء عملية أو تجربة ما مثل (خطوات طبخ طبق ما) بحيث تكتب في بداية كل خطوة و غالباً ما يكتب بعدها فاصلة (comma) ، مع العلم أنه يمكن تكرار كلمة (then أو next) في حالة كانت الخطوات عديدة.

Note: some writers put a comma after each of these sequence words/phrases.

Example: First, put some water in a pan.

| NO. | Sequences words كلمات التعاقب | Examples | أمثلة |
|-----|----------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1 | First أولاً | How to cook a hard-boiled egg? | كيف تسلي البيض؟ |
| 2 | then ثم | First, put some water in a pan. Then put the | أولاً، نضع بغض الماء في المقلاة. ثم |
| 3 | next بعد ذلك ، ثم | egg in the water. Next heat the water until it is | نضع البيض في الماء. بعد ذلك نسخن |
| 4 | after that بعد ذلك | boiling. After that, boil for seven minutes. | الماء إلى أن يغلي. بعد ذلك يغلي لسبع |
| 5 | Finally أخيراً | Finally, take the egg out of the water. | دقائق. أخيراً، نخرج البيض من الماء. |

2/ Use of the Passive استخدام المبني للمجهول سيتم شرح هذا في قسم القواعد

3/ Use of while + Present continuous with Present simple

استخدام كلمة (while) + مضارع مستمر مع مضارع بسيط :

We use while + Present continuous with the Present simple when we want to show that two actions happen at the same time.

نستخدم while + مضارع مستمر مع المضارع البسيط عندما نريد أن نبين بأن هناك حدثان يحدثان في نفس الوقت.

قاعدة : Rule

حسب القاعدة الآتية :

1/ While + Present continuous (مضارع بسيط) + Present simple (مضارع مستمر)

While + S فاعل + (am- is -are) + V(inf.)+ing فعل + C. + , + S+V(Inf.) or V(s-es-ies) + C تكملة الجملة

2/ Present simple (مضارع بسيط) + while + Present continuous (مضارع مستمر)

S+V(Inf.) or V(s-es-ies) +C تكملة الجملة + while + S فاعل + (am- is -are) + V(inf.)+ing فعل + C.

Example: First action الحدث الأول Second action الحدث الثاني
While the mixture is boiling gently, you fry the pieces of fish.

1/ while the mixture is boiling gently , you fry the pieces of fish.. بينما الخليط يغلي بلطف ، أنت تقلي قطع السمك .

2/ while you are waiting for the water to boil , you put the coffee in the pot. بينما تنتظر الماء أن يغلي ، تضع البن في القدر .

Q / D : Choose the best alternatives : (تمرين في كتاب الواجب صفحة ٤٦) اختار افضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---------------|---|-------------|---|------------|---|-----------|
| 1 | While the mixture , you fry the pieces of fish . | | | | | | | |
| | a | was boiling | b | boiling | c | is boiling | d | boils |
| 2 | while you are for the water to boil, you put the coffee in the pot. | | | | | | | |
| | a | wait | b | waiting | c | waited | d | waits |
| 3 | While the oven is heating up, youthe ingredients. | | | | | | | |
| | a | prepare | b | preparing | c | prepared | d | prepares |
| 4 | You make the sauce while the food..... | | | | | | | |
| | a | was cooking | b | cooks | c | is cooking | d | cooked |
| 5 | While hea newspaper, he watches T.V. | | | | | | | |
| | a | is reading | b | was reading | c | read | d | reading |
| 6 | While the Friday orator is speaking, the people..... | | | | | | | |
| | a | was listening | b | listen | c | listened | d | listening |

Page 45 كتاب التمارين (تخص الخلاصة رقم ٧ بالكامل) Workbook

A Give instructions for making coffee. Use sequence words and phrases.

قدم خطوات لكيفية صنع البن ، استخدم كلمات و عبارات التعاقب :
 First, you put some water in a kettle. Then, you add some sugar. Next, you boil it for 5 minutes. Finally, you add some coffee.

B: المطلوب منك هنا أيضاً أن تشرح كيفية طبخ صلصة البيتزا (الحل موجود ضمن الجدول أيضاً) :

B Your supervisor is telling you how to make the sauce for frozen pizzas produced at your factory. You are going to write the process in an instruction manual. Use the Present passive, as your focus is on the ingredients.

First you fry the onions and garlic.
 Then you add the spices.
 Next you add the tomatoes.
 After that, you cover the mixture.
 Finally you simmer for fifteen minutes.

مشرّفك يخبرك كيف تصنع صلصة البيتزا المجمدة المحفوظة في مصنعكم. سوف تكتب خطوات العملية بشكل مختصر . استخدم المضارع المبني للمجهول .

First the onions and garlic are fried. Then ...

the spices are added. Next, the tomatoes are added.
 After that, the mixture is covered. Finally, it is simmered for fifteen minutes.

كلمات و كلمات أكثر Words and more words

29 صفحة Page

و فيما يلي ما يخص الطريقة الثانية لابتداع الكلمات الجديدة

البوادي واللواحق Prefixes and Suffixes

The definitions : التعريف

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | The stem of a word أصل الكلمة The main word الكلمة الأساسية Stem (أصل) = original أصلي = root جذر / أصل | 1/ is the part that is common to all forms of that word. هو الجزء الذي يكون شائع (مشترك) بالنسبة لكل الأشكال من تلك الكلمة. 2/ the part of a word that stays the same when different endings added to it, for example, (polite) in politely. هي جزء الكلمة التي يبقى نفسه (كما هو) عند إضافة النهايات المختلفة إليها ، مثل |
| 2 | Affix إضافة - زوائد الكلمة | 1/ a way of creating new words to English . هي طريقة لابتداع كلمة جديدة في اللغة الانجليزية . 2/ a group of letters added to the beginning or end of a word to change its meaning or use, such as, (un, dis, mis) or (ness, or, ly, ...) هي مجموعة حروف تأتي في بداية أو نهاية كلمة لتغير معناها أو استخدامها مثل (un, dis ,...) أو (ness) 3/ means prefixes and suffixes. تعني بوادي و لواحق . |
| A | A prefix البادئة | 1/ a group of letters added to the beginning of a word, such as, (un, mid, ...) to change its meaning and make a new word.. هي مجموعة حروف تأتي في بداية كلمة مثل (un, mid ,...) لتغير معناها و تصنع كلمة جديدة. 2/ a group of letters comes in front of a word. هي مجموعة حروف تأتي في مقدمة كلمة. 3/ a group of letters comes before a word. هي مجموعة حروف تأتي قبل كلمة. 4/ usually changes the meaning of a word. هي عادة تغير معنى الكلمة . |
| B | A suffix الإضافة / اللاحقة | 1/ a group of letters added to the end of a word to form a new word, such as, (ness) in (kindness) and (ly) in (quickly). هي مجموعة حروف تأتي في نهاية كلمة لتشكيل كلمة جديدة ، مثل .. 2/ a group of letters comes after (behind) a word. هي مجموعة حروف تأتي بعد كلمة. 3/ a group of letters comes at the back of a word. هي مجموعة حروف تأتي خلف كلمة. 4/ usually changes a word into different parts of speech. عادة تغير نوع الكلمة في أجزاء الكلام . |

| Prefixes بوادي | Suffixes (لواحق) إضافات |
|--|---|
| il / im / in / ir / un / non / dis / mis / re / mid / micro / tele / bi / tri / mono / quad / penta / anti / sub / ex / over / inter / multi / super / uni | er / r / or / ance / ence / ment / tion / ion / ation / ure / ture / sion / ssion / ity / ness / cy / age / th / ous / less / ful / y / ern / ic / lcal / able / al / ese / en / ed / ly |

أولاً : البوادي (prefixes) :

1/ Negative Prefixes :

١ / البوادي التالية تعطي معنى مقابل (عكس) للكلمة عندما تضاف إلى بداية كلمة

ir / il / in / im / un / non / dis = not = opposite of = ليس / غير / لا / عكس

mis = bad (badly) = wrong (wrongly) = على نحو سيئ أو خاطئ (سوء)

| Prefix البادئة | Examples أمثلة |
|----------------|--|
| ir | irregular غير منتظم / irrelevant غير متصل / irrational / irresponsible irrespective / ... |
| il | *illegal غير شرعي / illogical غير منطقي / ... *illiterate / illegitimate * illegible / |
| im | *impolite غير مهذب / impossible غير ممكن / *imperfect / impatient / ... *immeasurable / immovable / *immortal / |

| | |
|----------|---|
| in | *indirect غير مباشر / independent / indefinite غير محدد *invisible / invalid / indivisible/ incapable/ incorrect... *inactive / inexpensive / ineffective / inattentive /..... *insufficient / inconvenient / inefficient *informal / infamous |
| dis | *disagree غير موافق / disappear غير ظاهر / disadvantage/ *disapprove / disprove / disable/.. *disobey / disobedient / disorder/ *dishonest / dishonour *disloyal / dislike / *displace / displacement / display / *disconnected / disconnection/ |
| mis | *misuse / misspell /..... *misunderstand / mislead /..... *misfortune *misplay / misplace / misprint / *misbehave / misbelief / |
| un | *unlike غير مشابه / unstop / *unusual غير عادي / unwell / untrue... *unsure / unclear / unfamiliar/ un-smoker / ... *untidy / unhappy / unlucky / unnecessary / unhealthy / unfriendly / unexpectedly / unfortunately/.. * uncommon / unknown / uncertain / |
| non | *unconscious / unconscientiously / unconsciousness / *uncomfortable / uncountable / unable / unbelievable / unchangeable / *unhelpful / unfaithful / unsuccessful / ... *unexpected / unpunished / unfilled/ unfinished / unmarried / uncontrolled / unfixed / unchanged / ... |
| non | nonhuman / nonstop / non-important / non-countable / nonsmoker / ... |
| un / non | (uncountable / non-countable) - (unstop / nonstop) - (un-smoker / nonsmoker) (unimportant / non-important) |
| dis / un | (dislike / unlike) - (disable / unable) - (discomfortable / uncomfortable) - (disbelief / unbelief) - (disconnected / unconnected) - (displaced / unplaced) |

٢ / و فيما يلي بقية البوادي مع معناها و أمثلة عليها

| Prefix البادئة | The meaning المعنى | Examples أمثلة |
|-------------------|---|--|
| re | again / back = إعادة / تكرار / أخرى / مرة ثانية | reread / صور ثقية / rewrite / يعيد كتابة / retake |
| mid | middle / half = منتصف / وسط | midnight / منتصف الليل / midterm / midsummer / midway |
| mini / tiny | small = صغير / صغير جداً | mini bar / حافلة صغيرة / minibas / tiny cat / قطعة صغيرة |
| micro | small = صغير / صغير جداً | microscope / microwave / |
| tele | far = بعيد | telescope / telephone / television / ... |
| bi | two / double / twice = مرتين / ثاني / دبل | bicycle / اللغتين / biannual / نصف سنوي / |
| tri | three = ثلاثي | triangle / مثلث / tricycle / دراجة بثلاث عجلات / |
| mono | one / single = واحد / أحادي / فردي | Monobasic / أحادي اللون / monochromatic / القاعدة / |
| quad | four = رباعي / أربعة | Quadrangle / رباعي الأضلاع / quadrilateral / |
| penta | five = خماسي / خمسة | Pentagonal / خماسي الأضلاع / pentagram / |
| anti | against = ضد | Antibiotic / مضاد للجراثيم / antitrust / مضاد للصدا / |
| Sub | under = تحت / شبه / فرعي | Subway / تحت سطح البحر / غواصة / submarine / نفق / قطار أرضي / Subtropical / شبه استوائي / subtitle / عنوان فرعي / |
| ex | former = سابق / متقدم = previous = سابق | ex-wife / زوجة سابقة / ex-president / رئيس سابق / |
| over | too much = كثير جداً | Oversleep / منبهك جداً / overtired / نوم أكثر من المعتاد |
| inter | between / among = بين | International / دولي / interbank / دولي (بين الدول) / |
| multi | many = عديد / متعدد | multi-national / متعدد الخلايا / multicellular / |
| super | above / more / greater = فوق / أعلى / أكثر | Superman / الرجل الخارق / superstar / |
| uni | one / single = واحد / موحد | Uniform / unicellular / أحادي الخلية / |

ثانياً : اللواحق (الإضافات) (suffixes)

1/ Suffixes that change (convert) the verb to a noun. / اللواحق (الإضافات) التالية تحول الفعل إلى اسم .

*Suffixes that mean someone who / a person who .. (er / or / ist / cian / ee) اللواحق التي تعني شخص ما

| Suffix | Examples | أمثلة | Suffix | Examples | أمثلة | Suffix | Examples | أمثلة |
|--------|---|------------------|--------|-----------------------|---------------|--------|-------------------------------|---|
| er / r | Teacher / player / maker / driver / ... | معلم / لاعب / .. | or | visitor / actor / ... | | ist | florist / chemist / dramatist | بائع الزهور / صيدلي / عالم كيميائي / كاتب مسرحي |
| ee | referee / conferee / employee | مدفوع له / موظف | cian | magician / musician | ساحر / موسيقي | ant | assistant / accountant | متنافس / محاسب |

2/ Suffixes that change the verb to a noun. / اللواحق (الإضافات) التالية تحول الفعل إلى اسم .

| | | | | | |
|-------|--|------|---|-------|---|
| ance | acceptance / appearance / importance / | ence | difference / existence / dependence / | ment | movement / management / measurement / |
| tion | Production / introduction ... | ion | discussion / expression / | ation | explanation / information |
| ure | pressure / departure / | ture | creature / mixture | sion | division / decision / |
| ssion | permission / admission / | ing | Moving / playing / | | |

3/ Suffixes that change (convert) the adjective to a noun. / اللواحق (الإضافات) التالية تحول الصفة إلى اسم .

| | | | |
|------|---|--|--|
| ness | *darkness / thickness / sickness / weakness / quickness / | | |
| | * badness / goodness / hardness / kindness / blindness / sadness / madness / ... | | |
| | * happiness / busyness / heaviness / scruffiness / readiness / craziness / easiness / laziness / tidiness / | | |
| | * seriousness / consciousness / conscientiousness / ... | | |
| | * ugliness / friendliness / .. * cheapness / illness / politeness / willingness / .. | | |

| Suffix (ity) | | | |
|----------------|-------------|----------------|---------------|
| able | قادر | Ability | قدرة |
| possible | محتمل | possibility | احتمال |
| visible | مرئي | visibility | رؤية |
| responsible | مسئول | responsibility | مسؤولية |
| Sensible | محسوس | sensibility | احساس |
| Stupid | أحمق / غبي | Stupidity | حمافة / غباء |
| humid | رطب | humidity | رطوبة |
| equal | متساوي | equality | تساوي |
| national | وطني / قومي | nationality | قومية / جنسية |

| Suffix (cy) | | | |
|---------------|-------|--------------|-----------|
| literate | متقف | literacy | معرفة ... |
| transparent | شفاف | transparency | شفافية |
| efficient | فعال | efficiency | فعالية |
| urgent | لحرج | urgency | إلحاح |
| frequent | متكرر | frequency | تكرار |
| sufficient | كاف | sufficiency | كفاية |

| Suffix (th) | | | |
|---------------|--------------|----------|--------------|
| warm | دافئ | warmth | دفء |
| true | صحيح / حقيقي | truth | صحة / حقيقة |
| long | طويل | length | طول |
| strong | قوي | strength | قوة |
| young | شاب / صغير | youth | شبابية / صبا |
| deep | عميق | depth | عمق |
| wide | عريض / واسع | width | عرض / سعة |
| dead | ميت | death | موت |

| Suffix (ance / ence) | | | |
|------------------------|-------|--------------|-------------|
| silent | صامت | silence | صمت |
| different | مختلف | difference | اختلاف |
| present | حاضر | presence | حضور |
| patient | صابر | patience | صبر |
| dependent | معتمد | dependence | اعتماد |
| confident | واثق | confidence | ثقة |
| independent | مستقل | independence | استقلال |
| diligent | مجتهد | diligence | اجتهاد |
| excellent | ممتاز | excellence | امتياز |
| absent | غائب | absence | غياب |
| violent | عنيف | violence | عنف |
| important | مهم | importance | اهمية |
| distant | بعيد | distance | بعد / مسافة |

| Suffix (age) | | | |
|----------------|--------------|----------|-----------|
| short | قصير | shortage | قصر / شحة |
| married | متزوج | marriage | زواج |
| store | مخزن / مخزون | storage | اختزان |

4/ Suffixes that change (convert) the adjective to an adverb.

٤/ اللواحق (الإضافات) التالية تحول الصفة إلى ظرف (حال

| Suffix | Examples أمثلة |
|--------|---|
| ly | *Politely / slowly / quickly / suddenly / commonly / mainly / *totally / partially / officially / formally *carelessly / recklessly / .. *carefully / beautifully / successfully / faithfully /.... *easily / angrily / happily / crazily / |

5/ Suffixes that change (convert) the verb to an adjective. ٥/ اللواحق (الإضافات) التالية تحول الفعل إلى صفة.

| Suffix | Examples أمثلة | Suffix | Examples أمثلة |
|--------------------------|--|--------|---|
| ed | *distilled / *married / worried / ... *polluted / educated / required / engaged / damaged / | able | breakable / enjoyable/ comparable / considerable / measurable/ eatable / moveable / changeable / manageable / readable / |
| ive / tive / ative | active / descriptive / talkative / ... | | |

6/ Suffixes that change (convert) the adjective to a verb. ٦/ اللواحق (الإضافات) التالية تحول الصفة إلى فعل.

| Suffix (en) means to become | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------|--------|------------|---|-------|---------|----|------|--------|
| 1 | cheap | cheapen | 4 | wide | widen | 8 | weak | weaken |
| 2 | sharp | sharpen | 5 | deep | deepen | 9 | dark | darken |
| 3 | strong | strengthen | 6 | short | shorten | 10 | sick | sicken |
| | | | 7 | hard | harden | | | |

7/ Suffixes that change (convert) the noun to an adjective. ٧/ اللواحق (الإضافات) التالية تحول الاسم إلى صفة.

| Suffix (able) means capable of being / able to | | | |
|--|------|-------------|---------|
| comfort | راحة | comfortable | مريح |
| value | قيمة | valuable | ذو قيمة |
| desire | رغبة | desirable | مرغوب |
| love | حب | lovable | محبوب |
| reason | | reasonable | |

| Suffix (ful) means full of / tending to | | | |
|---|--------|------------|-------------|
| power | قوة | powerful | قوي |
| wonder | روعة | wonderful | رائع |
| fear | خوف | fearful | خائف |
| care | حذر | careful | حذر |
| skill | مهارة | skillful | ماهر |
| success | نجاح | successful | ناجح |
| beauty | جمال | beautiful | جميل |
| help | مساعدة | helpful | مساعد |
| colour | لون | colourful | ملون |
| use | فائدة | useful | مفيد - نافع |
| hope | أمل | hopeful | متلهف |

| Suffix (ic) | | | |
|---------------|------------|--------------|-----------|
| Islam | إسلام | Islamic | إسلامي |
| volcano | بركان | volcanic | بركاني |
| science | علم | scientific | علمي |
| acid | حمض | acidic | حمضي |
| photograph | فوتوغرافيا | photographic | فوتوغرافي |
| formula | صيغة | formulaic | مصاغ |
| energy | طاقة/نشاط | energetic | فعال/نشيط |
| atmosphere | جو | atmospheric | جوي |
| epidemic | وباء | epidemic | وبائي |
| sulphur | كبريت | sulphuric | كبريتي |

| Suffix (ous) means full of / relating to | | | |
|--|-----------|-------------|---------|
| disaster | كارثة | disastrous | كارثي |
| mountain | جبل | mountainous | جبلي |
| danger | خطر | dangerous | خطير |
| adventure | مغامرة | adventurous | مغامر |
| desire | رغبة | desirous | راغب في |
| fame | شهرة | famous | مشهور |
| mystery | غموض | mysterious | غامض |
| continuity | استمرارية | continuous | مستمر |
| ambition | طموح | ambitious | طموح |
| religion | ديني | religious | متدين |

| Suffix (less) means without بدون | | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------|------------|--------------------|
| hope | أمل / رجاء | hopeless | يائس / بدون أمل |
| help | عون / مساعدة | helpless | عاجز / بلا عون |
| colour | لون | colourless | بلا لون |
| home | بيت / منزل | homeless | بلا مأوى / مشرد |
| end | نهاية | endless | بلا نهاية |
| care | اهتمام | careless | مهمل / لا مبال |
| seed | بذرة | seedless | بلا بذرة |
| pain | ألم / وجع | painless | بلا ألم / غير مزلم |

| Suffix (en) means made of | | | |
|-----------------------------|-----|--------|------|
| gold | ذهب | golden | ذهبي |
| wood | خشب | wooden | خشبي |
| wool | صوف | woolen | صوفي |

| Suffix (n) | | | |
|--------------|---------|-----------------|--------|
| اسم الدولة | | الصفة (الجنسية) | |
| America | أمريكا | American | أمريكي |
| Armenia | أرمينيا | Armenian | أرمني |
| Russia | روسيا | Russian | روسي |
| Rome | روما | Roman | روماني |
| Africa | أفريقيا | African | أفريقي |
| India | الهند | Indian | هندي |
| Arabia | العربية | Arabian | عربي |

| Suffix (ed) | | | |
|---------------|--------------|------------|-------------|
| point | موقع | pointed | محدد |
| interest | اهتمام | interested | مهتم |
| exhaust | | exhausted | منهك |
| control | تحكم / سيطرة | controlled | |
| curve | قوس | curved | منحني |
| worry | قلق / توتر | worried | قلق / متوتر |
| desert | صحراء | deserted | صحراوي |

| Suffix (ern) | | | |
|----------------|------|----------|-------|
| east | شرق | eastern | شرقي |
| west | غرب | western | غربي |
| north | شمال | northern | شمالي |
| south | جنوب | southern | جنوبي |

| Suffix (al) | | | |
|----------------|-------------|---------------|--------|
| adjective | صفة نعت | adjectival | نعتي - |
| verb | فعل | verbal | |
| addition | إضافة | additional | إضافي |
| education | تربية | educational | تربوي |
| preposition | حرف جر | prepositional | |
| tradition | تقليد | traditional | تقليدي |
| instruction | تعليم | instructional | تعليمي |
| accident | حادث | accidental | عرضي |
| coast | ساحل | coastal | ساحلي |
| music | موسيقى | musical | موسيقى |
| environment | بيئة | environmental | بيئي |
| experiment | تجربة | experimental | تجريبي |
| development | تطور | developmental | |
| government | حكومة / حكم | governmental | حكومي |
| agriculture | زراعة | agricultural | زراعي |
| nature | طبيعة | natural | طبيعي |
| culture | ثقافة | cultural | ثقافي |
| center | مركز | central | مركزي |
| neutralization | محايدة | neutral | محايد |
| neutrality | تعادل حياد | | متعادل |
| equality | مساواة | equal | متساوي |
| horizon | أفق | horizontal | أفقي |

| Suffix (ese) | | | |
|----------------|---------|-----------------|---------|
| اسم الدولة | | الصفة (الجنسية) | |
| Japan | اليابان | Japanese | ياباني |
| China | الصين | Chinese | صيني |
| Vietnam | فيتنام | Vietnamese | فيتنامي |

| Suffix (i) | | | |
|--------------|--------|---------|-------|
| Yemen | Yemeni | Yemeni | يميني |
| Oman | عمان | Omani | عماني |
| Iraq | العراق | Iraqi | عراقي |
| Kuwait | الكويت | Kuwaiti | كويتي |
| Qatar | قطر | Qatari | قطري |

| Suffix (ial) | | | |
|----------------|--------|--------------|---------|
| adverb | ظرف | adverbial | ظرفي |
| part | جزء | partial | جزئي |
| industry | صناعة | industrial | صناعي |
| specialist | متخصص | special | خاص - |
| specialty | خصوصية | | خصوصي |
| society | مجتمع | social | اجتماعي |
| family | عائلة | familial | عائلي |
| adverb | ظرف | adverbial | ظرفي |
| part | جزء | partial | جزئي |
| industry | صناعة | industrial | صناعي |
| specialist | متخصص | special | خاص - |
| specialty | خصوصية | | خصوصي |
| society | مجتمع | social | اجتماعي |
| family | عائلة | familial | عائلي |
| office | وظيفة | official | موظف |
| president | رئيس | presidential | رئاسي |
| ministry | وزارة | ministerial | وزاري |

| Suffix (ical) | | | |
|-----------------|------------|------------|---------|
| tropic | خط استواء | tropical | استوائي |
| logic | علم المنطق | logical | منطقي |
| chemistry | كيمياء | chemical | كيميائي |
| medicine | طب (دواء) | medical | طبي |
| electricity | كهرباء | electrical | كهربائي |
| type | نوع | typical | نوعي |
| history | تاريخ | historical | تاريخي |

| Suffix (y) | | | |
|--------------|-------------|---------|----------------|
| wind | رياح | windy | عاصف |
| cloud | غيوم | cloudy | غائم |
| sand | رمل | sandy | رملي |
| speed | سرعة | speedy | سريع |
| greed | طمع | greedy | طماع |
| mud | وحل | muddy | موحل |
| tidiness | ترتيب | tidy | مرتب |
| mist | غبار | misty | مغبر |
| dirt | وسخ | dirty | متسخ |
| thirst | عطش | thirsty | عطشان |
| dust | غبار | dusty | مغبر |
| honest | أمين / صادق | honesty | أمانة / صدق |
| salt | ملح | salty | مملح |
| rock | صخرة | rocky | صخري |
| luck | حظ | lucky | محظوظ |
| cock | | cocky | مغرور |
| milk | حليب | milky | لبنى |
| risk | خطر | risky | محقوق بالمخاطر |
| rain | مطر | rainy | ممطر |
| sun | شمس | sunny | مشمس |
| fog | ضباب | foggy | ضبابي |

| Suffix (y) | | | |
|--------------|------------|---------|-------------|
| fur | فرو | fury | ذات فرو |
| fun | هزل | funny | هزلي |
| hunger | جوع | hungry | جائع |
| health | صحة | healthy | صحي |
| wealth | ثروة | wealthy | ثري |
| hill | تلة / هضبة | hilly | كثير التلال |
| spices | بهارات | spicy | حار متبل |
| ice | جليد / ثلج | icy | جليدي |
| taste | طعم / مذاق | tasty | لذيذ الطعم |
| shade | ظلال | shady | مظلل |
| scare | خوف | scary | مخيف |
| noise | ضجيج | noisy | ضاج |
| sugar | سكر | sugary | سكري / حلو |
| water | ماء | watery | مائي |
| anger | غضب | angry | غاضب |
| hunger | جوع | hungry | جائع |

لواحق أخرى : Other suffixes :

Suffix (ache) means pain

headache / backache /

Suffix (hood) means state / quality

childhood / Neighborhood / motherhood /

Suffix (dom) means state / quality of being

freedom / wisdom /

Suffix (ship) means having a quality

Friendship / ownership / membership /

Suffix (ics) means the science / the study of

Mathematics / Diabetics / pediatrics /

Suffix (ology) means the science / the study of

biology / neurology / archaeology / geology / ...

و فيما يلي سؤاليين بطريقة الأتمتة تخص البوادي و اللواحق

Q1: Write True (T) or False (F) :

| NO. | The statements العبارات | Answer الاجابة | تصحيح الخطأ |
|-----|--|----------------|-------------|
| 1 | Affix is the part that is common to all forms of that word . | F | stem |
| 2 | Suffix usually changes the meaning of a word . | F | Prefix |
| 3 | Prefix a group of letters that goes in front the stem . | T | |
| 4 | Prefix is added to the end of a word . | F | Suffix |
| 5 | Some common examples of prefixes are (re) (un) and (dis) . | T | |
| 6 | (helpless) means without end . | F | endless |
| 7 | Some common examples of prefixes are (less) and (able) . | F | suffixes |

Q2 : Choose the best alternatives :

| | | | | | | | | | |
|----|--|---|-----------------|---|-----------------------|---|----------------------------|---|---------------------------|
| 1 |is a prefix. | a | ed | b | ir | c | ing | d | less |
| 2 | The prefix (.....) means (again). | a | un | b | en | c | kilo | d | re |
| 3 | The steam of the word (misunderstanding) is | a | mis | b | ing | c | mis / ing | d | understand |
| 4 | The prefix in the word (international) is | a | in | b | inter | c | int | d | in / al |
| 5 | The prefix (uni) means..... | a | one (signal) | b | two (double / twice) | c | three | d | one hundred |
| 6 | The prefix (.....) changes the meaning of the word (lead) into negative. | a | il | b | ir | c | dis | d | mis |
| 7 | A group of letters that goes at the beginning of a word . | a | prefix | b | suffix | c | Stem | d | Synonyms |
| 8 | The suffixmakes the word " home " adjective . | a | ible | b | ture | c | less | d | tive |
| 9 | If you add the suffix (tion) to the word (prepare), it will become a / an | a | verb | b | noun | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 10 | The word (friendly) has | a | one suffix | b | 2 suffixes | c | 3 suffixes | d | four suffixes |
| 11 | The suffix (.....) means (without). | a | less | b | ful | c | ous | d | ing |
| 12 | The word (disappearance) include | a | a prefix | b | a suffix | c | a prefix and a suffix | d | compound |
| 13 | The word (unsuccessfully) has..... | a | one prefix | b | one suffix | c | one prefix and 2 suffixes | d | one prefix and one suffix |
| 14 | The word (unless) has..... | a | one prefix only | b | one suffix | c | both a prefix and a suffix | d | no answer |
| 15 |is a suffix. | a | mid | b | multi | c | ing | d | mono |
| 16 | The word (helplessly) include..... | a | one prefix | b | one suffix | c | 2 suffixes | d | a suffix but no prefix |
| 17 | The word (recklessly) has..... | a | one prefix | b | 2 suffixes | c | one suffix only | d | one prefix and 2 suffixes |
| 18 | (en) can be..... | a | a prefix only | b | a suffix only | c | both a prefix and a suffix | d | nothing |
| 19 | The adjective of the word (unhappily) is | a | unhappy | b | happily | c | unhappily | d | happiness |
| 20 | The suffix (ist) means..... | a | the study of | b | the science of | c | someone who | d | 1 and 2 |
| 21 | A group of letters that goes at the beginning of a word . | a | prefix | b | suffix | c | Stem | d | nothing |
| 22 | The word (Unbelievable) has كلمة () فيها | a | a prefix | b | a suffix | c | both | d | nothing |
| 23 | The word (midyear) has | a | prefix | b | suffix | c | both | d | None of them |
| 24 | The word (impossible) has | a | prefix | b | Only suffix | c | Only prefix | d | Prefix and suffix |
| 25 | The prefixmake the word " literate " negative . البادئةتجعل كلمة "....." منفية . | a | il | b | im | c | in | d | ir |
| 26 | The prefixmakes the word " polite " negative . | | | | | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|------|---|------|---|------|---|---------|
| | a | mis | b | mid | c | im | d | dis |
| 27 | The suffixmakes the word " play " noun . . اسم " اللاحقةتجعل كلمة " " | | | | | | | |
| | a | s | b | nes | c | r | d | ing |
| 28 | The suffixmakes the word " slow " adverb . | | | | | | | |
| | a | ing | b | ly | c | ily | d | er |
| 29 | The prefix in the word " unbelievable " | | | | | | | |
| | a | un | b | able | c | le | d | nothing |
| 30 | The suffixchanges the word (success) into an adjective . | | | | | | | |
| | a | ing | b | ed | c | tion | d | ful |
| 31 | To change these words (possible and visible) into nouns we add | | | | | | | |
| | a | ing | b | ful | c | ment | d | ity |
| 32 | We addto the words (short / deep) to make them verbs . | | | | | | | |
| | a | age | b | er | c | en | d | ess |
| 33 | We addto change the word (polite) into negative . | | | | | | | |
| | a | un | b | im | c | dis | d | re |
| 34 | The suffixchanges the word (accident) into an adjective . | | | | | | | |
| | a | ous | b | al | c | ic | d | ed |
| 35 | To change the word (produce) into a noun we add the suffix | | | | | | | |
| | a | ed | b | sion | c | en | d | tion |
| 36 | To change the word (reason) into an adjective we add | | | | | | | |
| | a | al | b | ful | c | ing | d | able |
| 37 | To change the word (invent) into a noun, we add | | | | | | | |
| | a | ly | b | ion | c | ness | d | able |
| 38 | To make the word (true) negative we add the prefix | | | | | | | |
| | a | in | b | un | c | im | d | dis |
| 39 | The prefixmakes the word (well) negative . | | | | | | | |
| | a | in | b | dis | c | un | d | im |
| 40 | The suffixchanges the word (acid) into an adjective . | | | | | | | |
| | a | ic | b | ial | c | ity | d | ess |
| 41 | To change the word (press) into a noun we add | | | | | | | |
| | a | tion | b | sion | c | ure | d | ful |
| 42 | We addto make the word (mountain) an adjective . | | | | | | | |
| | a | ful | b | less | c | ous | d | able |
| 43 | We addto make the word (value) an adjective . | | | | | | | |
| | a | ful | b | ing | c | ous | d | able |
| 44 | To make the word (happy) an adverb, add the suffix | | | | | | | |
| | a | ly | b | lly | c | y | d | lly |
| 45 | To make the words (chew, graze, plough, cackle) nouns we add | | | | | | | |
| | a | ed | b | r | c | ing | d | al |
| 46 | To make the word (coast) an adjective we add | | | | | | | |
| | a | al | b | ily | c | are | d | l |
| 47 | To make the words (rain, dirt, dust, cloud) adjectives we add | | | | | | | |
| | a | y | b | ly | c | ous | d | ful |
| 48 | To make these words (wool and wood) adjectives we add..... | | | | | | | |
| | a | ed | b | en | c | ern | d | ese |
| 49 | We addto change the word (compare) into a noun . | | | | | | | |
| | a | sion | b | tion | c | ment | d | hood |
| 50 | We addto change the word (care) into an adjective . | | | | | | | |
| | a | able | b | ible | c | ful | d | fully |
| 51 | We addto change the word (difficult) into a noun . | | | | | | | |
| | a | ment | b | y | c | tion | d | ture |
| 52 | To make the word (worry) an adjectives we add..... | | | | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|------|---|------|---|-------|---|---------|
| | a | ed | b | ing | c | ity | d | ied |
| 53 | To make the word (describe) a noun we add..... | | | | | | | |
| | a | slon | b | tion | c | ment | d | ence |
| 54 | To make the words (decide and divide) nouns we add | | | | | | | |
| | a | tion | b | sion | c | ment | d | ence |
| 55 | We addto change the word (desert) into an adjective . | | | | | | | |
| | a | er | b | ed | c | ation | d | ism |
| 56 | We addto change the word (measure) into a noun . | | | | | | | |
| | a | tion | b | ing | c | ment | d | b and c |
| 57 | We addto change the words (imagine and inform) into nouns . | | | | | | | |
| | a | ment | b | tion | c | ation | d | sion |
| 58 | We addto change the words (swim and farm) into nouns . | | | | | | | |
| | a | ed | b | ity | c | er | d | est |

وفيما يلي ما يخص الطريقة الثالثة لابتداء الكلمات الجديدة

The Compound Words الكلمات المركبة

تعريف: Definition

- 1/ The Compound words : is to combine or join two nouns to make a new word .
: هي أن تجمع أو تربط اسمين لتكون كلمة جديدة .
- 2/ The Compound words : When two nouns combine to make one word and are called compounds .
عندما يرتبط اسمان ليكونا (ليصنعا) كلمة واحدة وتسمى كلمات مركبة .

• أنواع الكلمات المركبة : Types of compound words

يوجد 3 أشكال للكلمات المركبة : There are 3 forms of compound words:

- 1/ Sometimes they stay as 2 words. (Two separated words) . (كلمتين منفصلتين) .
أحيانا تبقىان ككلمتين

أمثلة: Examples:

| | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| Coast road طريق ساحلي | Forest fire حريق غابة | Fault line خط تصدع |
| English teacher مدرس انجليزي | Tourist guide مرشد سياحي | Bank manager مدير بنك |
| Adult education محو الأمية | Seat belt حزام امان | tourist guide |

- 2/ Sometimes they have a hyphen (Two words between them a hyphen) . (بينهما) شرطة (-) .
أحيانا لهما (بينهما) شرطة (-) .

أمثلة: Examples:

| | | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| Taxi-driver سائق تاكسي | Ice-cream آيس كريم | First-aid اسعاف اولي | Air-conditioner مكيف هواء |
|------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|

- 3/Sometimes they are joined (One joined or combined word) . (كلمتين مدمجتين في كلمة واحدة) .
أحيانا تكون مرتبطة (كلمتين مدمجتين في كلمة واحدة) .

أمثلة: Examples:

| | | | |
|----------|------------|-----------|-------------|
| birthday | sweetheart | blueberry | countryside |
|----------|------------|-----------|-------------|

(وفيما يلي المزيد من الأمثلة على النوع الثالث (كلمات مركبة مدمجة))

| No. الرقم | Compound Words الكلمات المركبة | The meaning المعنى | No. الرقم | Compound Words الكلمات المركبة | The meaning المعنى | No. الرقم | Compound Words الكلمات المركبة | The meaning المعنى |
|-----------|--------------------------------|--------------------|-----------|--------------------------------|--------------------|-----------|--------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1- | bedroom | غرفة نوم | 26- | Rainbow | قوس قزح | 50- | Postman | ساعي بريد |
| 2- | Football | كرة قدم | 27- | underwater | تحت الماء | 51- | Policeman | شرطي |
| 3- | Handball | كرة اليد | 28- | Rainwater | مياه المطر | 52- | Spokesman | ناطق بلسان ... |
| 4- | Breakfast | فطور | 29- | Rainfall | هطول المطر | 53- | Gentleman | رجل محترم |
| 5- | Countryside | ريف | 30- | Raindrop | قطرة المطر | 54- | Highway | طريق سريع |
| 6- | workbook | كتاب واجب | 31- | Headline | عنوان رئيسي | 55- | Highlands | مرتفعات |
| 7- | weekend | نهاية اسبوع | 32- | Landslide | انهيار تربة | 56- | Lifebelt | حزام الامان |
| 8- | afternoon | ظهيرة | 33- | Dressmaker | خياط | 57- | Seatbelt | حزام المقعد |

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----|-------------|-----------------|-----|--------------|--------------|-----|---------------|--------------------|
| 9- | kilometer | كيلو متر | 34- | Blacklist | قائمة سوداء | 58- | Firefighter | رجل الإطفاء |
| 10- | Newspaper | صحيفة أخبار | 35- | Teaspoon | ملعقة شاي | 59- | Fireman | رجل الإطفاء |
| 11- | Newsreader | مذيع أخبار | 36- | Sweetheart | حبيب | 60- | Blueberry | عنب |
| 12- | Newsflash | خبر قصير | 37- | Painkiller | مسكن ألم | 61 | Fulltime | وقت كامل |
| 13- | bookshop | مكتبة | 38- | commonplace | | 62 | Bookseller | بائع الكتب |
| 14- | farmland | مزرعة | 39- | evergreen | دائم الخضرة | 63 | Shopkeeper | صاحب دكان |
| 15- | Earthquake | زلزال | 40- | keyboard | لوحة مفاتيح | 64 | Zookeeper | حارس حديقة الحيوان |
| 16- | Weatherman | خبير ارساد جوية | 41- | password | كلمة سر | 65 | Headmaster | مدير |
| 17- | something | شيء ما | 42- | Timetable | جدول مواعيد | 66 | Breakage | مقدار الكسر |
| 18- | everybody | كل شخص | 43- | Breakthrough | إختراق | 67 | Radiographer | مصور بأشعة اكس |
| 19- | Airport | مطار | 44- | Steamship | سفينة بخارية | 68 | Radioactivity | نشاط إشعاعي |
| 20- | Seaport | ميناء بحري | 45- | Spaceship | سفينة فضائية | 69 | Mountainside | سفح الجبل |
| 22 | Salesperson | بائع | 46- | someone | شخص ما | 70 | Handbag | حقيبة يدوية |
| 23 | Armchair | كرسي بذراعين | 47- | sunlight | ضوء الشمس | 71 | Housewife | ربة بيت |
| 24 | Wheelchair | كرسي المعاق | 48- | honeymoon | شهر العسل | 72 | Birthday | عيد ميلاد |
| 25 | seafood | طعام بحري | 49- | skyscraper | ناطحة سحاب | 73 | Shortage | نقص |

• بينما الكلمات التالية تعتبر كلمات غير مركبة :

| | | | | | | | | |
|------------|----------|---------|----------|------------|----------|------------|------------|-----------|
| understand | turbines | holiday | Luggage | hypothesis | hundred | flattened | Frightened | shortened |
| island | tonight | today | sandwich | carpenter | thousand | simplified | telescope | |

Very important note : ملحوظة هامة جداً :

عندما تأتي صفة و يتبعها اسم فهي لا تعتبر كلمة مركبة كما في الأمثلة التالية :

Crazy man / bad weather / rainy day / lazy boy / ...

Q : Choose the best alternatives : اختار أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | | | | | |
|----|--|---|----------------|---|------------|---|----------------|---|------------|
| 1 | The compound word is | a | marketing | b | ploughing | c | hardworking | d | no answer |
| 2 | Is to combine or join two nouns to make a new word . | a | compound words | b | synonyms | c | suffixes | d | antonyms |
| 3 | The word (.....) compound word . | a | experiment | b | newspaper | c | beautiful | d | Taller |
| 4 | The word (.....) isn't compound . | a | breakfast | b | crossbreed | c | rectangular | d | childhood |
| 5 | This word (.....) is compound . | a | coastline | b | coverings | c | valuable | d | luggage |
| 6 | The word (.....) isn't compound word. | a | sweetheart | b | nightmare | c | recklessly | d | newspaper |
| 7 | The compound word is | a | rename | b | beautiful | c | magnificent | d | housework |
| 8 | All these words aren't compounds except this word. | a | childhood | b | freedom | c | darkness | d | mango |
| 9 | Only this word is not compound . | a | redline | b | blacklist | c | hundred | d | whiteboard |
| 10 | One of these words is not compound . | a | gradually | b | eyewitness | c | underwater | d | farmhouse |
| 11 | One of the following words is compound | a | nationality | b | keyboard | c | responsibility | d | languages |
| 12 | One of the following words is compound | | | | | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|--|-------------------|---|-----------------|---|-------------|---|-------------|
| | a | greenish | b | schooling | c | zoologist | d | fireman |
| 13 |is (not) compound word . | | | | | | | |
| | a | School leaver | b | Disagreement | c | Blueberry | d | Arm chair |
| 14 | One of the following words onlya compound . | | | | | | | |
| | a | wheelchair | b | demonstrations | c | chemistry | d | schooling |
| 15 | Of the following words onlya compound . | | | | | | | |
| | a | conscientiousness | b | efficient | c | lifeguard | d | willingness |
| 16 |is compound word . | | | | | | | |
| | a | Careless | b | Homelessness | c | Homeland | d | Enjoyment |
| 17 | Of the following words onlyis compound word. | | | | | | | |
| | a | bookseller | b | board | c | brotherhood | d | understand |
| 18 | One of the following words is not compound | | | | | | | |
| | a | toothbrush | b | crazy man | c | full stop | d | airport |
| 19 | One of the following words is compound | | | | | | | |
| | a | helpful | b | ingratitude | c | deadly | d | headline |
| 20 |is compound word . | | | | | | | |
| | a | headlines | b | hardness | c | heading | d | homeless |
| 21 | The word (.....) isn't compound. | | | | | | | |
| | a | workbook | b | English teacher | c | bus-driver | d | Crazy man |
| 22 | The word (.....) isn't compound. | | | | | | | |
| | a | dressmaker | b | Project manager | c | Eye-witness | d | interview |
| 23 | The word (.....) is not compound. | | | | | | | |
| | a | blueberry | b | whiteboard | c | blacklist | d | hundred |
| 24 | The word (.....) is compound. | | | | | | | |
| | a | earthquake | b | recklessly | c | agriculture | d | Telephone |

Workbook / كتاب التمارين / Words and more words Page 46/ 47

4.7 A Number the main points of the text

- Making compound words
- Using prefixes and suffixes
- Taking words from other languages
- Changing parts of speech

رقم النقاط الرئيسية للنص بالترتيب :

| | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 3 | Making compound words |
| 2 | Using prefixes and suffixes |
| 1 | Taking words from other languages |
| 4 | Changing parts of speech |

B: اقرأ النص بعناية وجد :

الفقرات ١ و ٢ : ست لغات (Arabic , English , Greek , French , Latin and Eskimo).

عشر كلمات مستعارة (coffee , sugar , cotton , zero , algebra , dinner , medicine , table , igloo and kayak.)

الفقرة ٣ :

| | | | |
|----------------|---------|--------------|---------|
| Three prefixes | ٣ بوادئ | Two suffixes | ٢ لواحق |
| re | | less | |
| un | | able | |
| mis | | | |

الفقرة ٥ : اسم يمكن أن يكون فعل (milk)
صفة يمكن أن تكون اسم (spare)
حرف جر يمكن أن يكون فعل (up)

C: جد و ضع خط تحت البوادي و اللواحق في هذه الكلمات :

reporter unusual enjoyment

retake

impolite

unbelievable

D: أي من الكلمات التالية هي مركبة ؟ ضع دائرة حولها /

armchair housework

E: انظر إلى الكلمة المائلة في كل الجمل بالأسفل . هل هي فعل أم اسم ؟ :

a/ verb b/ noun c/ noun d/ verb e/ verb f/ noun

F: Complete the tables below (أكمل الجداول بالأسفل)

| Verb | Noun | Noun | Adjective |
|-----------|---------------|-------------|------------|
| greet | greeting | electricity | electrical |
| move | movement | shade | shady |
| collect | collection | necessity | necessary |
| advertise | advertisement | dirt | dirty |
| enjoy | enjoyment | care | careful |
| explain | explanation | success | successful |
| discover | discovery | darkness | dark |
| suggest | suggestion | length | long |

4.10

Language review 8 خلاصة لغوية 8

Page 31 صفحة

1 Use of have/get + infinitive

اجعل have / get →

You use these verbs to replace other instruction words such as *ask, tell* or *order*.
Using *have* or *get* focuses on the instruction itself rather than the way it is given.

تستخدم هذه الأفعال (have / get) لتحل مكان كلمات تعليمية (ارشادية) أخرى مثل (ask / tell / order) استخدام (have / get) يركز على التعليمات نفسها بدلاً من طريقة تقديمها.

قواعد : Rules :

توضح هذه القاعدة أن الكلمات التالية (ask / tell / order / inform) تعبر عن الأمر أو الطلب و التي تعني (اطلب من ، أخبر ، قم بأمر ، أعلم) و هناك كلمات أخرى يمكنها أن تحل محلها و هما (have / get) ، مع التركيز أنه مع *have* لا نستخدم حرف الجر *to* و لا يأتي في النهاية علامة استفهام (؟)

- 1- Ask
- 2- Tell
- 3- Order
- 4- Inform
- 5- Get

فعل في المصدر + V (inf) + to + مفعول به + Object

2- Have + Object + مفعول به + V (inf)

Example: Ask the boy to put away his bag.
Have the boy put away his bag.
Get the boy to put away his bag.
Note: With *have*, the infinitive is without *to*.

١ / اطلب من الولد أن يضع حقيبته بعيداً.
٢ / اجعل الولد يضع حقيبته بعيداً.
٣ / اجعل الولد يضع حقيبته بعيداً.

- 4/ Tell Mohammed **to** open the door.
- 6/ Order the students **to** study hard.

- 5/ Inform them **to** come early.
- 7/ Have the students study hard.

Workbook كتاب التمارين Page 51

(استخدم الزمن الصحيح) *get* أو *have* اكتب الجمل مستخدماً (A :)

- 1/ Have somebody help you with your homework .
- 2/ Get the garage to fix your car .
- 3/ Have your daughter do your shopping for you.
- 4/ Get someone to advise you about your career .

Q : Choose the best alternatives : اختر أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | |
|---|--------------------------|---------------|-----------|------------------|------------------|
| 1 | Ask Aliyou . | a help | b helping | c <u>to help</u> | d helps |
| 2 | Tell himthe door . | a open | b opens | c opening | d <u>to open</u> |
| 3 | Have the boy | a <u>move</u> | b moves | c to move | d movement |

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|--------|---|------|---|---------|---|---------|
| 4 | Get the garageyour car . | | | | | | | |
| | a | to fix | b | fix | c | fixes | d | fixing |
| 5 | Order your crewup signal flags . | | | | | | | |
| | a | to put | b | put | c | puts | d | putting |
| 6 | Inform himearly . | | | | | | | |
| | a | come | b | came | c | to come | d | comes |

2 Use of get to show change of state

Get is commonly used to replace the more formal *become*.

Example: He got wet when he went out in the boat.

٢ / استخدم (get) لتبين (لتظهر) تغير الحالة.

(Get) يستخدم بشكل شائع ليحل مكان الأكثر رسمية (become)

get = become

يمكننا أن نستخدم الفعل (get) للدلالة على تغير الحالة بمعنى (يصبح) ، أي بنفس معنى الفعل (become) و الذي معناه (يصبح)

1/ He got wet when he went out in the boat . هو أصبح مبلل عندما خرج من القارب .

2/ He became wet when he went out in the boat . هو أصبح مبلل عندما خرج من القارب .

3 Use of two comparatives

استخدام مقارنتين (المقارنة المزدوجة)

You use a comparative in each half of a sentence to show how one action causes the other or is related to the other.

نستخدم المقارنة المزدوجة (في صيغتي المقارنة (er - more)) في كل نصف من الجملة لتبين ان أحد الحدثين تسبب في نشوء الحدث الأخر أو أنه ذو علاقة بالحدث الأخر

قواعد : Rules :

الجملة الأولى

الجملة الثانية

1/ The + adjective + er + comple... + the + adjective + er + comple...

2/ The + adjective + er + comple... + the more + comple...

3/ The more + comple... + The more + comple...

4/ The more + comple... + The less + comple...

Examples: The deeper the water, the greater the pressure.

The further you go down, the more your ears hurt.

كلما زاد عمق الماء ، زاد الضغط .

كلما نزلت أكثر ، كلما زاد ألم أذنيك .

Note: These kinds of sentences are often different from simple comparative sentences.

For example, words omitted and word order change. In the first example, words are omitted- in fact, there is no active verb:

The deeper (that) the water (becomes), the greater (that) the pressure (becomes).

In the second example there are omitted words and a change in word order. Notice also that the comparative words *further, more* have become nouns *the further, the more*:

(As) you go down further, your ears hurt more.

Page 51 كتاب التمارين Workbook

اكتب هذه الجمل بطريقة أخرى (راجع فقرة استخدام المقارنة المزدوجة ضمن الخلاصة اللغوية) : B

1/ The hungrier a fish gets , the easier it will be to catch

- 2/ The cheaper food gets , the more you can buy .
 3/ The better you read , the more you enjoy reading .
 4/ The colder it gets , the warmer clothes you will need .

Q : Choose the best alternatives : اختر أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|---------|---|---------|---|----------|---|----------|
| 1 | The deeper the water , thethe pressure . | | | | | | | |
| | a | great | b | greater | c | greatest | d | greating |
| 2 | The further you go down , theyour ears hurt . | | | | | | | |
| | a | most | b | more | c | much | d | many |
| 3 | The hungrier a fish gets , the it will be to catch . | | | | | | | |
| | a | easy | b | easiest | c | easier | d | easier |
| 4 | The better you read , the you enjoy reading . | | | | | | | |
| | a | most | b | more | c | much | d | many |
| 5 | The food gets , the more you can buy . | | | | | | | |
| | a | cheaper | b | cheap | c | Cheapest | d | cheapen |

وقمما بلي الفقرة الرابعة من الخلاصة اللغوية :

4/ Parts of speech (nouns, verbs, adjectives, adverbs , prepositions)

أجزاء الكلام (أسماء ، أفعال ، صفات ، أحوال (ظروف) ، حروف جر) سيتم شرحه بالتفصيل في الدرس اللاحق .

Workbook كتاب التمارين Pages 51 / 52

C Each of the words below can be a noun or a verb. Write one sentence of each part of speech.

Example:

- 1 heat If you heat metal, it expands. I don't like heat.
 2 fish _____
 3 cut _____
 4 saw _____
 5 milk _____
 6 fly _____

كل الكلمات الى بالأسفل يمكن أن تكون اسم أو فعل . اكتب جملة واحدة تحتوي على الشكلين من أجزاء الكلام (أي مرة يكون فعل و مرة اسم)

- 2/ To fish a fish a day is better than nothing at all .
 3/ He cut his arm and the cut was deep .
 4/ Where is my saw ? I saw it there a minute ago .
 5/ Milk is rich in protein . Farmers milk their cows every day
 6/ A weak fly cannot fly .

D Read the pairs of sentences.

- 1 What part of speech is the word in italics in each sentence?
 a) I *like* chocolate and so does my brother. (_____) He is *like* me in many ways. (_____)
 b) *Since* he's late, let's start without him. (_____) We have been waiting for him *since* 10 o'clock. (_____).
 c) My sister is *well* and I am as *well*. (_____) (_____)
 d) I *left* the town and turned *left* at the first junction. (_____) (_____)
 2 Think of another word or phrases for the word in italics in each case.

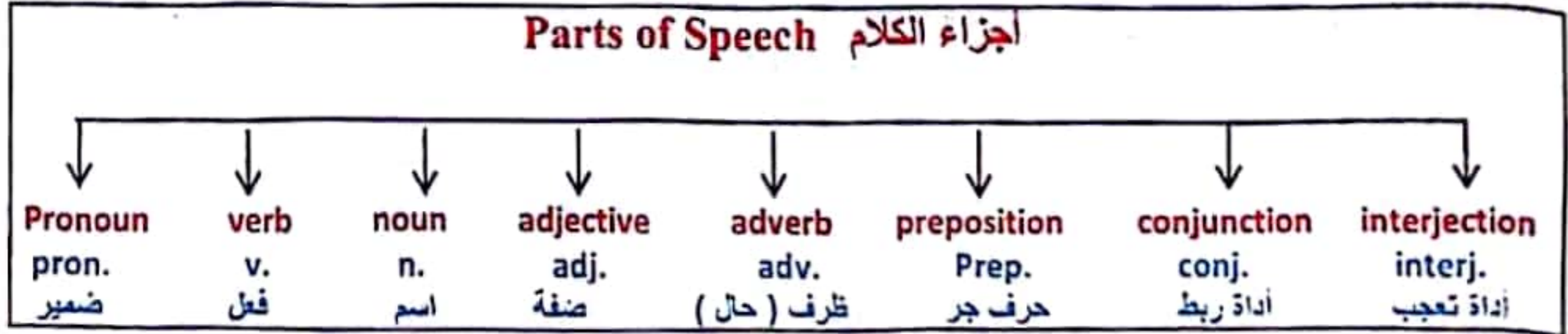
اقرأ أزواج الجمل

- 1/ ما هو جزء الكلام الخاص بالكلمات المائلة في كل جملة ؟
 a / *like* (verb فعل) -
like (adjective صفة)
 b / *since* (conjunction حرف عطف) -
since (adverb حال - ظرف)
 c / *well* (adjective صفة) - *well* (adverb حال)
 d / *left* (verb فعل) -
left (adverb حال)
 2/ فكر في كلمات أو عبارات أخرى للكلمات المائلة في كل حالة

اجزاء الكلام . Parts of Speech

- In English language there are 8 different types of words, each part of speech has a specific use and function.

في اللغة الانجليزية يوجد هناك ٨ أنواع مختلفة للكلمة ، كل جزء من الكلام لديه مهمة (وظيفة) خاصة (محددة).



It is important to identify what part of speech a word is in a sentence. This helps you guess the meaning of the word if it is new.

من المهم أن تميز (تعرف) ما هو نوع جزء الكلام لكلمة في جملة . هذا يساعدك أن تخمن معن الكلمة إذا كانت جديدة عليك .

Example: adverb verb preposition adjective noun
Carefully cut the top off the plastic bottle.

Many words can be different parts of speech. Sometimes the meaning is related, sometimes it is completely different.

الكثير من الكلمات يمكن أن تكون اجزاء كلام مختلفة. أحيانا المعنى يكون قريب ، و أحيانا المعنى يكون مختلف تماما.

| | | | |
|------------------|--------------|-------------|-------------------------------------|
| Examples: | <i>water</i> | noun | = liquid |
| | | verb | = give water to |
| | <i>up</i> | preposition | = movement upwards |
| | | verb | = raise |
| | <i>well</i> | noun | = hole which you can get water from |
| | | adjective | = not ill |
| | | adverb | = in a good way |

- Each of these words can be a noun or a verb (heat / fish / cut / saw / milk / fly)
- كل من هذه الكلمات يمكن أن تكون اسم أو فعل (.....)

| No. | The word | يمكن أن تكون اسم Can be a noun | يمكن أن تكون فعل Can be a verb |
|-----|----------------------|--|---|
| 1 | heat (سخن / حرارة) | If you <u>heat</u> metal, it expands. | I don't like <u>heat</u> . |
| 2 | fish (يصطد / سمك) | They went to fish a lot of <u>fish</u> . | They went to <u>fish</u> a lot of fish. |
| 3 | cut (يقطع / الجرح) | The <u>cut</u> is bleeding. | He <u>cut</u> the apple with a knife. |
| 4 | saw (رأى / منشار) | I saw him using a <u>saw</u> . | I <u>saw</u> him using a saw. |
| 5 | milk (يحلب / حليب) | I drink <u>milk</u> daily. | The farmers <u>milk</u> their cows dally. |
| 6 | fly (يطير / ذبابة) | A <u>fly</u> can fly. | A fly can <u>fly</u> . |

1- Nouns (n) : أسماء : Nouns are words that name.... : الأسماء هي الكلمات التي تسمى....

| | | | | | |
|---|-----------------|------------------------------------|----|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 | People بشر | All , Mohammed , Arwa , | 9 | The days الأيام | Saturday , Sunday , Monday , |
| 2 | Animals حيوانات | Rama the cama , lion , tiger , ... | 10 | The months الشهور | January , February , March , |
| 3 | Places أماكن | Mosque , school , hospital , | 11 | Food اطعمة | Apple . banana , carrot , rice , .. |
| 4 | Things أشياء | Window , door , pen , board , .. | 12 | Furniture اثاث | Armchair , chair , sofa , table |
| 5 | Countries دول | Yemen , America , Japan , | 13 | Jobs وظائف | Teacher , doctor , nurse , |
| 6 | Cities مدن | Aden , Sana'a , , Dubai , | 14 | Clothes ملابس | Coat , t-shirt , short , |
| 7 | Diseases أمراض | Cholera , AIDS , smallpox , .. | 15 | Subjects مواد دراسية | English , Arabic , history , .. |
| 8 | Events أحداث | | 16 | Ideas أفكار | |

Examples : أمثلة

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Salma helps her mother . | I will see you on <u>Sunday</u> . | I am washing my <u>hands</u> . |
| <u>Rama the cama</u> was born in <u>Dubai</u> in <u>January</u> , 1998. | <u>AIDS</u> is one of the most feared diseases in the history . | 1/ I closed the <u>door</u> . 2/ Give me some water from the <u>well</u> . |
| I like <u>apples</u> . | She is a <u>nurse</u> . | He was wearing a red <u>coat</u> . |
| I switch off the <u>radio</u> . | My favorite subject is <u>history</u> . | I go to <u>mosque</u> every day . |

- The clues that help you to find nouns

و فيما يلي إشارات (علامات) تساعدك لإيجاد الأسماء (في معرفة أن نوع الكلمة هي اسم) :

1/ The words that end of the following suffixes are nouns:

1 / الكلمات التي تنتهي بالواحق (النهايات) التالية هي أسماء :

(tion / ment / ness / hood / ship / dom / ance / age / ism / ology / ity)

Examples : أمثلة 1- I hate darkness . 2- Necessity is the mother of invention .

2/ As a subject of a verb (كفاعل للفعل)

2 / الاسم يأتي كفاعل (في بداية الجملة قبل فعل) بشرط أن لا يكون هذا الفاعل هو أحد ضمائر الفاعل مثل (he / she / they /) بحيث سيأتي بعد هذا الفاعل (الاسم) اما فعل رئيسي أو فعل مساعد be مثل (is / was / are / were) أو فعل ناقص مثل (will / can / ..) أو أحد الأفعال الثلاثة (has / have / had)

Examples : أمثلة 1/ Fatima visits her friends . 2/ Attendance is very necessary .
3/ A camel has a hump . 4/ Ali will play football tomorrow .

3/ As a object of a verb (كمفعول للفعل)

2 / الاسم يأتي كمفعول به (بعد فعل) بشرط أن لا يكون هذا المفعول هو أحد ضمائر المفعول مثل (me / him / her /))

Examples : أمثلة 1/ Fatima read stories . 1/ I play football .

4/ You can find the noun after Examples : أمثلة

يمكنك أن تجد الاسم بعد بشرط أن لا يأتي بعدها كلمة أخرى ما لم تستكون الكلمات التي بعد الفقرات التالية صفات و الاسم سيكون الكلمة التي بعدها مباشرة.

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| 1/ After these words بعد هذه الكلمات | show / no / has no / had no / have no / every / each / another / + <u>اسم noun</u> the best / the worst / the same + <u>اسم noun</u> | 1/ There is no <u>point</u> in getting upset . 2/ You must show <u>diligence</u> . 3/ It has no <u>hump</u> . 1/ He is the best <u>student</u> in the class. 2/ He is the worst <u>boy</u> . 3/ He has the same <u>age</u> . |
| 2/ After determiners بعد المحددات | many / much / any / a few / a little / some/ a lot of + <u>اسم noun</u> | 1/ I have some <u>money</u> . 2/ She didn't have any <u>sugar</u> . 3/ He drinks a lot of <u>water</u> every day. |
| 3/ After Demonstratives بعد ضمائر الإشارة | this / that / these / those + <u>اسم noun</u> | 1/ We have visited this <u>place</u> many times. 2/ Show me that <u>contract</u> . 3/ I need these <u>pens</u> . |
| 4/ After Possessive adjectives بعد صفات الملكية | my / your / his / her / its / their / our + <u>اسم noun</u> | 1- I need your <u>help</u> . 2- He wants his <u>sister</u> |
| 5/ الكلمات التي تأتي بعد s الملكية |'s + <u>اسم noun</u> | 1/ This is Ahmed's <u>will</u> before his death . |
| 6/ After Articles بعد أدوات المعرفة و النكرة | a / an / the + <u>اسم noun</u> | 1/ This is an <u>apple</u> . 2/ It is a <u>car</u> . 3/ Tell me the <u>truth</u> 4/ It is a new <u>car</u> . 5/ That is a red <u>apple</u> . 6/ It has the short <u>ears</u> and the long <u>tail</u> . |

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| 7/ After the cardinal numbers بعد الأعداد الأساسية | One / two / three / four ..+ اسم noun | 1/ I have three <u>brothers</u> .. 2/ She has twelve <u>books</u> . 3/ He has four blue <u>pens</u> . |
| 8/ After the Ordinal Numbers بعد الأعداد الترتيبية | First / second / third+ اسم noun | 1-January is the first <u>month</u> . 2- He is the second <u>student</u> in the class . |
| 9/ After the Prepositions بعد حروف الجر ، ما عدا حرف الجر to فقط يأتي بعده إما اسم أو فعل مصدر | In / from / of / for / to / with / on / .. + noun اسم noun | 1/ I need you for <u>necessity</u> . 2/ They live in mountainous <u>parts</u> of South America. |
| 10/ After these verbs بعد هذه الأفعال | need / want / love / like / hate / prefer + noun اسم noun | 1-I don't like <u>heat</u> . 3- I want <u>fish</u> . 2-He doesn't hate <u>money</u> . 4/ We want new <u>news</u> . |
| 11/ After (Which / In Which) أو Which إذا أتى في بداية السؤال كلمة Which أو In which فإن ما بعدها اسم | 1/ Which + noun? 2/ In which + noun? | 1/ which <u>dictionary</u> do you want? 2/ In which <u>institute</u> are you studying? |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5/ You can find the noun between 1/ aof 2/ an.....of 3/ the.....of | يمكنك أن تجد الاسم فيما بين 1/ a + noun + of 2/ an + noun + of 3/the + noun + of | أمثلة : 1/ A drought is a <u>shortage</u> of water. 2/ The <u>strength</u> of an earthquake is measured on Richter. 3/ What is the <u>depth</u> of this well ?. |
|---|---|---|

Q : Choose the best alternatives :

مع العلم أن الخيار الصحيح لجميع الفقرات السابقة هو (noun / n.)

| | | |
|----|---|--|
| 1 | <u>Milk</u> is rich in protein . The underlined word is a / an | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 2 | <u>Yemen</u> is my country. The underlined word is a / an | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 3 | I want <u>fish</u> . The underlined word is a / an | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 4 | She needs <u>milk</u> .The underlined word is a / an | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 5 | I want this <u>fish</u> . The underlined word is a / an ... | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 6 | I drink a lot of <u>water</u> every- morning. The underlined word is a / an | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 7 | What do you know about the <u>Left</u> ? The underlined word is a / an | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 8 | We want to light the <u>light</u> .The underlined word is a / an | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 9 | <u>Light</u> is the source of energy .The underlined word is a / an | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 10 | What about your <u>fast</u> ? The underlined word is a / an | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 11 | I'd like a soft <u>drink</u> , please . The underlined word is a / an | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 12 | I didn't like the meat , there was too much <u>fat</u> on it. The underlined word is a / an | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |

| | | |
|----|--|--|
| 13 | Live on the <u>fat</u> of the land . The underlined word is a / an | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 14 | This is Ali's <u>will</u> . The underlined word is a / an | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 15 | Bring some water from the <u>well</u> .The underlined word is a / an | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 16 | A <u>fly</u> can fly . The underlined word is a / an | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 17 | Where is my <u>saw</u> ? I saw it there a minute ago . The underlined word is a / an | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 18 | He wishes his <u>dreams</u> come true . The underlined word is a / an | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 19 | Your <u>plants</u> need a lot of water . The underlined word is a / an | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 20 | I don't like <u>heat</u> . The underlined word is a / an | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 21 | They will dig a new <u>well</u> soon. The underlined word is | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 22 | I feel terrible <u>weakness</u> . The underlined word is a / an | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 23 | While there is life, there is <u>hope</u> . The underlined word is a / an | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |

2: Verbs (v) (أفعال)

1/ Verbs are words that show an action. الأفعال هي الكلمات التي تظهر (تعرض) حدث .

| | | |
|---------------------|--|---|
| main verb فعل رئيسي | read / write / run / visit / reading / ... | 1/ Ali <u>read</u> this story yesterday. 2/ He is <u>playing</u> football. |
|---------------------|--|---|

| You can find the verb after يمكنك أن تجد الفعل بعد . | Examples : أمثلة |
|--|---|
| 1/ After the subject بعد الفاعل سواء كان الفاعل اسم (مفرد أو جمع) أو أحد ضمائر الفاعل (I / You / We / They / He / She / It) Subject (فاعل) + <u>verb</u> (فعل) + | 1/ Abdullah <u>saw</u> them last night. 2/ I <u>understood</u> the lesson. 3/ The farmers <u>milk</u> their cows daily. المزارعون يحلبون أبقارهم يومياً |
| 2/ After verb to be بعد أفعال الكينونة يأتي إما فعل أو صفة ، تكون فعل إذا انتهت بـ ing S (فاعل) + (am / is / are / was / were) + <u>verb + ing</u> + | 1/ I am <u>milking</u> the cow now . 2/ He was <u>watering</u> the trees . |
| 3/ After (don't / doesn't / didn't) S (فاعل) + (don't / doesn't / didn't) + <u>verb (inf. فعل مصدر)</u> | 1-He doesn't <u>come</u> here every day. 2-We don't <u>belt</u> them . 3-He didn't <u>book</u> a ticket yesterday . هو لم يحجز تذكرة أمس . |
| 4/ After the model verbs بعد الأفعال الناقصة (will / can / shall / must / may / could / would / should /) + <u>verb (inf. فعل مصدر)</u> | 1-I can <u>ride</u> a horse. 2-You must <u>obey</u> your patents. 3-Muslims must <u>fast</u> in the Holy month of Ramadan . 4-He can <u>can</u> like this can. 5-We will <u>house</u> in a big house . |
| 5/ After بعد (has to / have to / had to / is to / am to / are to / going to / ought to) + <u>verb (inf. فعل مصدر)</u> | 1-He is going to <u>film</u> in this film . 2-You have to <u>face</u> this problem . 3-All has to <u>visit</u> his family. |
| 6/ After (let's) بعد (هيا / دعنا) Let's + <u>verb (infinitive فعل مصدر)</u> | 1/ Let's <u>go</u> there. دعنا نذهب هناك . 2/ Let's <u>water</u> the trees دعنا نسقي الأشجار. |
| 7/ After بعد (Why don't you) | 1/ Why don't you <u>film</u> in this film ? 2/ Why don't we <u>speak</u> English ? |
| 8/ In questions : في الأسئلة في الأسئلة يأتي بعد (do / does / did) الفاعل و من ثم يأتي الفعل 1/ (Did / Do / Does) + subject (فاعل) + <u>verb (فعل)</u> +? 1/ (Wh questions) + (did / do / does) + subject (فاعل) + <u>verb (فعل)</u> +? | 1/ Do you <u>go</u> to school ? 2/ Did he <u>pray</u> yesterday ? 3/ What does he <u>like</u> ? 4/ Where did Ali <u>go</u> ? |
| 9/ After preposition (to) ١٠ / بعد حرف الجر (to) بشرط أن يأتي قبله أحد الأفعال التالية would like / would love / would prefer / would hate) (/ want / able / used / need | 1/ I'd like to <u>colour</u> this . 2-I'm able to <u>swim</u> . 3-He is used to <u>play</u> football. 4- They need to <u>water</u> the plants. 5- They want to <u>milk</u> these cows. |
| 10/ The preposition (up) is sometimes used as verb. (...up + the price) (up) = (raise) حرف الجر (up) أحياناً يستخدم كفعل بمعنى (يرفع) إذا أتت بعده كلمة (السعر price) . | 1/ They want to <u>up</u> the price. |

2/ Verbs can show a state. أفعال يمكن أن تظهر (تعرض) الحالة .

| | | |
|--|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| (am / is / are / was / were) → main verb فعل رئيسي | 1/ She <u>is</u> hungry. | 2/ Ali <u>was</u> sick. |
|--|--------------------------|-------------------------|

3/ Auxiliary verbs. أفعال مساعدة.

| | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| (am / is / are / was / were) | 1/ I <u>am</u> milking the cow now . | 2/ He <u>was</u> watering the trees . |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|

4/ Model verbs. أفعال ناقصة.

| | | |
|--|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| will / can / shall / must / may / could / would / should / | 1-I <u>can</u> ride a horse. | 2-You <u>must</u> obey your patents. |
| | 3- I <u>will</u> do my best. | |

5/ The imperative verb **أفعال الأمر** : Is an action a speaker or writer wants someone else to do.

| | |
|---|---|
| Affirmative imperative sentences : tell someone to do something. جمل امرية إيجابية (مثبتة) : تخبر شخص ما أن يفعل شيء ما. | Negative imperative sentences : tell someone not to do something. جمل امرية سلبية (منفية) : تخبر شخص ما أن لا يفعل شيء ما. |
| The imperative verb comes at the beginning of a sentence. فعل الأمر يأتي في بداية الجملة. | The imperative verb comes after beginning of a sentence after (Don't or Never). فعل الأمر يأتي في بداية الجملة بعد (Don't or Never). |
| 1/ Milk the cow . <u>احلب</u> البقرة . 2/ Water the plants ,please. <u>اسقى</u> النباتات ، رجاء . 3/ Hand Ahmed his book . <u>ناول</u> أحمد كتابه . | 1/ Don't <u>go</u> with Ali . لا <u>تذهب</u> مع علي . 2/ Don't <u>milk</u> this cow . لا <u>تحلب</u> هذه البقرة . 3/ Never <u>let</u> him alone. <u>أبدأ</u> لا <u>تتركه</u> بمفرده . |

يمكنك أيضاً استخدام أفعال الأمر لـ:

| | |
|---|---|
| A Give directions or instructions تعطي (تقدم) الاتجاهات أو التعليمات | <u>انعطف</u> يميناً في الشارع السابع. <u>Turn</u> right on seventh Street. |
| B Give advice تقدم نصيحة | 1/ Don't <u>play</u> with matches . لا <u>تلعب</u> بالكبريت . 2/ Never <u>let</u> children play in the kitchen . <u>أبدأ</u> لا <u>تترك</u> الأطفال يلعبون في المطبخ . 3/ <u>Wear</u> heavy clothes in the winter. <u>ارتدي</u> ملابس ثقيلة في الشتاء . |
| C Warn someone تحذر شخص ما | 1/ <u>Look</u> behind you! <u>انتظر</u> خلفك! 2/ <u>Look</u> out! <u>انتبه</u> (احترس) ! |

Q : Choose the best alternatives : : اختار أفضل الخيارات :

| | |
|--|---|
| 1 Milk the cow . The underlined word is a / an | 15 All Muslims <u>fast</u> in the Holy Month of Ramadan . The underlined word is a / an |
| a noun b verb c adjective d adverb | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 2 Water the plants ,please. The underlined word is a / an | 16 Don't eat this food It will <u>fat</u> you . The underlined word is a / an |
| a noun b verb c adjective d adverb | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 3 Fish that fish. The underlined word is a / an | 17 A fly can <u>fly</u> . The underlined word is a / an |
| a noun b verb c adjective d adverb | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 4 The farmers <u>water</u> the trees . The underlined word is a / an | 18 Where is my saw ? I <u>saw</u> it there a minute ago .The underlined word is a / an |
| a noun b verb c adjective d adverb | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 5 Farmers <u>milk</u> their cows every day. The underlined word is a / an | 19 He doesn't <u>drive</u> to work every day . The underlined word is a / an |
| a noun b verb c adjective d adverb | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 6 I want to <u>fish</u> . The underlined word is a / an | 20 All can't <u>drive</u> slowly , so I don't go for a <u>drive</u> with him .The underlined word is a / an |
| a noun b verb c adjective d adverb | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 7 He wants to <u>water</u> the plants . The underlined word is a / an | 21 <u>Heat</u> this food before eating it. The underlined word is a / an |
| a noun b verb c adjective d adverb | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 8 He is going to <u>water</u> the plants .The underlined word is a / an | 22 He <u>cut</u> his arm and the cut was deep. The underlined word is a / an |
| a noun b verb c adjective d adverb | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 9 You should not <u>water</u> the tree with that coloured water. The underlined word is a / an | 23 <u>Direct</u> those people to the right street. The underlined word is a / an |
| a noun b verb c adjective d adverb | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 10 He <u>left</u> the class early. The underlined word is a / an | 24 Always <u>depend</u> on yourself. The underlined word is a / an |
| a noun b verb c adjective d adverb | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 11 Ahmed <u>left</u> the city through the left direction .The underlined word is a / an | 25 Never <u>let</u> the children swim in pools alone. The underlined word is a / an |
| a noun b verb c adjective d adverb | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 12 He can <u>right</u> the wrongs of the world. The underlined word is a / an | 26 I <u>water</u> the flowers . The underlined word is a / an |
| a noun b verb c adjective d adverb | a noun b verb c adjective d adverb |
| 13 We want to <u>light</u> the light . The underlined word is a / an ... | |
| a noun b verb c adjective d adverb | |
| 14 Can you <u>light</u> the room , please ? The underlined word is a / an | |
| a noun b verb c adjective d adverb | |

مع العلم أن الخيار الصحيح لجميع الفقرات السابقة هو (verb / v.)

3: Adjectives (adj.) (صفات) : are words that describe nouns or pronouns.

هي كلمات تصف الأسماء أو الضمائر .

1/ He is **fine** . هو بخير .

2/ Aewa is **beautiful** . أروى جميلة .

| | |
|---|--|
| 1/ Nationalities (الجنسيات) و الأشكال (shapes) و الألوان (colours) عادة ما يأتي قبلها أحد أفعال (am - is - are - ..) be | 1/ I am Yemeni . 2/ He is American 3/ An orange is round . 4/ The boxes are square . 5 / The car is red . 6 / He is wearing a black coat . |
| 2/ الكلمات التي تنتهي بـ ly هي في العادة حال (adv.) ما عدا الكلمات المقابلة فهي صفات على الرغم من انتهائها بـ ly و عادة ما يأتي قبلها أحد أفعال (am - is - are - ..) be | lovely / friendly / costly / deadly / lonely / likely / brotherly / sisterly / motherly / fatherly / kindly / Princely / bodily / fatherly / orderly / sickly / kingly / 1/ Ahmed is lovely . هو محبوب .. 2/ They are friendly . |
| 3/ The word are ending with these suffixes are adjectives. صفات هي صفات able / ous / less / ical / ful | 2/ The central Highlands have a moderate climate . 3/ Llamas live mainly in mountainous parts. |
| 4/ إذا انتهت الاتجاهات الأربعة بـ (ern) فإنها صفات (northern / eastern / western / southern) | 1/ It is in the northern part . |

| | |
|--|---|
| 5/ كلمة (like) تعتبر صفة إذا أتت بعد أحد أفعال be و كذلك كلمة (well) تعتبر صفة إذا أتت بعد أحد أفعال be | 1/ All is like Mohammed . علي مثل محمد . 2/ I want to be like you . 3/ I am well . أنا بخير . |
| كلمتي (fast) أو (hard) فقد تكونان (حال) أو صفة بحيث تكونان (صفتان) إذا أتيا بعد أحد أفعال be ، و كذلك إذا أتى بعدهما اسم | 1/ It is fast . 2/ It is hard to climb . 3/ He likes the fast music . 3/ It is hard work . انه عمل شاق . |
| كلمة (right) تعتبر (صفة) بمعنى (أيمن أو صحيح أو مُحق) ، و كلمة (left) تعتبر (صفة) بمعنى (أيسر) إذا سبقهما أحد أفعال be و كذلك إذا أتى بعدهما اسم | 1/ He is right . انه محق . 2/ It is right . انه صحيح . 3/ Show me your left hand . 4/ I eat with my right hand . |

| | |
|--|---|
| 6/ After these words (the most / must be / be / don't be) | 1/ She is the most beautiful girl in her family . 2/ He must be tidy . 3/ Be careful . كن حريص / احذر . 4/ Don't be talkative .. لا تكن ثرثار .. |
| 7/ After sense verbs look / looked / smell/ smelt / feel/ felt / taste /tasted/ sound... | 1/ It tastes delicious . 2/ It smelt wonderful . 3 / I feel happy 4/ She looks tired . |
| 8/ بعد أفعال الكينونة (أفعال be) مثل (am / is / are / was /were) قد تأتي صفة . مع العلم أن هناك صفات عديدة تنتهي بـ ing كما في المثال رقم 5 و عليك بالتفريق بينها وبين الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ ing | 1/ A wasp sting is alkaline . 2/ A bee sting is acidic . 3/ This film is interesting . |
| 9/ إذا بدأ سؤال بأحد أفعال (Is / Are /...) ثم تبعها فاعل فما بعدهما صفات . إذا لم تكن أسماء بشر أو مدن أو غير ذلك ... | 1/ Is he fine ? 2/ Are you ready ? 3/ Is the weather cold ? |
| 10/ إذا أتى بعد الأفعال الناقصة الفعل be فإنه قد يكون ما بعدهما إما فعل في التصريف الثالث و إذا لم يكن كذلك فإن ما بعدهما تعتبر صفة | I would be grateful for the chance of attending an interview. |
| 11/ بعد الكلمات الأربع التالية تأتي صفات في الاغلب ...become / get / seem / appear | 1/ The full extent of the damage become clear . |

| | |
|--|---|
| 12/ في الوسط ما بين (too.....to) (as.....as) (so.....that) | 1/ She is as beautiful as her sister. 2/ Ibn AL - Nafis was so clever that he discovered the blood's circulation system . 3/ The tea is too hot to drink. |
| 13/ سبق و ذكرنا أن الكلمات التي تأتي بعد : 1/ أسماء الإشارة 2/ أدوات التعريف و النكرة 3/ صفات الملكية 4/ الأفعال (need / want / love / like / hate / prefer) تعتبر أسماء و لكن إذا أتت كلمة متوسطة بينهما فهذه الكلمة تعتبر صفة | 1/ I prefer fast music. 2/ He is having an off day. 3/ The central Highlands have a moderate climate . 4/ The central Highlands have a moderate climate . 5/ I want this nice town . 6/ Show me your left hand |
| 14/ الكلمات التي تأتي في الوسط ما بين أحد أفعال be و كلمة enough | He is young enough to drive a car . |
| 15/ الكلمات التي تأتي في الوسط بين أفعال be و كلمة How | 1/ How old is he ? 2/ How deep is it ? |

Q : Choose the best alternatives : : اختار أفضل الخيارات :

1 He moved the hard rock aside. The underlined word is a / an

| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adjective | d | adverb |
|----|---|------|---|------|---|-----------|---|-----------|
| 2 | He bought a <u>new</u> house. The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. | b | n. | c | adj. | d | adv. |
| 3 | He is <u>like</u> me in many things. The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. | b | n. | c | adj. | d | adv. |
| 4 | I bought a <u>fast</u> car. The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 5 | It is <u>hard</u> to climb. The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. | b | n. | c | adj. | d | adv. |
| 6 | It is <u>fast</u> . The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. | b | n. | c | adj. | d | adv. |
| 7 | I'd like a <u>soft</u> drink. The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. | b | n. | c | adj. | d | adv. |
| 8 | I don't like <u>fast</u> music. The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 9 | It is a <u>light</u> wind. The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. | b | n. | c | adj. | d | adv. |
| 10 | I think you are <u>right</u> . The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 11 | I think you are <u>right</u> . The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. | b | n. | c | adj. | d | adv. |
| 12 | Show me your <u>left</u> hand. The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | V. | b | N. | c | Adj. | d | Adv. |
| 13 | Ahmed left the city through the <u>left</u> direction . The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 14 | There are a number of books on the <u>left</u> side of the desk . The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 15 | He is <u>left</u> handed. The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. | b | n. | c | adj. | d | adv. |
| 16 | He is <u>well</u> . The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. | b | n. | c | adj. | d | adv. |
| 17 | My sister is not <u>well</u> today. The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 18 | Your brother is <u>well</u> . The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. | b | n. | c | adj. | d | adv. |
| 19 | The man shouted , " I am <u>free</u> " ! The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 20 | She is a <u>good</u> cook. The underlined word is | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. | b | n. | c | adj. | d | adv. |
| 21 | This man is <u>lovely</u> . The underline word is | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adverb | d | adjective |
| 22 | Ahmed has a <u>spare</u> key . The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adverb | d | adjective |
| 23 | 22 nd of May is a <u>national</u> day . The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adverb | d | adjective |
| 24 | It is <u>right</u> . The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adverb | d | adjective |
| 25 | Khalid's job is boring. (boring) is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adverb | d | adjective |
| 26 | We free the birds to feel <u>free</u> . The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adjective | d | adverb |

مع العلم أن الخيار الصحيح لجميع الفقرات السابقة هو (adjective / adj.)

4: Adverbs (adv.) (احوال / ظروف) :

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Adverb are words that describe or modify verbs (an action). . (حال هي كلمات تصف الفعل (حدث) .) | 1/ He drives <u>quickly</u> . هو يقود <u>بسرعة</u> . 2/ Ali walked <u>slowly</u> . علي مشى <u>ببطء</u> . |
| 2 | Adverb can also describe adjectives. (الحال يمكنه أيضاً ان يصف الصفات .) | 1/ She is <u>extremely</u> beautiful . . (جدا) هي جميلة إلى حد بعيد (جدا) 2/ The weather report is <u>almost</u> right. تقرير الطقس يكون <u>تقريباً</u> صحيح. |
| 3 | Adverb can describe adverbs. (الحال يمكنه ان يصف احوال أخرى .) | 1/ He ran <u>very</u> quickly. هو يجري بسرعة <u>جداً</u> . 2/ I can speak English <u>very</u> well . أستطيع ان أتكلم الإنجليزي بشكل جيد جداً . |
| 4 | 4/ Adverb can describe the whole sentence. (الحال يمكنه ان يصف الجملة بأكملها .) | 1/ <u>Hopefully</u> , I will get this job. <u>أمل</u> ، ان أحصل على هذه الوظيفة. 1/ Fortunately, I had brought an umbrella. <u>لحسن الحظ</u> ، أنني أحضرت مظلة. |

| Types of Adverbs أنواع الظروف | Such as مثل / كـ | Examples : أمثلة |
|---|---|---|
| 1/ Adverbs of Time ظروف الزمان | yesterday - ago / next - tomorrow - soon - shortly / often - always - never - sometimes - seldom - rarely / today - tonight - early - late - ever - already / recently - still - then - generally - before - after / hardly / now (بشرط ان يأتي بعدها وقت) | 1- He <u>always</u> helps me. 2- I saw him <u>yesterday</u> . 3- They are going to come <u>tomorrow</u> . 4- We'll <u>soon</u> find him . |
| 2/ Adverbs of Place ظروف المكان | here هنا / there هناك / abroad في الخارج / off / above فوق / far بعيداً / on فوق / back خلف / out خارج / away بعيداً / outside بالخارج / behind / in بالداخل / في / down أسفل / downstairs / somewhere مكان لا مكان / everywhere كل مكان / nowhere لا مكان | 1/ I am <u>here</u> . 2/ It was <u>there</u> . 3/ It is <u>somewhere</u> . |
| 3/ Adverbs of manner (الطريقة / الكيفية) ظروف | politely / quickly / slowly / badly / clearly / happily / carefully / • well (إذا سبقها فعل رئيسي) و تعتبر well حال أيضاً إذا سبقها (as) أو (very) *fast / hard (إذا سبقهما فعل رئيسي و لم يلحقهما اسم) *right / left (إذا سبقهما الفعل) turn | 1- He is talking to you <u>frankly</u> . 2- He is driving the car <u>recklessly</u> . 3- Did you sleep <u>well</u> ? 4- I am as <u>well</u> . 5- He can run <u>fast</u> . 6- Come from here then turn <u>right</u> then turn <u>left</u> . |
| 4/ Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار | Once مرة / twice مرتين / thrice / three times / four times / ... (always / often / rarely / seldom / .. | 1/ He comes <u>once</u> a week . |
| 5/ Adverbs of order ظروف الترتيب | Firstly / secondly / thirdly / Lastly / | 1/ <u>Firstly</u> , we have to discuss this problem . |
| 6/ Adverbs of Degree ظروف الدرجة | Almost تقريباً / much كثيراً / hardly بالكاد / too تماماً / quite أقل / little قليلاً / less / very جداً / all كل / totally بالكامل / just / entirely / so جداً / slightly / highly / | 1/ It's not <u>so</u> bad . 2/ That is <u>all</u> right . 3/ He can speak English <u>very</u> well |
| 7 / ظرف الإيجاب و النفي | Yes / no / really / maybe / perhaps / surely | <u>Yes</u> , I do . |
| 8/ The adverbs WH-words 8 / ظروف كلمات الاستفهام إذا أنت في بداية السؤال ، أما إذا أنت في وسط الجملة فتسمى (ظروف الربط) كما في المثال 4 | 1/ When متى asks about time تسأل عن الوقت 2/ Where أين asks about place تسأل عن المكان 3/ How كيف asks about manner تسأل عن الطريقة 4/ Why لماذا asks about reasons and purpose تسأل عن الأسباب و النتائج | 1/ <u>When</u> did you return ? 2/ <u>Why</u> is he sad ? 3/ <u>How</u> are you ? 4/ This is the house <u>where</u> I live . |
| 9/ Conjunctive Adverbs ظروف الربط (احوال الموصول) | Furthermore / therefore / however / consequently / still / thus / also / then / additionally / in addition / finally / accordingly / moreover / for example / of course / ... | |
| | كلمتي (fast) أو (hard) فقد تكونان (حال) أو صفة بحيث تكونان (حال) إذا أتيا بعد فعل رئيسي ولم يأتي بعدهما اسم ما لم فيكونان صفة | 1/ He can run <u>fast</u> . 2/ I am working <u>hard</u> . |

- 1/ Come from here then turn right then turn left .
 2/ There is the shop, right in front of you.
 يوجد المحل ، أمامك مباشرة .

كلمة (right) تعتبر (ظرف) بمعنى (يمين) ، و كلمة (left) تعتبر (ظرف)
 بمعنى (يسار) إذا سبقهما فعل رئيسي مثل (turn)
 و بالنسبة لكلمة (right) تعتبر أيضاً (ظرف) بمعنى (مباشرة / تماماً)

الجدول التالي يوضح كيف نحول الصفات إلى أحوال

و بالتالي سنتعرف إلى الكلمات أي منها تعتبر صفات و أي منها تعتبر حال

| صفة Adjective | حال Adverb | |
|----------------|-----------------------|---|
| bad سيء | badly بسوء | ١/ عادة عندما نحول الصفة إلى حال نضيف إلى الصفة ly |
| polite مؤدب | politely بطريقة مؤدبة | ٢/ إذا انتهت الصفة بالمقطع fu و نقوم بتكرار الحرف و نضيف y لتتحول إلى حال |
| careful عناية | carefully بعناية | ٣/ الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف y وقبله حرف ساكن نغير حرف y إلى i ثم نضيف ly لتتحول إلى حال |
| easy سهل | easily بسهولة | ٤/ بعض الصفات تظل كما هي عند تحويلها إلى حال |
| happy سعيد | happily بسعادة | ٥/ هناك صفات شواذ يختلف عنها الحال عند التحويل |
| fast سريع | fast بسرعة | |
| hard قاس / صلب | hard بقسوة / بجد | |
| early | early | |
| late | late | |
| good جيد | well بشكل جيد | |

اختار أفضل الخيارات : : Q : Choose the best alternatives :

| | | | | | |
|----|--|--------|--------|-------------|----------|
| 1 | The well produces water <u>well</u> . The underlined word is a / an | a verb | b noun | c adjective | d adverb |
| 2 | He came <u>late</u> . The underlined word is a / an | a verb | b noun | c adjective | d adverb |
| 3 | She doesn't speak <u>well</u> . The underlined word is a / an | a v. | b n. | c adj. | d adv. |
| 4 | Sleep <u>well</u> . The underlined word is a / an | a verb | b noun | c adjective | d adverb |
| 5 | He was standing <u>right</u> in the middle of the class. The underlined word is a / an | a verb | b noun | c adjective | d adverb |
| 6 | Turn <u>left</u> then, turn <u>right</u> . The underlined word is a / an | a verb | b noun | c adjective | d adverb |
| 7 | He is sleeping <u>right</u> now. The underlined word is a / an | a verb | b noun | c adjective | d adverb |
| 8 | There is the shop, <u>right</u> in front of you. The underlined word is a / an | a v. | b n. | c adj. | d adv. |
| 9 | You don't have the <u>right</u> to drive <u>fast</u> . The underlined word is a / an | a verb | b noun | c adjective | d adverb |
| 10 | He ran <u>fast</u> . The underlined word is a / an | a verb | b noun | c adjective | d adverb |
| 11 | It cooks things <u>fast</u> . The underlined word is a / an | a verb | b noun | c adjective | d adverb |
| 12 | She works <u>hard</u> every day. The underlined word is a / an | a v. | b n. | c adj. | d adv. |
| 13 | He drove his car so <u>fast</u> . The underlined word is | a v. | b n. | c adj. | d adv. |
| 14 | Please speak quietly . (quietly) is a / an | a v. | b n. | c adj. | d adv. |

مع العلم أن الخيار الصحيح لجميع الفقرات السابقة هو (adverb / adv.)

5: Prepositions (Prep.) (حروف الجر)

تربط العبارات الاسمية بالجزء الآخر من الجمل..
They usually show time, place, direction or method. هي عادة ما تبين الوقت ، المكان ، الاتجاه أو الطريقة.

| | | | |
|---|---|--|--|
| 1 | Place , مكان Direction, اتجاه location موقع | above فوق / inside بالداخل / behind خلف / near بالقرب / below أسفل / at في / on / in / beside / outside / between / in front of / over / through / under / by / under / with / Against / along / onto / into / down / out of / from / toward / upon / up / off /... | 1/ He is <u>in</u> the class. 2/ I am <u>at</u> school. 3/ The book is <u>on</u> the table. 4/ They went <u>to</u> Sana'a. 5/ They are <u>among</u> the trees. 6/ Two miles <u>off</u> the coast. على بعد ميلين. |
| 2 | Time زمن / وقت | After / past / at / since / before / through / by / during until / from / upon / for /... (عندما لا يأتي بعده فعل مصدر to) | 1/ She gets up <u>at</u> six o'clock. 2/ He lives here <u>since</u> 1999. 3/ He left <u>before</u> two hours. 4/ <u>02:45</u> It is quarter <u>to</u> three . 5/ <u>02:30</u> It is half <u>past</u> two . 6/ He waited <u>for</u> ten minutes. |
| 3 | Method طريقة | in بواسطة / with مع / by بواسطة | 1/ He gave me an answer <u>in</u> writing. 2/ open the door <u>with</u> the key. 3/ I come to school <u>by</u> bus. |

6: Conjunctions (conj.) (حروف العطف)

are words that join other words, phrases or clauses together.

هي كلمات تربط كلمات أو عبارات أو جمل أخرى ببعضها.

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | For من أجل / and و / nor ولا / but لكن / or أو / yet الآن / so ف / وهكذا | 1/ Telescope used <u>for</u> making distant objects look larger and closer. 2/ Would you like Pepsi <u>or</u> juice? 3/ He didn't study well, <u>but</u> he passed the exam. |
| 2 | Both...and كليهما...و / either...or أما...أو / neither...nor لا و لا / not only...but ولكن...ولكن / whether...or سواء...أو | 1/ Neutral means <u>neither</u> an acid <u>nor</u> an alkali. 2/ He wants <u>either</u> Mohammed <u>or</u> Abdullah . 3/ The word (milk) can be <u>both</u> a verb <u>and</u> noun . |
| 3 | although على الرغم من / as كما لو / as if لطالما / as along على طول / as much as بقدر ما / because لأنه as soon as في أقرب وقت / as although كما لو / if لو / by the time بحلول الوقت / even if حتى لو / only فقط even though بالرغم من / in order that من أجل ذلك / in case في حالة / so لذلك / than من / unless ما لم / while ... / في حين ، بينما / whereas / أثناء | 1/ He was sick, <u>so</u> he didn't go to his work yesterday. 2/ Ali couldn't leave <u>because</u> it rained all day. 3/ Fatima is hard working , <u>whereas</u> her sister is lazy. 4/ You will not pass the exam <u>unless</u> you study hard. |

| | |
|--|--|
| Since (بما أن) بحيث لا يأتي بعدها وقت | 1/ <u>Since</u> he's late , let's start without him . |
| Like (يشبه / على خلاف) / Unlike (يشبه / مثل) بشرط أن تكونان أول كلمة في الجملة | 1/ <u>Like</u> its father , It has 2/ <u>Unlike</u> its father , It has no |
| Sometimes an adverb, such as (until حتى / after / before) can function as a conjunction. | 1/ I can stay out <u>until</u> the clock strikes twelve. 2/ <u>Before</u> he leaves, make sure his room is clean. |

7: Interjections (interj.) (صيغ التعجب) :

are small words used to convey surprise or excitement without any real grammatical value.

هي كلمات صغيرة تستخدم للتعبير عن المفاجآت أو الإثارة بدون أي قواعد لغوية.

1/ Interjections express emotions. 2/ Interjections are common in spoken English.

| | | | | | | |
|-----------|----------|--|-------------------|---------------|---------------------------------|----------|
| 1/ oh! | 2/ Oops! | 3/ Well! | 4/ Oh dear! | 5/ O for | 6/ Alas! | 7/ yay! |
| 8/ Hum! | 9/ yuk! | 10/ Ugh! | 11/ Ok. All right | 12/ aha! | 13/ ah! | 14/ Wow! |
| 15/ Shit! | 16/ damn | عادة ما تأتي جميع الكلمات السابقة في البداية | | 17/ please, | قد تأتي في البداية أو النهاية . | |

8 : Pronouns (Pro.) (ضمائر)

: are words that take the place of nouns.. هي كلمات تحل مكان الأسماء..

Sometimes we don't want to use a noun, so we use a pronoun. . أحيانا لا نريد أن نستخدم اسم ، لذلك نستخدم ضمير .

Example مثال : Ahmed is at home. He is watching T.V.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل (I / He / She / It / You / They / We) |
| 2 | Object pronouns ضمائر المفعول (me / him / her / it / you / them / us) |
| 3 | Possessive pronouns ضمائر الملكية (mine / his / hers / its / yours / theirs / ours) |
| 4 | Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة (myself / himself / herself / itself / yourself / themselves / yourselves / ourselves) |
| 5 | Relative pronouns ضمائر الوصل (who , whom , whose , that , which) |
| 6 | someone / somebody / something - everyone / everybody / everything |
| 7 | no one / nobody / nothing - / anyone / anybody / anything |
| 8 | This is / That is / These are / Those are بشرط أن يأتي بعدها اسم |

Q : Choose the best alternatives :

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|-------|---|---------|---|-------|---|-------|
| 1 | Like its father , it has short ears and a long tail . The underlined word is a / an | a | n. | b | Conj. | c | Adj. | d | Adv. |
| 2 | open the door <u>with</u> the key. The underlined word is a / an | a | Conj. | b | Prep. | c | Pro. | d | Adv. |
| 3 | <u>They</u> will travel tomorrow. The underlined word is a / an | a | Pro. | b | Interj. | c | Prep. | d | Conj. |
| 4 | 2/ He wants <u>either</u> Mohammed <u>or</u> Abdullah . The underlined word is a / an | a | Pro. | b | Interj. | c | Prep. | d | Conj. |
| 5 | He lives here <u>since</u> 1999. The underlined word is a / an (تعتبر ظرف لأنه أتى بعدها وقت) | a | Conj. | b | Prep. | c | Pro. | d | Adv. |
| 6 | Ali couldn't leave <u>because</u> it rained all day. The underlined word is a / an | a | Pro. | b | Interj. | c | Prep. | d | Conj. |

| | | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|---|-------|---|---------|---|-------|---|-------|
| 7 | He waited <u>for</u> ten minutes. The underlined word is a / an | a | Pro. | b | Interj. | c | Prep. | d | Conj. |
| 8 | He didn't study well, <u>but</u> he passed the exam. The underlined word is a / an | a | Pro. | b | Interj. | c | Prep. | d | Conj. |
| 9 | I know a friend <u>whose</u> mother is a doctor. The underlined word is a / an | a | Conj. | b | Prep. | c | Pro. | d | Adv. |
| 10 | <u>This</u> is my house. The underlined word is a / an | a | Conj. | b | Prep. | c | Pro. | d | Adv. |
| 11 | Like its father , it has short ears and a long tail . The underlined word is a / an | a | Pro. | b | Interj. | c | Prep. | d | Conj. |
| 12 | Wow! It is fantastic. The underlined word is a / an.. | a | Pro. | b | Interj. | c | Prep. | d | Conj. |

التمارين التالية شاملة لأجزاء الكلام

Q : Choose the best alternatives : : اختار أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|-------------|---|-------------|---|-----------|---|-------------|
| 1 | All's father is <u>well</u> . He speaks French <u>well</u> . The underlined words are | a | n. , adv. | b | adj. , adv. | c | n. , n. | d | adv. , adj. |
| 2 | The <u>answers</u> are good . <u>Answer</u> the 2nd page . The underlined words are | a | n. , v. | b | v. , v. | c | n. , n. | d | v. , n. |
| 3 | <u>Flies</u> are harmful insects . The underlined word is ... | a | v. | b | n. | c | adj. | d | adv. |
| 4 | The birds feel <u>free</u> . please <u>free</u> them . The underlined words are | a | adv. , adj. | b | adj. , v. | c | adv. , n. | d | adj. , adj. |
| 5 | I feel <u>hungry</u> . It is a <u>fantastic</u> flat . The underlined words are | a | adv. , adj. | b | adv. , adv. | c | adj. , n. | d | adj. , adj. |
| 6 | Ahmed went for a <u>walk</u> . He <u>walks</u> fast . The underlined words are | a | n. , v. | b | v. , n. | c | n. , n. | d | v. , v. |
| 7 | I always <u>drink</u> a soft <u>drink</u> . The underlined words are | a | v. , n. | b | n. , v. | c | n. , n. | d | v. , v. |

| | | | | |
|----|--|-------------|---|-----------|
| 8 | It is <u>right</u> to fight for your <u>right</u> . The underlined words are | | | |
| | a | adj. , adj. | b | adj. , n. |
| | c | v. , n. | d | n. , adj. |
| 9 | He <u>left</u> the hall turned <u>left</u> . The underlined words are | | | |
| | a | v. , n. | b | v. , adj. |
| | c | v. , adv. | d | n. , adv. |
| 10 | Can you <u>open</u> the door ? Let's enjoy the <u>open</u> air . The underlined words are .. | | | |
| | a | v. , n. | b | v. , adj. |
| | c | n. , v. | d | n. , adj. |

| | | | | |
|----|---|--------------|---|-------------|
| 11 | Use some <u>water</u> to <u>water</u> your plants . The underlined words are | | | |
| | a | n. , n. | b | n. , v. |
| | c | v. , n. | d | n. , adj. |
| 12 | A weak <u>fly</u> cannot <u>fly</u> . The underlined words are | | | |
| | a | adv. , v. | b | n. , v. |
| | c | adj. , v. | d | adj. , n. |
| 13 | I can't <u>hand</u> it to your <u>hand</u> . The underlined words are | | | |
| | a | n. , n. | b | v. , n. |
| | c | v. , v. | d | n. , v. |
| 14 | She <u>will</u> write her <u>will</u> well. The underlined words are | | | |
| | a | v. , n. | b | v. , adj. |
| | c | n. , n. | d | n. , v. |
| 15 | Like my father , I <u>like</u> chocolate . The underlined words are | | | |
| | a | conj. , v. | b | n. , v. |
| | c | adj. , v. | d | adv. , v. |
| 16 | We <u>like</u> cars . He is <u>like</u> me in many things . The underlined words are | | | |
| | a | v. , n. | b | v. , adj. |
| | c | n. , n. | d | v. , adv. |
| 17 | I'd prefer to <u>drink</u> a cold <u>drink</u> . The underlined words are | | | |
| | a | v. , v. | b | v. , n. |
| | c | n. , v. | d | n. , n. |
| 18 | They <u>plan</u> to have another <u>plan</u> . The underlined words are | | | |
| | a | v. , n. | b | n. , v. |
| | c | v. , adj. | d | v. , adv. |
| 19 | You are <u>welcome</u> . The underlined word is | | | |
| | a | v. | b | n. |
| | c | adj. | d | adv. |
| 20 | I <u>smell</u> the <u>smell</u> of perfume . The underlined words are | | | |
| | a | v. , n. | b | n. , v. |
| | c | v. , v. | d | n. , n. |
| 21 | To <u>fish</u> a <u>fish</u> a day is better than nothing at all . The underlined words are | | | |
| | a | v. , n. | b | n. , n. |
| | c | v. , v. | d | n. , v. |
| 22 | Farmers <u>plough</u> the soil . Behind the <u>plough</u> were birds . The underlined words are | | | |
| | a | v. , n. | b | n. , v. |
| | c | n. , adj. | d | adj. , n. |
| 23 | He is <u>fast</u> in writing . He writes <u>fast</u> . The underlined words are | | | |
| | a | adj. , adv. | b | adv. , adj. |
| | c | adj. , adj. | d | adv. , adv. |
| 24 | I saw <u>him</u> carrying a <u>saw</u> . The underlined words are | | | |
| | a | v. , n. | b | n. , v. |
| | c | v. , v. | d | n. , n. |
| 25 | Let's <u>book</u> a ticket . Did you <u>book</u> a table ? The underlined words are | | | |
| | a | v. , n. | b | n. , v. |
| | c | v. , v. | d | n. , n. |
| 26 | I didn't read that <u>book</u> , The underlined word is | | | |
| | a | a verb | b | a noun |
| | c | an adjective | d | an adverb |
| 27 | I <u>advise</u> you follow my <u>advice</u> . The underlined words are | | | |
| | a | v. / n. | b | n. / v. |
| | c | v. / adj. | d | n. / n. |
| 28 | They want to <u>up</u> the price of this food . The underline word is | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun |
| | c | preposition | d | adjective |
| 29 | Any <u>help</u> . <u>Help</u> yourself . the underlined words are | | | |
| | a | v. , v. | b | n. , n. |
| | c | n. , v. | d | v. , n. |
| 30 | Be <u>careful</u> . Read it <u>carefully</u> . The underline words are | | | |
| | a | adv. , adj. | b | adj. , adv. |
| | c | adj. , adj. | d | adv. , adv. |
| 31 | <u>Up</u> the chair to mob the floor . The underlined word is a/ an | | | |
| | a | noun | b | verb |
| | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 32 | Go <u>straight</u> and you'll the market . The underlined word is a/ an | | | |
| | a | noun | b | verb |
| | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 33 | A bad workman always <u>blames</u> this tools .The underlined word is a / an | | | |
| | a | noun | b | verb |
| | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 34 | A live dog is better than a dead lion . The underlined word is a / an | | | |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|--|---------|---|---------|---|-----------|---|---------|
| | a | noun | b | verb | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 35 | Ahmed speaks English <u>well</u> . The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | noun | b | verb | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 36 | He <u>jokes</u> silly jokes . The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | noun | b | verb | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 37 | Electricity is used to <u>lift</u> the lift. The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | n. , v. | b | v. , n. | c | Adj. , v. | d | v. , v. |
| 38 | They always <u>up</u> their offer by 5% . The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | noun | b | verb | c | adjective | d | adverb |

Q 2 : Choose the best alternatives :

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|-------------|---|-------------|---|-------------|---|--------------|
| 1 | They needmoney . | | | | | | | |
| | a | a number of | b | a crowd of | c | amount of | d | a group of |
| 2 | That's a very goodadvice . | | | | | | | |
| | a | a lot of | b | a crowd of | c | a number of | d | piece of |
| 3 | You must showif you want to be an excellent teacher . | | | | | | | |
| | a | patient | b | patience | c | patiently | d | patients |
| 4 | I am gratefulyou . | | | | | | | |
| | a | of | b | from | c | off | d | for |
| 5 | The wordcan be used as a verb and noun . | | | | | | | |
| | a | responsible | b | dangerous | c | up | d | milk |
| 6 | The wordcan be used as a preposition and a verb . | | | | | | | |
| | a | responsible | b | up | c | dangerous | d | milk |
| 7 |is the part that is common to all forms of that word . | | | | | | | |
| | a | A prefix | b | A suffix | c | A stem | d | Affix |
| 8 |has given us some very common words , such as table, dinner and medicine . | | | | | | | |
| | a | Greek | b | Arabic | c | English | d | French |
| 9 | I need your | | | | | | | |
| | a | help | b | helpful | c | helpless | d | helplessly |
| 10 | I felt | | | | | | | |
| | a | hunger | b | hungry | c | hungry | d | hungrily |
| 11 | He <u>left</u> the class through the <u>left</u> direction . The underlined words are | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. , n. | b | n. , v. | c | v. , adj. | d | n. , n. |
| 12 | Turn <u>left</u> then turn <u>right</u> . The underlined words are | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. , n. | b | n. , adj. | c | adj. , adj. | d | adv. , adv. |
| 13 | <u>Like</u> Adel . Khalid is interested in sports . I <u>like</u> travelling . The underlined words are | | | | | | | |
| | a | conj. , v. | b | n. , v. | c | adj. , v. | d | adv. , v. |
| 14 | He is <u>like</u> me in many things . The underlined word is | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. | b | n. | c | adj. | d | adv. |
| 15 | All Muslims <u>fast</u> in the Holly Month of Ramadan . Don't be <u>fast</u> . The underlined words are | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. , n. | b | v. , adj. | c | v. , adv. | d | v. , n. |
| 16 | They ran <u>fast</u> . The underlined word is ... | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 17 | He likes the <u>fast</u> music . The underlined word is | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. | b | n. | c | adj. | d | adv. |
| 18 | I <u>saw</u> him using a <u>saw</u> . The underlined words are | | | | | | | |
| | a | n. , v. | b | v. , n. | c | v. , adj. | d | n. , n. |
| 19 | Talk <u>about</u> Yemen . There are <u>about</u> 20 people . The underlined words are | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. , n. | b | n. , adj. | c | adj. , adv. | d | prop. , adv. |
| 20 | He walked <u>slowly</u> . Mohammed is <u>lovely</u> . The underlined words are | | | | | | | |
| | a | adv. , adv. | b | adv. , adj. | c | adv. , n. | d | adv. , v. |
| 21 | The wordcan be both a verb and an adjective . | | | | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|--|---------|---|-----------|---|-------------|---|--------------|
| | a | milk | b | raise | c | free | d | price |
| 22 | I need some adviceto do after school . | | | | | | | |
| | a | on what | b | on where | c | on why | d | on when |
| 23 | If Iyou , I'd study English . | | | | | | | |
| | a | are | b | was | c | have | d | were |
| 24 | Can youtea ? | | | | | | | |
| | a | do | b | perform | c | fulfill | d | make |
| 25 | The word unbelievable has | | | | | | | |
| | a | prefix | b | suffix | c | both | d | affix |
| 26 | The compound word is | | | | | | | |
| | a | rename | b | beautiful | c | magnificent | d | housework |
| 27 | Sharp knives can <u>cut</u> you . The underlined word is | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. | b | n. | c | adj. | d | adv. |
| 28 | The <u>cut</u> on his arm was <u>bleeding</u> badly . The underlined word is | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. | b | n. | c | adj. | d | adv. |
| 29 | Ali decided to go for a <u>ride</u> on his bicycle .The horse was too wild to <u>ride</u> . The underlined words are ... | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. , n. | b | n. , v. | c | v. , adj. | d | n. , n. |
| 30 | You can lead a horse to <u>water</u> but you can't make it <u>drink</u> . The underlined words are | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. , n. | b | v. , v. | c | n. , v. | d | n. , n. |
| 31 | I'd like a soft <u>drink</u> , please . The underlined word is | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. | b | n. | c | adj. | d | adv. |
| 32 | The word unusual has | | | | | | | |
| | a | prefix | b | suffix | c | both | d | none of them |

و فيما يلي تمرين شامل لقواعد الوحدة الرابعة بطريقة الأتمة الجديدة :

Q 2 : Choose the best alternatives :

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|-------------|---|------------|---|-------------|---|-------------|
| 1 | They needmoney . | | | | | | | |
| | a | a number of | b | a crowd of | c | amount of | d | a group of |
| 2 | That's a very goodadvice . | | | | | | | |
| | a | a lot of | b | a crowd of | c | a number of | d | piece of |
| 3 | You must showif you want to be an excellent teacher . | | | | | | | |
| | a | patient | b | patience | c | patiently | d | patients |
| 4 | I am gratefulyou . | | | | | | | |
| | a | of | b | from | c | off | d | for |
| 5 | The wordcan be used as a verb and noun . | | | | | | | |
| | a | responsible | b | dangerous | c | up | d | milk |
| 6 | The wordcan be used as a preposition and a verb . | | | | | | | |
| | a | responsible | b | up | c | dangerous | d | milk |
| 7 |is the part that is common to all forms of that word . | | | | | | | |
| | a | A prefix | b | A suffix | c | A stem | d | Affix |
| 8 |has given us some very common words , such as table, dinner and medicine . | | | | | | | |
| | a | Greek | b | Arabic | c | English | d | French |
| 9 | I need your | | | | | | | |
| | a | help | b | helpful | c | helpless | d | helplessly |
| 10 | I felt | | | | | | | |
| | a | hunger | b | hungry | c | hungry | d | hungrily |
| 11 | He <u>left</u> the class through the <u>left</u> direction . The underlined words are | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. , n. | b | n. , v. | c | v. , adj. | d | n. , n. |
| 12 | Turn <u>left</u> then turn <u>right</u> . The underlined words are | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. , n. | b | n. , adj. | c | adj. , adj. | d | adv. , adv. |
| 13 | <u>Like</u> Adel . Khalid is interested in sports . I <u>like</u> travelling . The underlined words are | | | | | | | |

| | | | | |
|----|--|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| | a conj. , v. | b n. , v. | c adj. , v. | d adv. , v. |
| 14 | He is <u>like</u> me in many things . The underlined word is | | | |
| | a v. | b n. | c adj. | d adv. |
| 15 | All Muslims <u>fast</u> in the Holly Month of Ramadan . Don't be <u>fast</u> . The underlined words are | | | |
| | a v. , n. | b v. , adj. | c v. , adv. | d v. , n. |
| 16 | They ran <u>fast</u> . The underlined word is | | | |
| | a verb | b noun | c adjective | d adverb |
| 17 | He likes the <u>fast</u> music . The underlined word is | | | |
| | a v. | b n. | c adj. | d adv. |
| 18 | I <u>saw</u> him using a <u>saw</u> . The underlined words are | | | |
| | a n. , v. | b v. , n. | c v. , adj. | d n. , n. |
| 19 | Talk <u>about</u> Yemen . There are <u>about</u> 20 people . The underlined words are | | | |
| | a v. , n. | b n. , adj. | c adj. , adv. | d prop. , adv. |
| 20 | He walked <u>slowly</u> . Mohammed is <u>lovely</u> . The underlined words are | | | |
| | a adv. , adv. | b adv. , adj. | c adv. , n. | d adv. , v. |
| 21 | The wordcan be both a verb and an adjective . | | | |
| | a milk | b raise | c free | d price |
| 22 | I need some adviceto do after school . | | | |
| | a on what | b on where | c on why | d on when |
| 23 | If Iyou , I'd study English . | | | |
| | a are | b was | c have | d were |
| 24 | Can youtea ? | | | |
| | a do | b perform | c fulfill | d make |
| 25 | The word unbelievable has | | | |
| | a prefix | b suffix | c both | d affix |
| 26 | The compound word is | | | |
| | a rename | b beautiful | c magnificent | d housework |
| 27 | Sharp knives can <u>cut</u> you . The underlined word is | | | |
| | a v. | b n. | c adj. | d adv. |
| 28 | The <u>cut</u> on his arm was bleeding badly . The underlined word is | | | |
| | a v. | b n. | c adj. | d adv. |
| 29 | Ali decided to go for a <u>ride</u> on his bicycle .The horse was too wild to <u>ride</u> . The underlined words are ... | | | |
| | a v. , n. | b n. , v. | c v. , adj. | d n. , n. |
| 30 | You can lead a horse to <u>water</u> but you can't make it <u>drink</u> . The underlined words are | | | |
| | a v. , n. | b v. , v. | c n. , v. | d n. , n. |
| 31 | I'd like a soft <u>drink</u> , please . The underlined word is | | | |
| | a v. | b n. | c adj. | d adv. |
| 32 | The word unusual has | | | |
| | a prefix | b suffix | c both | d none of them |

(Unit Five) الوحدة الخامسة

5.2

Possibilities احتمالات

Three children are looking at something that they have found. They are trying to work out what it is.

الأطفال ينظرون إلى شيء ما هم قد وجدوه. هم يحاولون أن يكتشفوا ماذا يكون.

Look at what they are saying.

It might be a coin.

هو ربما يكون عملة معدنية.



Or it may be a piece of jewellery.

أو ربما يكون قطعة من المجوهرات.

No, look. There is a number here. It **must** be a coin.

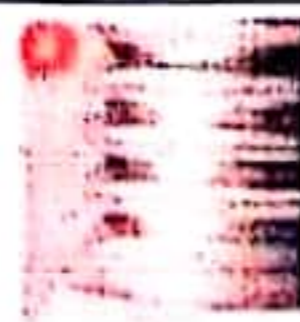
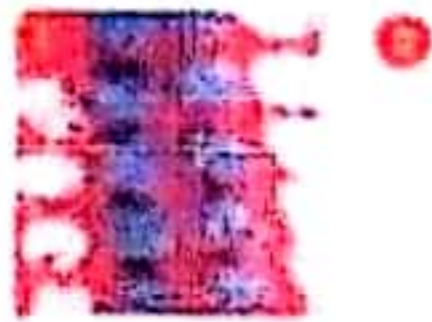
لا. انظر. يوجد رقم هنا. هي يجب أن تكون عملة معدنية.

You're right. It could be an earring.

أنت محق. هي يمكن أن تكون قرط.

Talk about what these objects might be.

تحدث عن ماذا يمكن أن تكون هذه الأشياء.



Discuss the possibilities

ناقش الاحتمالات

What would happen if ...

- 1 ... there was no more rain in Yemen?
- 2 ... all planes stopped flying?
- 3 ... all plants stopped growing?
- 4 ... there was no more electricity?

I've no idea.
I haven't a clue.



If there was no more rain in Yemen, the whole country would turn to desert.



34

Now do activities A, B and C in the Workbook.

يوضح هذا الدرس : ١ / كيفية استخدام الأفعال الناقصة في جمل يتوقع فيها شيء محتمل و لتعرف المزيد عنها قمنا بتوضيحها في الخلاصة اللغوية رقم ٩ لاحقاً

٢ / كما يوضح الجزء الثاني من الدرس قاعدة (If) الشرطية في زمن الماضي البسيط (لاحقاً قسم القواعد)

A :: اكمل هذه الجمل عن الأشياء (الرسومات الموجودة في الدرس)

- 1/ tooth brush 2/ could 3/ thermometer
4/ must / light bulb 5/ might 6/ must / bottle

B :: اكمل هذه الجمل بشكل الفعل الصحيح الذي بين الأقواس :

- 1/ was / would die 2/ stopped / would have
3/ stopped / would make 4/ was / would have

5.4

ألغاز و أحاجي puzzles and riddles

35 صفحة Page

Understanding some reading tests is like solving a puzzle. Things are not always stated or described directly. The reader has to infer what the writer is talking about.

فهم بعض امتحانات القراءة هو مثل حل لغز. أشياء لا تكون مبيّنة أو موصوفة بشكل مباشر. القارئ يخمن ما الذي يتحدث عنه الكاتب .

Read the puzzles below and work out what the answers might be. Activities A, B and C in the Workbook will help you think.

اقرأ الألغاز بالأسفل و اكتشف ما الإجابات التي يمكن أن تكون . التمارين A / B و C في كتاب التمارين ستساعدك لتفكر

Puzzle اللغز : a game in which you have to think hard to solve a difficult question or problem .

Or : Something that is difficult to understand or explain.

هو لعبة يجب عليك فيها أن تفكر بمشقة (بجهد كبير / بعناء) لتحل سؤال صعب أو مسألة .
أو : هو شيء ما الذي هو صعب أن يفهم أو يشرح .

يحتوي الدرس على عمودين (A / B) فيهما العديد من الألغاز و الأحاجي ، المطلوب منك في العمود (A) أن تجد أكثر من احتمال واحد ، بينما المطلوب منك في العمود (B) أن تجد احتمال واحد فقط .

A More than one possible answer:

B Only one possible answer.

What is it ? (ما هو (ماذا يكون) ؟)

What is it?

- 1 His day's work was over. He sat down and looked at the object on the table. He smiled, picked it up and put it to his mouth.
- 2 He was walking along the beach when suddenly he saw it lying on the sand. He went over and had a good look at it. 'I can use this,' he said to himself. He picked it up carefully and took it home.

من يقول التالي عن وظائفهم؟

Who says the following in their job?

- 1 'As you can see, the inside of the building is decorated in the Chinese style.'
- 2 'I'm afraid we couldn't save the house because there wasn't enough water.'
- 3 'Can anybody tell me the name of the highest mountain in Africa?'
- 4 These peas will be ready for picking in about three days.
- 5 'How long do you wish to remain in the country, sir?'

Where are they? (أين يكونون) ؟

Where are they?

- 1 He turned to the man in the seat next to him. 'What time do we leave?' he asked. 'Any minute now,' was the reply. Just then he heard the engine start. 'You're right,' he said.
- 2 I'm in a large room. People are talking quietly. Somebody comes into the room. Everybody stops chatting. The person starts speaking in a loud voice.

What objects might say something like this ?

ما الأشياء التي ربما تقول شيء ما كهذا ؟

What objects might say something like this?

- 1 'People kick me all the time but it doesn't worry me. It makes them happy, especially when they put me in the net.'
- 2 'People keep me in a safe place and use me when they want to buy things. I have a different name in most countries.'
- 3 'Without me you have to do your Mathematic homework in your head or on paper.'
- 4 'North, south, east or west - I'll show you where they are.'
- 5 'Hold me, jump off a mountain and fly like a bird.'

a : اكمل هذه الجمل بالكلمات المناسبة .

ماذا يكون ؟

1/ can't / could could / a sweet or a piece of chocolate

2/ can't / could could / coin

أين هم ؟

1/ can't / could could / bus

2/ can't / could could / Parliament

B : اكمل هذه الجمل بالكلمات المناسبة .

من الذين يقولون التالي في أعمالهم ؟

1/ can't / must / tourist-guide 2/ can't / must / firefighter

3/ can't / must / geography teacher 4/ can't / must / farmer

5/ can't / must / immigration officer

ما الأشياء التي ربما تقول شيء ما كهذا ؟

1/ Number 1 must be a football. 2/ Number 1 must be money. 3/ Number 1 must be a calculator.

4/ Number 1 must be compass. 5/ Number 1 must be parachute.

| | | | | |
|---|---|-------|---|----------|
| 1 | It can't be an elephant <u>but</u> itbe a cup of tea <u>or</u> a sweet. | | | |
| | a | could | b | must |
| | | | c | couldn't |
| | | | d | can't |
| 2 | He can't be in a rowing boat .Hebe in a bus. | | | |
| | a | could | b | must |
| | | | c | couldn't |
| | | | d | can't |
| 3 | He can't be in a rowing boat <u>but</u> hebe in a bus <u>or</u> in a plane. | | | |
| | a | could | b | must |
| | | | c | couldn't |
| | | | d | can't |
| 4 | She can't be a doctor. Shebe a teacher. | | | |
| | a | could | b | must |
| | | | c | couldn't |
| | | | d | can't |

5.5

Language review 9 خلاصة لغوية 9

Page 36 صفحة

1 Modal verbs - 1

(الأفعال الناقصة) رقم 1

Modal verbs are not used on their own. They are used with other verbs to express different meanings.

لا تستخدم الأفعال الناقصة بشكل خاص و إنما تستخدم مع أفعال أخرى لتعبر عن معاني مختلفة .
الأفعال الناقصة مثل (shall / should / will / would / may / might / must / ought to / can / could)

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|------|---|------|-----|-------|------|-------|-----|---|------|---|-------------------------------------|---|------|---|-----|---|-------|---|-------|
| Degrees of possibility | درجات الاحتمال | <p><u>أولاً : الأفعال الناقصة التي تستخدم عند عدم التأكد</u> <u>You are not certain :</u> (may ربما) أو (might قد يكون) أو (can يمكن أن يكون) والكلمات التالية تستخدم للدلالة على أن المتكلم غير متأكد من معلوماته (not sure) ليس أكيد ، (not clear) غير واضح ، (not obvious) غير واضح (وكلمات أخرى مثل perhaps / maybe / possible / not certain / not absolutely) (anyone can't see that) أي شخص لا يمكن أن يرى ذلك</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| You are not certain. | أنت غير متأكد | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>Example: It may (not)/might (not)could be a toothbrush.</p> <p>أمثلة : Examples :</p> <p>1- It <u>may be</u> a coin. I am not sure. ربما تكون عملة معدنية . أنا لست متأكد .</p> <p>2- He <u>might be</u> a teacher . I'm not certain. هو <u>قد يكون</u> مدرس . لست متأكد .</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>Q : Choose the best alternatives : : اختار أفضل الخيارات :</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>It be a toothbrush. It not clear.</td> <td>a</td> <td>may</td> <td>b</td> <td>must</td> <td>c</td> <td>can</td> <td>d</td> <td>will</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>He be a doctor. I'm not sure.</td> <td>a</td> <td>must</td> <td>b</td> <td>can</td> <td>c</td> <td>can't</td> <td>d</td> <td>might</td> </tr> </table> | | | 1 | It be a toothbrush. It not clear. | a | may | b | must | c | can | d | will | 2 | He be a doctor. I'm not sure. | a | must | b | can | c | can't | d | might |
| 1 | It be a toothbrush. It not clear. | a | may | b | must | c | can | d | will | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | He be a doctor. I'm not sure. | a | must | b | can | c | can't | d | might | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| | | |
|--|-----------|--|
| You are certain. | أنت متأكد | <p><u>ثانياً : الأفعال الناقصة التي تستخدم عند التأكد</u> ١ - نستخدم الأفعال الناقصة (must be) يجب أن يكون) و (can't be) لا يمكن أن يكون) ٢ / نستخدم الفعل الناقص (must) في الجمل <u>المثبتة</u> (كما في المثال الأول) ٣ / ونستخدم الفعل الناقص (can't) في الجمل <u>المنفية</u> . (كما في المثال ٢)</p> <p>٤ / <u>الكلمات التي تستخدم للتأكيد</u> في نهاية الجملة هي مثل (sure) (أكيد) ، (obvious) (واضح) ، (clear) (واضح) ، (surely) (بالتأكيد) ، (certainly) (بالتأكيد) أو كلمات أخرى مثل (impossible) مستحيل / confident واثق / Definitely بلا ريب / absolutely بكل تأكيد (anyone can see that) / (anyone can say that) أي شخص يمكنه أن يقول ذلك</p> |
| Examples: (Positive) I must be a toothbrush. (Negative) I can't be a toothbrush. | | |
| <p>Examples:-</p> <p>1-It <u>must be</u> a toothbrush . I am sure . أنا متأكد . يجب أن تكون فرشاة أسنان .</p> <p>2-It <u>can't be</u> a toothbrush . I am certain . لا يمكن أن تكون فرشاة أسنان أنا متأكد .</p> | | |

Note: *Must not (mustn't)* can only be used when you want to tell somebody that they are not allowed to do something.

ملحوظة (mustn't / must not) يمكن استخدامه فقط عندما تريد إخبار شخص ما أنه غير مسموح له بفعل شيء ما.

Example: You must not look at your books during an exam.

مثال : يجب أن لا تنظر إلى كتابك أثناء الامتحان.

mustn't = not allowed to (غير مسموح ان)

فعل في المصدر + V1(inf.) = not allowed to + v1(inf.) فعل في المصدر

أمثلة : Examples :

1/ You mustn't cheat in the exam. غير مسموح لك أن تغش في الامتحان .

2/ You mustn't sleep in the class. غير مسموح لك بالنوم في الفصل.

اختار أفضل الخيارات : Q : Choose the best alternatives :

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|-------|---|---------|---|-------|---|-------|
| 1 | He be a teacher . I am certainly sure . | | | | | | | |
| | a | could | b | can | c | can't | d | may |
| 2 | It be a toothbrush . It is obvious . | | | | | | | |
| | a | might | b | must | c | can | d | could |
| 3 | Youeat or drink in the bathroom. | | | | | | | |
| | a | must | b | mustn't | c | can | d | might |

تمارين على النوعين من الأفعال الناقصة التي تستخدم عند التأكد و عند عدم التأكد

اختار الإجابة الصحيحة :- Choose the best a alternatives :

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|-------------|---|-------------------|---|--------------|---|-----------------|
| 1 | Itbe a coin . I'm sure . | | | | | | | |
| | a | could | b | might | c | must | d | can |
| 2 | Itbe a coin . I'm sure . | | | | | | | |
| | a | could | b | might | c | can't | d | can |
| 3 | Itbe a coin . I'm not sure . | | | | | | | |
| | a | must | b | might | c | can't | d | can |
| 4 | Itbe a toothbrush . not sure . | | | | | | | |
| | a | can't | b | must | c | might | d | can |
| 5 | Fatimayesterday. I am sure. | | | | | | | |
| | a | can arrived | b | must have arrived | c | might arrive | d | may have arrive |
| 6 | Itbe a kite . It's impossible . | | | | | | | |
| | a | must | b | might | c | can't | d | may |
| 7 | Ita coin . I am sure . | | | | | | | |
| | a | can be | b | might be | c | may be | d | must be |
| 8 | Itbe a bracelet . I'm sure . | | | | | | | |
| | a | must | b | can | c | may | d | might |

و فيما يلي الاستخدام الثاني للأفعال الناقصة :

• Ability **القدرة (الاستطاعة)**

can/cannot refers to the present

- (هذان الفعلان يستخدمان للتعبير عن الاستطاعة أو عدم الاستطاعة في زمن المضارع)
 فعل في المصدر (can't) + V (inf.) + فاعل S / فعل في المصدر (can) + V (inf.) + فاعل S
 * - I cannot swim . أنا لا أستطيع أن أسبح . / * - I can swim . أنا أستطيع أن أسبح .

Note: You can use be able to instead of can.

ملحوظة : يمكنك أن تستخدم (be able to) بدلاً من (can)

- غير قادر على (am / is / are) + not + able to / قادر على (am / is / are) + able to
 مصدر (am / is / are) + not + able to + V (inf.) + فاعل S / مصدر (am / is / are) + able to + V (inf.) + فاعل S
 المهم أن تركز على أن الفعل الذي بعد can و able to يجب أن يكون في المصدر (inf.) كما في الأمثلة التالية :
 * - I am not able to swim . أنا غير قادر أن أسبح . / * - I am able to swim . أنا قادر على أن أسبح .

could (not) is used
 - to refer to the past
 - after wish
 - in conditional sentences

- (يستخدمان) لم استطع / استطعت could / could not
 للإشارة إلى الماضي 1/ to refer to the past
 2/ after wish أتمنى بعد الفعل أتمنى (wish + could)
 في الجمل الشرطية 3/ in conditional sentences

(هذان الفعلان يستخدمان للتعبير عن الاستطاعة أو عدمها في زمن الماضي)
 للتعبير عن عدم الاستطاعة في زمن الماضي / للتعبير عن الاستطاعة في زمن الماضي

| | |
|--|--|
| فعل في المصدر (couldn't) + V (inf.) + فاعل S | فعل في المصدر (could) + V (inf.) + فاعل S |
| 1/ I <u>couldn't</u> swim when I was six . أنا لم أستطيع أن أسبح عندما كنت في السادسة من عمري . | 1/ I <u>could</u> swim when I was six . أنا استطعت أن أسبح عندما كنت في السادسة من عمري . |
| 2/ I <u>couldn't</u> come last week. | 2/ I <u>could</u> play chess yesterday. |

يمكن أن يستبدل الفعل could بالفعل able to للتعبير عن الاستطاعة أيضاً في زمن الماضي

| | |
|--|---|
| كنت غير قادر على (was / were) + not + able to | كنت قادر على (was / were) + able to |
| مصدر (was / were) + not + able to + V (inf.) + فاعل S | مصدر (was / were) + able to + V (inf.) + فاعل S |
| لم كنت غير قادر على أن أسبح . I <u>was not able to</u> swim when I was six . | أنا كنت قادر على أن أسبح . I <u>was able to</u> swim when I was six . |
| * I <u>wish</u> I <u>was able to</u> swim . | * I <u>wish</u> I <u>could</u> swim . |

Q : Choose the best alternatives : اختار أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|----------------------------------|---|--------|---|--------|---|----------|---|--------|
| 1 | He canhis homework alone . | a | do | b | make | c | did | d | made |
| 2 | Theyto swim . | a | can | b | able | c | are able | d | can't |
| 3 | He cana camel . | a | get on | b | get in | c | embark | d | ride |
| 4 | She canEnglish well . | a | speak | b | speaks | c | spoke | d | spoken |
| 5 | Hesleep last night . | a | can't | b | don't | c | couldn't | d | will |
| 6 | A chickenfly . | a | can | b | Can't | c | should | d | has to |

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------------------------|------------|---|---------|---|---------|---|-----------|
| 7 | He isswim . | | | | | | | |
| | a | capable of | b | able to | c | can | d | able |
| 8 | I wish somebodyme a car . | | | | | | | |
| | a | will buy | b | may buy | c | can buy | d | could buy |
| 9 | I wish Iswim . | | | | | | | |
| | a | can | b | could | c | must | d | may |

Workbook Page 60 / 61 كتاب التمارين

A : Re-write the underlined sentences using suitable model verbs :

أعد كتابة الجمل التي تحتها خط مستخدماً أفعال ناقصة مناسبة :

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1/ You must be Khaled's brother. | 2/ I could visit my friends more often. |
| 3/ It might be wrong. | 4/ I can't be so late. |
| 5/ I can't see without glasses. | 6/ You must not speak in public library. |
| 7/ It's must be Tuesday. | 8/ I wish I could fly like a bird. |
| 9/ It might / may / could / rain tomorrow . I can't be sure. | 10/ You can't be Khaled's brother. |

و فيما يلي الفقرة الثانية و الأخيرة من الخلاصة اللغوية رقم ٩

2 'Sense' verbs + object + verb

أفعال الحواس Sense verbs

Some sense verbs are followed by the *-ing* form. This emphasizes the action as continuous and is often used for setting the scene (see Language review 4). When followed by the infinitive, this emphasizes that the action is completed.

بعض من أفعال الحواس تتبع بالفعل + *ing* . هذا يؤكد أن الحدث مستمر و غالباً ما يستخدم في زمن المشاهد (انظر الخلاصة اللغوية رقم ٣ في الوحدة الثانية) . عندما يتبع أفعال الحواس فعل في المصدر ، هذا يؤكد أن الحدث منتهي .

قاعدة Rule

..... + فعل في التصريف الأول V1 + مفعول به O + فعل حواس sense verb + فاعل S

- ١ - يأتي بعد أفعال الحواس المفعول به.
٢ - ملحوظة: تستخدم الفعل في المصدر مضافاً له (*ing*) بعد المفعول به مع أفعال الحواس إذا كان الحدث مستمر ، بينما تستخدم الفعل في المصدر إذا كان الحدث قد انتهى .

Example

I saw/heard/watched the goats come down the street.
(And later told the farmer what I saw/heard, etc.)
I saw/heard/watched the goats coming down the street.
(And tried to stop them coming into the garden.)

١ / أنا رأيت / سمعت / شاهدت الماعز تنزل الشارع .
(و فيما بعد أخبرت المزارع ما رأيته / سمعتهالخ)
٢ / أنا رأيت / سمعت / شاهدت الماعز تنزل الشارع .
(و حاولت أن أمنعها أن تدخل الحديقة)

لاحظ أن المثال الأول قد استخدم مع أفعال الحواس (فعل في المصدر *come*) و ذلك لأن الحدث قد انتهى و الدليل أنه أخبر المزارع في وقت لاحق بالذي قد حدث .
بينما في المثال الثاني استخدم مع أفعال الحواس (فعل + *ing*) و ذلك لأن الحدث لا يزال مستمر و حاول أن يمنعها من دخول الحديقة .
التعريف التالي خاص بأفعال الحواس و الذي تم شرحه ضمن الخلاصة اللغوية رقم ٣ في الوحدة الثانية و كذلك شرح في الخلاصة اللغوية رقم ٩ في الوحدة الخامسة . و يحتوي على فقرات يجب أن تستخدم مع فعل الحواس التصريف الأول ، كما يحتوي على فقرات يجب أن تستخدم الفعل + *ing* و للتوضيح :

Page 61 Workbook كتاب التمارين

B : اكتب الأفعال التي بين الأقواس بالشكل الصحيح :

- 1/ coming 2/ rise 3/ crash / explode 4/ shake / collapse 5/ dying / crying

5.9

Language review 10 خلاصة لغوية ١٠

Page 39 صفحة

Modal Verbs (in the past) : (في الماضي)*1 Modal verbs - 2****أفعال ناقصة رقم ٢**

- توجد طرق مختلفة للتحدث عن كيفية حدوث شيئاً ما حدث في الماضي : باستخدام have و التصريف الثالث للفعل مسبقاً بأحد الأفعال الناقصة ،
الأفعال الناقصة مثل (shall / should / will / would / may / might / must / ought to / can / could)

1/ Suggesting a possible explanation : اقتراح نقاش (شرح) ممكن (محتمل) في الماضي**قاعدة : Rule****(may – might – could) + have + P.p** تصريف ثالث للفعل**أمثلة : Examples**

- 1/ The sailors **may** have mutinied .. البحارة ربما قد تمردوا .
- 2/ They **might** have left the house. I am not sure. أنا غير متأكد. هم ربما قد غادروا المنزل.
- 3/ Pirates **might** have attacked the ship. It's difficult to say. إنه من الصعب القول. القرصنة ربما قد هاجموا السفينة.
- 4/ I **might** have passed the exam. I don't know yet. أنا لا اعرف مطلقاً. أنا ربما قد نجحت في الامتحان.
- 5/ She **may** have missed the bus. I am uncertain. أنا غير متأكد. هي ربما قد فاتها الباص.

2/ Deciding on an explanation : التصميم على شرح (تفسير)

تستخدم هذه الصيغة عندما نريد أن نقدم تفسير (شرح) مؤكد لشيء ما حدث في الماضي :

قاعدة : Rule**must + have + P.p** تصريف ثالث للفعل**أمثلة : Examples**

- 1/ The sailors **must** have mutinied . البحارة لابد و أنهم قد تمردوا .
- 2/ It **must** have rained last night. The roads are wet. لابد أنها أمطرت الليلة الماضية . الطرقات مبللة .
- 3/ She **must** have put too much sugar in my tea. It tastes very sweet. هي لابد أنها قد وضعت كمية كبيرة جداً من السكر في الشاي . إن طعمه حلو جداً.
- 4/ He **must** have left early. The car isn't here. لابد أنه قد غادر مبكراً . السيارة ليست هنا .
- 5/ The manager **must** have been tired. He worked twelve hours yesterday. لابد أن المدير متعب (منهك) . هو عمل ١٢ ساعة بالأمس.

3/ Not accepting the suggestion or decision : عدم قبول الاقتراح أو القرار (الحكم)

نستخدم هذه الصيغة عندما نريد أن نعبر عن عدم قبول قرار (حكم) على حدث ما في الماضي .

قاعدة : Rule**(cannot (can't) – could not) + have + P.p** تصريف ثالث للفعل**أمثلة : Examples**

- 1/ The sailors **cannot** have mutinied .. البحارة لا يمكن أن يكونوا قد تمردوا .
- 2/ He **can't** have studied hard. The exam is very easy. لا يمكن أنه قد درس بجد . الامتحان سهل جداً .
- 3/ They **can't** have travelled. The car is here. لا يمكن أنهم قد غادروا . السيارة هنا .
- 4/ He **couldn't** have passed the exam. He is weak. لا يمكن أنه قد نجح في الامتحان . هو ضعيف .
- 5/ I **can't** have put enough salt in the soup. It is tasteless. لا يمكن أن أكون قد وضعت ملح كافي في الحساء . إنه بلا مذاق.

4/Giving reasons for (not) accepting a suggestion or decision :

إعطاء سبب لقبول أو لعدم قبول اقتراح أو قرار لحدث ما في الماضي :

قاعدة : Rule :

(may – may not)
(might – might not) + have + P.p تصريف ثالث + because
(could – could not)

أمثلة : Examples :

1/ The sailors may not have mutinied because Captain Morehouse found a sword stained with blood .
البحارة لا يحتمل أن يكونوا قد تمردوا بسبب أن الكابتن مورهاوس وجد سيف ملطخ بالدم .

2/ It may have rained last night because the roads are wet. من الممكن أنها أمطرت الليلة الماضية لأن الطرقات مبللة .

3/ He couldn't have passed the exam because he is weak. لا يمكن أنه قد نجح في الامتحان لأنه ضعيف .

Page 65 كتاب التمارين Workbook

A Use a modal verb to complete these sentences.

- 1 It _____ rained last night. The roads are wet.
- 2 I _____ passed the exam. I don't know yet.
- 3 I _____ put enough salt in this soup. It's tasteless.
- 4 The crew _____ been eaten by a monster because there is no sign of panic.
- 5 The earthquake _____ been very strong because nearly all the buildings collapsed.
- 6 Pirates _____ attacked the ship. It's difficult to say.

استخدم فعل ناقص لتكمل هذه الجمل :

- 1/ must have
- 2/ might have
- 3/ must have
- 4/ can't have
- 5/ must have
- 6/ might have

2 Verb + object + infinitive with to

قاعدة : Rule :

This is a very common sentence pattern, used with many verbs.

Examples: He ordered his crew to put up signal flags.
The teacher wants us to work harder.
I would like you to come home early.
My mother asked me to help her.

C. + (مصدر) + to + infinitive + مفعول به O + (order / would like / ask / want) فعل Verb + فاعل S

ملاحظات مهمة :

١- هذه الأفعال (order) و (would like) و (want) و (ask) تتبع ب المفعول به + to + مصدر

Examples :

1- He ordered us to come early. 2- She asked me to help her .

حيث أن المفعول به في الجملتين هما (us – me) وقد أتيا بعد الفعلين (ordered – asked) وأتى بعد المفعول to وبعده أتى الفعل في المصدر

Q : Choose the best alternatives : اختار أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|------|---------|-------|
| 1 | The doctor ordered himsmoking . | | | |
| | a | b | c | d |
| | to stop | stop | stopped | stops |

| | | | | | |
|---|--|--------------|-----------|--------------|-------------|
| 2 | They asked uscome early . | a in | b on | c to | d of |
| 3 | Heme to study harder . | a ask | b asking | c asked | d asks |
| 4 | I would liketo come home early . | a your | b you | c yours | d mine |
| 5 | The teacher asked ArwaHuda . | a to help | b help | c helping | d helps |
| 6 | He ordered his crewup signal flags . | a put | b to put | c to putting | d putting |
| 7 | She wanted meabroad . | a travelling | b travel | c travelled | d to travel |
| 8 | We would like youthe exam . | a pass | b to pass | c passed | d Passing |

Workbook كتاب التمارين Page 66

B Report what these people say using the verb in brackets. Look at the example. انقل ما يقوله هؤلاء الناس باستخدام الفعل الذي بين الأقواس . انظر المثال :

- 1/ My mother asked me to help her with the wishing up.
- 2/ Our teacher wanted us to learn ten new words for a test.
- 3/ Captain Morehouse ordered his crew to row faster .
- 4/ I asked the waiter to bring a glass of water.

Write your own sentences. اكتب جملاً خاصة بك :

- 1/ I want my best friend to help me.
- 2/ I want my parents to give me some money.
- 3/ I want my teacher to encourage me.

3/ Reflexive pronouns الضمانر المنعكسة

The Usage: الاستخدام

The reflexive pronoun is used when the subject of the a verb is also the object

نستخدم الضمير المنعكس عندما يكون الفاعل هو نفسه المفعول .

فمثلاً لو كان الفاعل هو الضمير (I) فيكون المفعول به هو الضمير المنعكس (myself) وهكذا كما هو موضح في الجدول التالي:

| إذا كان الفاعل ضمير مفرد أو اسم مفرد | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| Pronoun | الضمير | Reflexive pronoun | الضمير المنعكس |
| I | أنا | myself | بنفسي |
| You | أنت - أنت | yourself | بنفسك / بنفسك |
| He | هو | himself | بنفسه |
| She | هي | herself | بنفسها |
| It | هو - هي لغير العاقل | itself | بنفسه/بنفسها |
| Ahmed | أحمد | himself | بنفسه |
| Reham | ريهام | herself | بنفسها |
| The cat | القطعة | itself | بنفسها |

| إذا كان الفاعل ضمير جمع أو اسم جمع | | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| Pronoun | الضمير | Reflexive pronoun | الضمير المنعكس |
| you | أنتم / أنتن - أنتن | yourselves | بنفسكما / بأنفسكم / بأنفسكن |
| they | هم - هن | themselves | بأنفسهم / بأنفسهن |
| We | نحن | ourselves | بأنفسنا |
| The men | الرجال | themselves | بأنفسهم |
| The boys | الأولاد | themselves | بأنفسهم |
| The girls | البنات | themselves | بأنفسهن |
| The cats | القطط | themselves | بأنفسهن |

Examples: امثلة

- 1- I fixed the car myself. أنا أصلحت السيارة بنفسي . / 2- She asked herself. هي سألت بنفسها .
- 3- They came themselves. هم أتوا بأنفسهم . / 4- Khalid came himself. خالد أتى بنفسه .
- 5- The students are here themselves. الطلاب هنا بأنفسهم . /

6- My brother and I did that ourselves . اخي و انا فعلنا تلك بانفسنا .

Q : Choose the best alternatives : اختار أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|---|------------|---|------------|---|------------|---|------------|
| 1 | He fixed the car | a | myself | b | himself | c | herself | d | themselves |
| 2 | Do it | a | myself | b | yourself | c | itself | d | themselves |
| 3 | My sister hurtplaying volleyball yesterday. | a | her | b | herself | c | she | d | himself |
| 4 | The film.....wasn't very good but I loved the movie . | a | herself | b | itself | c | himself | d | yourself |
| 5 | The two bank clerks blamedfor the mistakes . | a | themselves | b | yourselves | c | ourselves | d | himself |
| 6 | You never listen to me. I may as well talk to | a | himself | b | herself | c | myself | d | itself |
| 7 | Come in, please, and sit down. You are both most welcome. Make at home. | a | myself | b | yourselves | c | herself | d | yourself |
| 8 | She admitted the guilt | a | himself | b | hiself | c | herself | d | yourself |
| 9 | The old man cut the treeyesterday . | a | themselves | b | herself | c | himself | d | yourself |
| 10 | The doctor has prepared the injection | a | yourself | b | itself | c | themselves | d | himself |
| 11 | There's no need to help. We can take care of | a | yourselves | b | themselves | c | ourselves | d | ourself |
| 12 | All the passengers on the ship to throw Into the sea. | a | yourself | b | itself | c | himself | d | themselves |
| 13 | Ahmed ! What have you been doing? Go and wash | a | yourselves | b | themselves | c | yourself | d | ourself |
| 14 | I burnedwith the oven. | a | yourselves | b | himself | c | myself | d | herself |
| 15 | Be careful that knife is sharp. Don't cut | a | myself | b | itself | c | himself | d | yourself |
| 16 | We gavetwo hours to get the entire room cleaned. | a | yourselves | b | themselves | c | ourselves | d | ourself |
| 17 | My brother and I looked atin the mirror. | a | yourselves | b | himself | c | ourselves | d | myself |
| 18 | Cats can get clean by licking | a | yourselves | b | itself | c | himself | d | themselves |
| 19 | Depend on | a | herself | b | himself | c | yourself | d | myself |
| 20 | My little brother likes to practice his English by talking to | a | herself | b | yourself | c | himself | d | myself |
| 21 | Makeat home. | a | herself | b | himself | c | yourself | d | myself |
| 22 | The passengers decided to drown | a | yourselves | b | yourself | c | themselves | d | ourselves |

حل أهم تمارين الكتاب الخاصة بالفقرة السابقة Page 66

استخدم الضمانر المنعكسة الصحيحة : C

1/ ourselves 2/ yourselves 3/ herself 4/ myself 5/ themselves 6/ yourself

و فيما يلي تمرين شامل لقواعد الوحدة الخامسة بطريقة الأتمته الجديدة :

| | | | |
|---|--|----|--|
| 1 | Thatbe a car. It's obvious. (can / might / could / must) | 8 | Thatbe Ali. He is the only one missing. (can / should / cannot / must) |
| 2 | Itbe a kite. It's impossible. (must / may / might / can't) | 9 | It can't be a coin but Itbe a pen. (must / will / could / can) |
| 3 | Hebe a teacher but he could be a doctor. (must / can / can't / could) | 10 | It can't be a coin. Itbe a pen. (must / could / can / will) |
| 4 | I wish Ia bird. (am / are / was / were) | 11 | Youlook at your books during an exam. (must / will / mustn't / can) |
| 5 | Youspeak in a public library . (must / will / mustn't / can) | 12 | You should work together and help (ourselves / yourself / yourselves / themselves) |
| 6 | The lady drove the bus (himself / themselves / herself / myself) | 13 | Ahmed broke the vase..... (himself / themselves / herself / itself) |
| 7 | Itbe a coin. I am sure. (might / may / must / could) | | |

Section Two القسم الثاني

Grammar Rules القواعد

فيما يلي سيتم شرح بقية القواعد التي تعتبر أساس اللغة الإنجليزية و التي لم تتضمنها الخلاصات اللغوية التي ذكرت في الوحدات السابقة

Pronouns الضمانر

| ضمائر الفاعل Subject pronouns | تأتي في بداية الجملة و يأتي بعدها فعل | I | You | He | She | It | We | They |
|--|---------------------------------------|------|-------|-----|------|-------|------|--------|
| ضمائر المفعول به Object pronouns | تأتي بعد الفعل أو بعد حرف الجر | me | you | him | her | it | us | them |
| صفات التملك (الملكية) Possessive adjectives | يأتي بعدها اسم | my | your | his | her | its | our | their |
| ضمائر التملك (الملكية) Possessive pronouns | لا يأتي بعدها اسم | mine | yours | his | hers | | ours | theirs |

1- Subject pronouns (ضمائر الفاعل)

| No. | The pronoun الضمير | الاستخدام و المعنى | أمثلة : Examples |
|-----|--------------------|--|---|
| 1 | I | (أنا) للمتكلم العاقل | I go to school .. أنا أذهب إلى المدرسة .. |
| 2 | You | (أنت / انتب / انتما / انتم / انتن) للمخاطب العاقل | You said that .. أنت قلت ذلك .. |
| 3 | He | للمفرد المذكر العاقل الغائب (هو) | He goes to school .. هو يذهب إلى المدرسة .. |
| 4 | She | للمفرد المؤنث العاقل الغائب (هي) | She cooks fish .. هي تطبخ السمك .. |
| 5 | It | للمفرد الغائب غير العاقل (هي / هو / إنه / إنها) | 1/ It is a cat .. 2/ It is a chair .. إنه كرسي .. |
| 6 | We | (نحن) للمتكلم الجمع العاقل | We go to school .. نحن نذهب إلى المدرسة .. |
| 7 | They | (هم / هن / هما / إنها) لجمع الغائب للعاقل و غير العاقل | They go to the park .. هم يذهبون إلى الحديقة .. They are chairs .. إنها كراسي .. |

2- Object pronouns (ضمائر المفعول به)

| No. | The pronoun الضمير | الاستخدام و المعنى | أمثلة : Examples |
|-----|--------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| 1 | me | ي / المتكلم المفرد | 1- He came with me .. هو أتى معي . / 2- They helped me .. هم ساعدوني . |
| 2 | you | ك / المخاطب المفرد و الجمع | 1- I will go with you .. أنا أذهب معك . / 2- I know you .. أنا أعرفك . |
| 3 | him | هـ / الغائب المفرد المذكر العاقل | 1- He sat beside him .. هو جلس بجانبه . / 2- I know him .. أنا أعرفه . |
| 4 | her | ها / الغائب المفرد المؤنث العاقل | 1- I told her .. أنا أخبرتها . / 2- I know her .. أنا أعرفها . |
| 5 | it | هـ / المفرد الغائب غير العاقل | 1- I studied in it .. أنا درست فيه أو فيها . / 2- I saw it .. أنا رأيته أو رأيته . |
| 6 | us | سنا / المتكلمين العاقل | 1- She will take care of us .. هي ستهتم بنا . / 2- He knows us .. هو يعرفنا . |
| 7 | them | هم / هن / لجمع الغائب العاقل | 1- We gave it to them .. نحن أعطيناه لهم أو لهن . 2- Ali knows them .. علي يعرفهم أو يعرفهن . |

3- Possessive adjectives (صفات الملكية) : (لا يد أن يأتي بعدها اسم)

| No. | The pronoun الضمير | الاستخدام و المعنى | أمثلة : Examples |
|-----|--------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| 1 | my | ي / المتكلم المفرد | This is my father .. هذا أبي . |
| 2 | your | ك / المخاطب المفرد و الجمع | This is your father .. هذا أبوك - أبوكم - أبوكما . |
| 3 | his | هـ / الغائب المفرد المذكر العاقل | Go with his father .. اذهب مع أبيه . |
| 4 | her | ها / الغائب المفرد المؤنث العاقل | I know her father .. أنا أعرف أباها . |
| 5 | its | هـ / المفرد الغائب غير العاقل | This my cat and this is its house .. هذه قطتي و هذا هو بيتها . |
| 6 | our | سنا / المتكلمين العاقل | This is our father .. هذا هو أبانا . |
| 7 | their | هم / هن / لجمع الغائب العاقل | Go with their father .. اذهب مع أبيهم . |

4-Possessive pronouns (ضمائر الملكية)

ملاحظة / عادةً تسبق بأحد أفعال الكينونة (is / are / was / were)

| No. | The pronoun الضمير | الاستخدام و المعنى | أمثلة : Examples : |
|-----|--------------------|--------------------|--|
| 1 | mine | ملكي - حقني - لي | The book is mine . الكتاب ملكي . |
| 2 | yours | ملكك - لك - حقك | This pen is yours . هذا القلم ملكك . |
| 3 | his | ملكه - حقه - له | That pen is his .. ذلك القلم ملكه . |
| 4 | hers | ملكها - حقها - لها | This bag is hers . هذه الحقيبة ملكها . |
| 5 | ours | ملكنا - لنا - حقنا | This is ours . هذا ملكنا . |
| 6 | theirs | ملكهم - لهم - حقهم | The house is theirs . البيت ملكهم . |

| NO. | Choose the best alternatives :- اختر أفضل الإجابات : | السبب : |
|-----|---|--|
| 1 | know Sana'a very well . (I - me - my - mine) | لاحظ ان الفراغ قد أتى في بداية الجملة من 1 إلى 4 أي في موقع الفاعل حيث وقد أتى بعدها الفعل والمفعول به أي أنه يجب اختيار ضمائر الفاعل من بين الخيارات . |
| 2 | helps his parents every day . (He - Him - His) | |
| 3 |will come tomorrow . (our - us - We - ours) | |
| 4 |always helps us.(She - her - hers) | |
| 5 | They are helping (I - me - my) | لاحظ ان الفراغ لم يأتي في بداية الجملة و لم يأتي بعده اسم لذلك سنختار ضمير المفعول به (me) و (them) و (her) لأنها تأتي بعد الفعل أو حرف جر |
| 6 | I live with (they - them - their) | |
| 7 | I will take care of (She - her) | |
| 8 | These are brothers . (I - me - my - mine) | لاحظ انه بعد الفراغ قد أتت أسماء في جميع الجمل لذلك يجب أن نختار ضمائر صفات الملكية الموضحة في الاختيارات |
| 9 | That is father .(she - her - hers) | |
| 10 | I saw book . (You - your - yours) | |
| 11 | We know houses. (they - their - them - theirs) | |
| 12 | These are (she - her - hers) | |
| 13 | This is (my - I - mine) | |
| 14 | These are (you - your - yours) | |
| | | لاحظ ان الفراغات في الجمل المقابلة لم تأتي بعدها أسماء لذلك سنختار ضمائر التملك لأنه لا يأتي بعدها أسماء و الفرق بينها وبين ضمائر المفعول به هو ان ضمائر التملك تسبق بأحد أفعال الكينونة (is / are / was / were) |

Q : Choose the best alternatives : اختر أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-------------------------------|---|------|---|-------|---|--------|---|----------|
| 1 | We know | a | they | b | their | c | them | d | We |
| 2 | His hair is as short as | a | you | b | your | c | yours | d | yourself |
| 3 | My car is as fast as | a | you | b | your | c | yours | d | his |
| 4 | These are | a | me | b | mine | c | myself | d | my |

Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة

تم شرحها ضمن الخلاصة اللغوية رقم ١٠ في الوحدة الخامسة

أدوات المعرفة و النكرة (a / an / the)

1/ Indefinite Articles (a / an) : (التوكير)

| | | | |
|---|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---|
| a /an = one thing = one person | I have a car. I have one car. | There is a man. There is one man. | I need a pen. → any pen I want an apple. → any apple |
|---|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---|

| (a) | (an) |
|---|---|
| 1/ (a) Is used before singular countable noun that begins with a consonant letter (sound) تستخدم أداة النكرة (a) قبل ١- الاسم ٢- المفرد ٣- القابل للعدد ٤- الذي يبدأ بحرف ساكن (consonant) | 1/ (an) Is used before singular countable noun that begins with a vowel letter (sounds) (a / e / i / o / u) تستخدم أداة النكرة (an) قبل ١- الاسم ٢- المفرد ٣- القابل للعدد ٤- الذي يبدأ بحرف متحرك (vowel) (a / e / i / o / u) |
| 1/ I have a pen . 2/ She has a car . | 1/ This is an apple . 2/ It is an elephant . |

| | |
|---|---|
| 2/ We use (a) or (an) for jobs. → singular مفرد | 1/ He is a doctor. هو طبيب 2/ He is an engineer. هو مهندس |
|---|---|

| | |
|---|--|
| *We say (a uniform) / (a university) (a unit) / ... بعض الكلمات تبدأ بحرف (u) و هو من الحروف المتحركة إلا أننا نكتب قبله (a) والسبب أنه عندما ننطقها فإن حرف (u) ينطق مثل الحرف (y) (a university) pronounced (a yuniversity) | *We say (an hour) / (an honest man) (an honor) / (an heir) بعض الكلمات تبدأ بحرف (h) بالرغم من أنه حرف ساكن ولكن علينا أن نكتب قبل هذه الكلمات (an) وليس (a) فحرف (h) لا ينطق (silent) (h) is not pronounced أما إذا أتى بعد حرف u حرفين ساكنين أو أكثر فنكتب قبلها (an) مثل : an umbrella |
| (a European country) pronounced (a yuropean) | |

٦- نستطيع كتابة أداتي النكرة (a - an) قبل الصفات بشرط واحد أن يأتي بعد الصفة اسم مفرد (قابل للعدد) ، مع العلم أن أداتي النكرة تعودان على الاسم وليس على الصفة ، لكن يتم وضع (a / an) على حسب الحرف الذي تبدأ به الصفة وليس الاسم.

| | |
|---|--|
| 1- He is a tall man . هو رجل طويل . | 1- It's an interesting film . إنه فلم ممتع . |
| 2- I have a blue umbrella . أنا عندي مظلة زرقاء . | 2- He is an honest man . هو رجل صادق . |

2/ The Definite Article (the) : (ال)

- (The) used before a singular or plural noun. تستخدم قبل الاسم المفرد أو الجمع .
- (the) is used before.. تستخدم قبل

| | |
|--|--|
| 1 the unique nouns الأسماء الفريدة | (the Sun الشمس / the Moon القمر / the Earth الأرض / the sky السماء / the World العالم / the Ancient House (الكعبة) / the pyramids الأهرامات / the Universal الكون /) |
| 2 Superlative التفضيل | (the) + adj. صفة + est (the tallest) / (the) + most + adj. صفة (the most beautiful) |
| 3 (same) | 1/ He has the same thing. 2/ He is the same age as me. |
| 4 The Ordinal Numbers الأعداد الترتيبية | the first / ... / the 22th of May / July is the seventh month of the year - |
| 5 The Four Directions | the north - the east - the west - the south |
| 6 These words قبل هذه الكلمات | The time / the cinema / the bank / the post office / the airport / the station / the city center / the country / the countryside / |
| 7 Some time expressions | In the morning / in the evening / in the afternoon / in the past / in the future / at the weekend / at the same time / |

- (the) is used before the names of.. تستخدم قبل أسماء

| | |
|--|---|
| 1 countries whose names include the words الدول التي تحتوي اسمائها (states ولايات , kingdom مملكة , or republic جمهورية) على الكلمات | the United States / the United Kingdom. the Republic of Yemen. |
| 2 Countries which have plural nouns as their names. الدول التي صيغة اسمها بالجمع . | The Netherlands هولندا / the Philippines الفلبين / ... |

| | | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 3/ Mountain ranges سلاسل جبلية | 4/ Groups of Islands مجموعة جزر | 5/ rivers أنهار | 6/ Seas بحار |
| The Himalayas الهيمالايا | The Canaries جزر الكناري | The Nile River نهر النيل | The Red Sea البحر الأحمر |

| | | | |
|--|---|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 7/ Oceans محيطات | 8/ Canals قنوات | 9/ deserts صحاري | 10 / system or service نظام أو خدمة |
| The Atlantic Ocean المحيط الأطلسي | The Panama Canal قناة بنما | the Ruba' Al Khali | the radio / the police |
| 11/ points on the globe | 12/ well-known buildings or works of art مباني مشهورة أو أعمال فنية | 13/ families عائلات | 14/ newspapers صحف أخبار |
| The Equator خط الاستواء / The North Pole القطب الشمالي | The Taj Mahal/ / the Mona Lisa | the Jacksons / the Obamas | The Times / The Washington Post |

| | | |
|--|---|---------------------|
| 15 hotels, restaurants, museums... فنادق ، مطاعم ، متاحف ، | 1/ The National Museum | 2/ The Hilton Hotel |
| 16 musical instruments الآلات الموسيقية | 1/ He plays the piano really well. 2/ She is learning the guitar. | |

*We use the definite article in front of a noun when we believe the listener/reader knows exactly what we are referring to: because there is only one. لأنه لا يوجد إلا واحد فقط .
عندما نثق أن المستمع / القارئ يعرف بالضبط ما نعزو إليه (نريده):
اعطني القلم ، من فضلك . . . give me the pen , pleas

- We also use the definite article to say something about all the things referred to by a noun.
1/ The kangaroo is found only in Australia. 2/ The camels live in hot areas.

Q1: Write true (T) or false (F) (ضع علامة صح أو خطأ)

- 1- It is a water. (F) 2- This is a orange . (F) 3- These are a pens. (F) 4- That is an university . (F)
5- She is good girl. (F) 6- He has a same thing. (F) 7- She is tallest girl in the class. (F)
8- He is most important person in this country. (F) 9- Look at sky. (F) 10- It is located in north. (F)

الإجابات بعد التصحيح هي

- 1- It is water. (a) لأن الماء غير قابل للعدد (نحذف a)
2- This is an orange. 3- These are pens. 4- That is a university . 5- She is a good girl.
6- He has the same thing. 7- She is the tallest girl in the class. 8- He is the most important
9- Look at the sky. 10- It is located in the north.

Q: Choose the suitable answer :

- 1-They are going to offer him----- position. (a / an / at) 2-He followed ----- career in business. (the / on / a)
3-He received -----high salary last month. (a / an / on) 4-He attended ----- interview last week. (on / an / of)
5-She left some money ---- the table. (to/ on / for) 6-He received ---- excellent salary last month. (a / an / on)
7-A knowledge of plants would be ----- advantage. (a / an / on)
8-Ask your school office for ----- application form. (a / an / on)
9-He must attend ----interview at our factory. (a / an / on) 10-He wants to be ----- English teacher. (a / an / on)

الأسماء المعدودة و الغير معدودة Count and non-count nouns

| Countable nouns الأسماء المعدودة | Uncountable nouns الأسماء الغير معدودة |
|--|---|
| are for things we can count using numbers. هي للأشياء التي يمكننا عدّها بالأرقام. They have a singular and a plural form. لديها صيغة المفرد و الجمع . | Are for the things that we cannot count with numbers. هي للأشياء التي لا يمكننا عدّها بالأرقام. They have a singular form. لديها صيغة المفرد فقط . |

1/ Countable nouns الأسماء المعدودة :

في العادة في معظم الأسماء المفردة الشائعة تكون صيغة الجمع بإضافة حرف (s) أو (es) إلى الاسم المفرد ، و لكن هناك بعض الأسماء التي تختلف في طريقة جمعها و قد قسمناها في المجموعات التالية حسب قواعد معينة و هي :
1/ أسماء تكون صيغة الجمع بإضافة حرف (s) إلى الاسم المفرد مثل :

| مفرد Singular | جمع Plural | مفرد Singular | جمع Plural | مفرد Singular | جمع Plural |
|---------------|------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| قلم pen | أقلام pens | snake | snakes | ski | skis |
| كتاب book | كتب books | car | cars | dog | dogs |
| student | students | apple | apples | برتقالة orange | برتقال oranges |
| بنت girl | بنات girls | مدرسة school | مدارس schools | فيل elephant | فيلة elephants |

٢ / أسماء تكون صيغة الجمع بإضافة حرفي (es) إلى الاسم المفرد و هي الكلمات التي تنتهي بأحد الحروف الستة التالية
: مثل (s / ss / ch / sh / x / z)

| Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع |
|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| dress | dresses | brush | brushes | fox | foxes | hex | Hexes |
| class | classes | watch | watches | fax | faxes | quiz | Quizzes |
| bus | buses | match | matches | box | boxes | buzz | Buzzes |

و لكن يوجد هناك استثناءات من القاعدة السابقة مثل

| Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع |
|---------------|------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|------------|
| axis | axes | apex | Apexes / apices | calix | calices |
| oasis | oases | ox | oxen | crux | cruces |

٣ / الأسماء التي تنتهي بحرف (y) تكون صيغة الجمع بطريقتين إما بإضافة حرف (s) أو حرفي (es) إلى الاسم المفرد

| Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | نضيف s فقط |
|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|--|
| boy | Boys | key | keys | way | ways | إذا أتى قبل حرف y حرف متحرك مثل (a / e / i / u / o) |
| toy | toys | valley | valleys | day | days | |

| Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | يبدل حرف y إلى ا و نضيف es |
|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|----------------------------|
| city | cities | Baby | babies | family | Families | إذا أتى قبل حرف y حرف ساكن |
| country | countries | factory | factories | salary | salaries | |

٤ / الأسماء التي تنتهي بحرف (o) تكون صيغة الجمع بطريقتين إما بإضافة حرف (s) أو حرفي (es) إلى الاسم المفرد

| Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | نضيف s فقط |
|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|--|
| radio | radios | studio | studios | igloo | igloos | إذا أتى قبل حرف o حرف متحرك مثل (a / e / i / u / o) |
| video | videos | zoo | zoos | bamboo | bamboos | |

| Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | نضيف es |
|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|----------------------------|
| tomato | tomatoes | echo | echoes | volcano | volcanoes | إذا أتى قبل حرف o حرف ساكن |
| potato | potatoes | hero | heroes | zero | zeroes | |

و لكن يوجد هناك استثناءات من القاعدة السابقة فهناك كلمات تنتهي بحرف o و سبقها حرف ساكن و لكن صيغة الجمع منها تكون بإضافة s فقط

| Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | نضيف s فقط استثناءات |
|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|-------------------------|
| kilo | kilos | casino | casinos | piano | pianos | |
| silos | silos | photo | photos | jumbo | jumbos | |

٥ / الأسماء التي تنتهي بحرفي (fe) أو بحرف (f) و بالأخص الكلمات التي تنتهي (af) أو (lf) تكون صيغة الجمع بإضافة الحروف (ves) بعد حذف حرفي (fe) و حرف (f) من الكلمة

| Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | نضيف ves بعد حذف حرف f أو حذف حرفي fe |
|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|--|
| thief | thieves | wolf | wolves | self | selves | |
| leaf | leaves | elf | elves | knife | knives | |
| sheaf | sheaves | half | halves | life | lives | |
| loaf | loaves | calf | calves | wife | wives | |
| | | shelf | shelves | | | |

و لكن يوجد هناك استثناءات من القاعدة السابقة فهناك كلمات تنتهي بحرف f و لكن صيغة الجمع منها تكون بإضافة s فقط

| Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | نضيف s فقط كلمات استثنائية تنتهي بحرف f |
|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|--|
| Turfs | Turfs | hoof | hoofs | gulf | gulfs | |
| chief | chiefs | roof | roofs | scarf | scarfs | |

٦ / هناك أسماء مفردة تكون صيغة الجمع منها بطريقة مختلفة مثل :

| Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع |
|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| child | children | foot | feet | mouse | mice |
| man | men | tooth | teeth | louse | lice |
| woman | women | ox | oxen | goose | geese |

٧/ هناك أسماء مفردة تكون صيغة الجمع منها هي نفسها مثل :

| Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع | Singular مفرد | Plural جمع |
|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| sheep | sheep | deer | deer | species | species | moose | Moose |
| | | fish | fish | data | data | salmon | Salmon |

2/ Uncountable nouns : الأسماء الغير معدودة :

1/ Fluids دم - حساء - soup - عصير - juice - حبر - ink - قهوة - coffee / زيت - oil - شاي - tea - حليب - milk - ماء - water : سوائل

2/ Solids : صلبة (جوامد) / مجوهرات Jewellery / ذهب gold / ثلج ice / صلبة (جوامد) /

3/ Gases : غازات / هيدروجين hydrogen / أكسجين oxygen / دخان smoke / أكسجين oxygen / هواء air / بخار steam : غازات / تلوث pollution /

4/ food : أطعمة /

5/ Particles : حبيبات (جزيئات) / رمل dirt / ملح salt / نرة sorghum / قمح wheat / دقيق flour / أرز rice / سكر sugar : حبيبات (جزيئات) /

6/ materials : مواد / ورق paper / جلد leather / خشب wood / حرير silk / بلاستيك plastic / قطن cotton : مواد / ..

7/ field of study : مجالات الدراسة / جغرافيا geography / رياضيات mathematics / تاريخ history / كيمياء chemistry : مجالات الدراسة /

8/ languages : لغات / صينية Chinese / إسبانية Spanish / فرنسية French / إنجليزية English / عربية Arabic : لغات /

9/ sport : رياضة / كرة قدم football / كرة طائرة volleyball / كرة بيسبول baseball / كرة سلة soccer / تنس tennis / شطرنج chess : رياضة /

10/ activities : أنشطة / سباحة swimming / قيادة driving / مشي walking / لعب playing / سفر travelling : أنشطة /

11/ hair : شعر / جلد skin / صوف wool / فراء fur : شعر /

12/ : أخبار news / عمل work / نصيحة advice - نقود money - معلومات information - واجب homework : أسماء أخرى / أثاث furniture / طبيعة nature / أمتعة luggage / ..

many / much / some / few / little / a lot of / any

| Countable nouns الأسماء المعدودة | | Uncountable nouns الأسماء الغير معدودة |
|---|---|---|
| a singular form صيغة المفرد | a plural form صيغة الجمع | They have a singular form... لديها صيغة المفرد... |
| نكتب قبلها إما (a) أو (an) ١- إذا بدأ الاسم بحرف ساكن فيجب أن نكتب (a) ٢- أما إذا بدأ الاسم بحرف متحرك فيجب أن نكتب قبله (an) والحروف المتحركة هي (a / e / i / u / o) | We can use before them these words يمكننا أن نستخدم قبلها هذه الكلمات : 1- (few / a few) mean تعنيان (القليل من) 2- (many) means تعني (الكثير من / العديد من) 3- (a lot of) means تعني (الكثير من) 4- (some) means تعني (بعض) 5- (any) means تعني (أي) | We can use before them these words يمكننا أن نستخدم قبلها هذه الكلمات : 1- (little / a little) mean تعنيان (القليل من) 2- (much) means تعني (الكثير من) 3- (a lot of) means تعني (الكثير من) 4- (some) means تعني (بعض) 5- (any) means تعني (أي) |

(much) ≠ (little / a little) / (many) ≠ (few / a few)

1/ (a few / few / many / several / these / those / 2,3 ,... / How many .../ a number of)

+ Plural countable nouns أسماء قابلة للعدد جمع

2/ (a little / little / much / too much / How much) + Singular uncountable nouns أسماء غير قابلة للعدد مفرد

• ملاحظات هامة Notes

1- We use (some) in positive sentences and with questions. . نستخدم في الجمل المثبتة و مع الأسئلة .

1/ We want some students . نحن نريد بعض الطلاب .

2/ Are there some cars in the street ?

1/ We want some information about this project.

2/ Is there some rice in the kitchen ?

2- We use (any) in negative sentences and with questions. . نستخدم في الجمل المنفية و مع الأسئلة .

1/ I don't have any books . لا أملك أي كتب .

2/ Are there any students in the class ?

1/ I don't have any money .

2/ Do you need any help ?

3- We use (some) not (any) when we offer things. . لعرض تقديم شيء .

Example : Would you like some tea? هل تريد بعض الشاي ؟

4- We use (some) not (any) when we ask for things. . عند طلب شيء .

Example : Can you lend me some money? هل يمكنك أن تقرضني بعض النقود (المال) ؟

| أمثلة : Examples | | |
|--|---|---|
| الأسماء المعدودة Countable nouns | | الأسماء الغير معدودة Uncountable nouns |
| a singular form صيغة المفرد | a plural form صيغة الجمع | They have a singular form.. لديها صيغة المفرد.. |
| 1/ That is a car . 2/ I bought a house . 3/ I have an umbrella . 4/ I would like an orange . 5/ There is one car . | 1/ I bought a lot of books . 2/ There are many boys . 3/ There aren't many boys . 4/ Are there many boys ? 5/ How many brothers have you got ? 6/ I have a few pens . 7/ There are three cars . | 1/ I bought a lot of sugar . 2/ There is much water . 3/ There isn't much water . 4/ Is there much water in the well ? 5/ How much money do you need? 6/ I have a little money . |

ويمكن أن تأتي الكلمات السابقة في الامتحان عن طريق سؤال ضع علامة صح أو خطأ أو عن طريق اختيار الاجابة الصحيحة من بين الأقواس كما يلي

| NO. | Q: Choose the suitable answer : اختر الإجابة المناسبة : | السبب : |
|-----|--|--|
| 1 | This isbook . (a/an/the) | لأن الاسم قد بدأ بحرف ساكن b |
| 2 | It ishouse . (a/ an /the) | لأن الاسم قد بدأ بحرف ساكن h |
| 3 | It isumbrella .(a/an /the) | لأن الاسم قد بدأ بحرف متحرك u |
| 4 | We havesugar. (many/a few / a little) | سنختار في الجملتين (a little) لأن بعدها اسمان غير معدودان وهما |
| 5 | She wantscheese . (many/a few / a little) | سكر (sugar) وجبن (cheese) |
| 6 | He hascars . (a few/a little / much) | سنختار في الجملتين (a few) لأن بعدها اسمان معدودان (جمع) وهما |
| 7 | I wantpapers. (much / a few / a little) | سيارات (cars) وأوراق (papers) |
| 8 | Arwa hasrice . (much / many / a few) | لأن الاسم (rice) اسم غير معدود |
| 9 | They havecars . (much / many / a little) | لأن (cars) اسم معدود (جمع) |
| 10 | Give meoil . (some / many / any) | لأن (oil) اسم غير معدود و الجملة مثبتة لذلك لا نختار any |
| 11 | Give meeggs . (much / some / any) | لأن (eggs) اسم معدود (جمع) وكذلك لا نختار any لأن الجملة مثبتة |
| 12 | Do you havewater? (many / much / a few) | لأن (water) اسم غير معدود |
| 13 | Does he havecars ? (a little / much / many) | لأن (cars) اسم معدود (جمع) |
| 14 | He doesn't haveeggs .(any / some / many) | لأن الجملة منفية |
| 15 | I don't haveinformation .(some / any / many) | لأن الجملة منفية |
| 16 | He hasfriends . (any / much / a lot of) | لأن (friends) اسم معدود (جمع) |
| 17 | She hadrice . (any / many / a lot of) | لأن الاسم (rice) اسم غير معدود |
| 18 | He hascheese . (a / an / some) | لأن (cheese) اسم غير معدود |
| 19 | Reham hasapples . (a / an / some) | لأن (apples) اسم معدود (جمع) |

| | | | | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|---------|------------|------------|------------|
| 1 | This isumbrella . | a a | b an | c some | d any |
| 2 | He doesn't havebrothers . | a some | b much | c a little | d any |
| 3 | She hassugar . | a some | b many | c a few | d any |
| 4 | Howmoney do you need ? | a many | b much | c some | d far |
| 5 | Howstudents does he have ? | a many | b much | c some | d far |
| 6 | Look atSun . | a a | b an | c some | d the |
| 7 | We needhour . | a a | b an | c some | d many |
| 8 | They have gotbooks . | a a few | b a little | c much | d too much |
| 9 | He didn't havemoney yesterday . | a some | b a few | c any | d many |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|--------------------------------|-------------|---|------------|---|-----------|---|------------|
| 10 | Khalid needs these | | | | | | | |
| | a | ox | b | oxes | c | oxs | d | oxen |
| 11 | She has gotinformation . | | | | | | | |
| | a | a few | b | a little | c | a | d | an |
| 12 | He ishonest man . | | | | | | | |
| | a | a | b | an | c | any | d | some |
| 13 | She has gotchildren . | | | | | | | |
| | a | much | b | little | c | many | d | much |
| 14 | We needmoney . | | | | | | | |
| | a | a number of | b | a crowd of | c | amount of | d | a group of |

| | | | |
|----|---|----|--|
| 1 | I haveinterview tomorrow. (a / <u>an</u> / to / ----) | 2 | My friend arrived in Adenmonths ago. (a little / little / a / <u>a few</u>) |
| 3 | We saw themhour ago. (a / <u>an</u> / the / some) | 4 | Should doctors wearuniform at work? (<u>a</u> / an / these / ----) |
| 5 | He ishonest man. (a / <u>an</u> / the / some) | 6 | Bringumbrella. (a / <u>an</u> / some / any) |
| 7 | I need someon what to do after leaving school. (<u>advice</u> / advise / advices / advises) | 8 | Can you playpiano? (a / an / <u>the</u> / --) |
| 9 |egg I ate today was delicious. (<u>A</u> / An / <u>The</u> / Some) | 10 | He doesn't have a..... . (<u>job</u> / work / occupation / 1 and 2) |
| 11 |piece of advice is better than nothing. (<u>A</u> / An / The / All) | 12 | Is it a man orwoman? (<u>a</u> / an / the / these) |
| 13 |apple a day keeps the doctor away. (<u>A</u> / <u>An</u> / The / Some) | 14 | There weren'tfish on the desk. (some / same / <u>any</u> / an) |
| 15 | There isn'tbread in the store. (many / few / <u>much</u> / some) | 16 | Wafa'a has onlysugar. (many / much / few / <u>little</u>) |
| 17 |kind man is better than a wealthy man. (<u>A</u> / An / The / Some) | 18 | Abdullah has onlystudents. (many / much / <u>few</u> / little) |
| 19 | He foundrotten apple on the table. (<u>a</u> / an / any / some) | 20 | We need to do more to helphomeless. (a / an / little / <u>the</u>) |
| 21 | He borrowedmoney from Ali. (many / <u>some</u> / a / any) | 22 |earth is bigger than the Moon. (a / an / <u>the</u> / ----) |
| 23 | She has gotinformation about this topic. (a / an / many / <u>little</u>) | 24 | Ask them to cleanroom? (a / an / <u>the</u> / ----) |
| 25 | Can I borrowmoney? (a / an / <u>some</u> / any) | 26 | He has gotbutter. (a / an / few / <u>little</u>) |
| 27 | Do you havebrothers? (a / an / <u>any</u> / some) | 28 | Would you likemilk? (a / an / <u>some</u> / any) |
| 29 | Is thereink in your pen? (some / <u>any</u> / many / few) | 30 | Have you boughtbooks? (some / <u>any</u> / much / little) |
| 31 | Are theresandwiches on the table? (a / an / some / <u>any</u>) | 32 | Would you likeorange juice? (a / an / <u>some</u> / any) |
| 33 | Howmilk do you need? (<u>much</u> / many / few / little) | 34 | Would you likecake? (<u>some</u> / any / many / two) |
| 35 | Howdoes he weigh? (<u>much</u> / many / few / little) | 36 | Howpeople are there? (much / <u>many</u> / few / little) |
| 37 | How manydo you have? (child / childs / <u>children</u> / childrens) | 38 | Howis that car? (<u>much</u> / many / far / weigh) |
| 39 | The chair is made ofwood. (a / an / the / ----) | 40 | How muchis there? (<u>rice</u> / a rice / rices / a rices) |
| 41 | He lives onfirst floor. (a / an / <u>the</u> / ----) | 42 | He bought a flat.flat is nice. (a / an / <u>the</u> / some) |
| 43 | She cannot playguitar. (a / an / <u>the</u> / ----) | 44 | They are incountryside. (a / an / <u>the</u> / some) |

| | | | |
|----|--|----|---|
| 45 | She haseggs. (a / an / <u>some</u> / every) | 46 | They are atairport. (a / an / <u>the</u> / -) |
| 47 | You arebest. (a / an / <u>the</u> / ---) | 48 | He works in morning. (a / an / <u>the</u> / ---) |
| 49 | He issame age as you. (a / an / <u>the</u> / --) | 50 | She istallest girl in her family. (a / an / <u>the</u>) |
| 51 | They live inUnited States of America. (a / an / <u>the</u> / ---) | 52 | Askman who helped us yesterday. (a / an / <u>the</u> / ---) |
| 53 | Did you readbook I lent you? (a / an / <u>the</u> / ---) | 54 | Have you ever visitedpyramids? (a / an / <u>the</u> / ---) |
| 55 | He doesn't likeEnglish language. (a / an / <u>the</u> / ---) | 56 | You have to removescales of the fish before cooking. (a / an / <u>the</u> / ---) |

Regular and Irregular Verbs الأفعال القياسية (المنتظمة) وغير القياسية (غير المنتظمة)

- الأفعال القياسية هي الأفعال التي يضاف إلى آخرها ed أو d في التصريف الثاني والثالث ، أما الأفعال غير القياسية أو ما تسمى أيضاً بالشواذ فهي التي لا يضاف إلى آخرها ed في التصريف الثاني والثالث .
 - الملاحظات التي تم كتابتها أعلى كل مجموعة في الجدول التالي لا تعتبر قواعد ثابتة في اللغة الإنجليزية وإنما هي محصورة حول ما تم ذكره في هذا الجدول من أفعال فقط .
- أولاً : الأفعال القياسية (المنتظمة) (Regular verbs) : هي الأفعال التي يضاف إلى المصدر ed في التصريف الثاني والثالث
- ملاحظة هامة : إذا انتهت الأفعال القياسية بحرف e فنقوم بإضافة حرف d فقط

| الرقم | المعنى | مضارع (التصريف الأول) | التصريف الثاني والثالث | الرقم | المعنى | مضارع (التصريف الأول) | التصريف الثاني والثالث |
|---|----------------|-----------------------|------------------------|---|------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| NO. | The meaning | Infinitive مصدر | Past / P.p | NO. | The meaning | Infinitive مصدر | Past / P.p |
| لاحظ أن معظم الأفعال التي تبدأ بالحروف المتحركة (a / e / o / i / u) تكون أفعال قياسية (أي أن التصريف الثاني والثالث ينتهيان بـ ed) ما عدا عدد من الأفعال تعتبر غير قياسية (شاذة) منها (am / are / arise) و (eat) و (is / input / inset) و (upset / understand) وكذلك الأفعال التي تبدأ بالمقطع over / out أو المقطع under فليست جميعها قياسية | | | | | | | |
| 1 | يجيب | answer | answered | 4 | يؤثر | affect | affected |
| 2 | يمثل | act | acted | 5 | يتقدم لطلب وظيفة | apply | applied |
| 3 | يجذب | attract | attracted | 6 | يصل | arrive | arrived |
| 7 | يفسر (يشرح) | express | expressed | 10 | يتعلم | educate | educated |
| 8 | يثير (يستفز) | excite | excited | 11 | ينتهي | end | ended |
| 9 | يتوقع | expect | expected | 12 | يكسب | earn | earned |
| 13 | يطور (يحسن) | improve | improved | 16 | يخترع | invent | invented |
| 14 | يتخيل | imagine | imagined | 17 | يعدى | infect | infected |
| 15 | يحصن | immunize | immunized | 18 | يوجه | instruct | instructed |
| 19 | يرتب أو يأمر | order | ordered | 22 | يرتب - يأمر | order | ordered |
| 20 | يقدم | offer | offered | 23 | يقدم | offer | offered |
| 21 | يحذف | omit | omitted | 24 | يعمل عليه | operate | operated |
| 26 | يستخدم | use | used | 25 | يلاحظ | observe | observed |
| 27 | يضع خط تحت | underline | underlined | لاحظ أن معظم الأفعال التي تبدأ بحرفي co تكون أفعال قياسية (أي أن التصريف الثاني والثالث لها ينتهي بـ ed) ما عدا تقريباً فعلين شاذين هما cost / come | | | |
| 28 | يتآكل (يصدأ) | corrode | corroded | 31 | يوصل | connect | connected |
| 29 | يصحح | correct | corrected | 32 | يعتبر | consider | considered |
| 30 | يعد | count | counted | 33 | يسيطر | control | controlled |

| | | | | | | | |
|--|---------------|-----------|------------|---|----------------|------------|-------------|
| لاحظ أن معظم الأفعال التي تبدأ بحرف p تكون أفعال قياسية (أي أن التصريف الثاني و الثالث لها ينتهي بـ ed) ما عدا فطين شاذين هما put / pay و قد توجد أفعال أخرى شاذة و لكنها غير مذكورة في المنهج | | | | | | | |
| 34 | يقشر | peel | peeled | 37 | يسحب | pull | pulled |
| 35 | يصفل (يلمع) | polish | polished | 38 | يحضر | prepare | prepared |
| 36 | يجتاز | pass | passed | 39 | ينتج | produce | produced |
| لاحظ أن معظم الأفعال التي تبدأ أو تنتهي بحرفي ch تكون أفعال قياسية (أي أن التصريف الثاني و الثالث لها ينتهي بـ ed) ما عدا ثلاثة أفعال شاذة هي catch / teach / choose و قد توجد أفعال أخرى شاذة | | | | | | | |
| 40 | يغير | change | changed | 43 | يشاهد | watch | watched |
| 41 | يتحدى | challenge | challenged | 44 | يصل | reach | reached |
| 42 | يتعقب - يطارد | chase | chased | 45 | يبحث | search | searched |
| لاحظ أن معظم الأفعال التي تنتهي بحرفي sh تكون أفعال قياسية (أي أن التصريف الثاني و الثالث لها ينتهي بـ ed) | | | | | | | |
| 46 | يعاقب | punish | punished | 49 | يتسرع | rush | Rushed |
| 47 | يفرش (أسنانه) | brush | brushed | 50 | ينتهي | finish | Finished |
| 48 | يغسل | wash | washed | 51 | يتحطم | crash | Crashed |
| لاحظ أن معظم الأفعال التي تحتوي على حرف m تكون أفعال قياسية (أي أن التصريف الثاني و الثالث لها ينتهي بـ ed) ما عدا سبعة أفعال تعتبر شواذ و هي (become / mean / swim / must / meet / make / smell / mistake) سنذكر بالتفصيل ضمن مجموعة الأفعال غير القياسية لاحقاً | | | | | | | |
| 52 | يحلم | dream | dreamed | 59 | يدمر (يحطم) | damage | Damaged |
| 53 | يصرخ | scream | screamed | 60 | يحد | limit | Limited |
| 54 | يعلم | inform | informed | 61 | ينقل | transmit | Transmitted |
| 55 | يشكل | form | Formed | 62 | يتحرك | move | Moved |
| 56 | يبدو (شكله) | seem | seemed | 63 | يدخن | Smoke | Smoked |
| 57 | يتسلق | climb | climbed | 64 | يقيس | measure | Measured |
| 58 | يفجر | bomb | bombed | 65 | يصلح | mend | Mended |
| لاحظ أن معظم الأفعال التي تحتوي على حرف o في الوسط تكون أفعال قياسية (أي أن التصريف الثاني و الثالث لها ينتهي بـ ed) ما عدا تسعة أفعال تعتبر شواذ و هي (grow / throw / know / blow / shoot / hold / forget / broadcast / lose / show) سنذكر بالتفصيل ضمن مجموعة الأفعال غير القياسية لاحقاً | | | | | | | |
| 66 | يُصنف (يفرز) | Sort | Sorted | 69 | ينظر | look | Looked |
| 67 | يقف (يوقف) | stop | stopped | 70 | يطبخ | cook | cooked |
| 68 | يقفز | hop | hopped | 71 | يغلي | boil | Boiled |
| إذا انتهى الفعل في (التصريف الأول) بحرف (y) و أتى قبله حرف ساكن فيجب أن تغير حرف (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف للفعل ed أما إذا أتى قبل حرف (y) حرف متحرك و الحروف المتحركة هي (a / o / u / i / e) فنضيف للفعل ed ونترك حرف (y) كما هو ما عدا الأفعال الخمسة الأخيرة (fly / pay / say / lay / buy) فهي من الشواذ و سنذكر ضمن مجموعة الأفعال غير القياسية لاحقاً و قد توجد أفعال أخرى شواذ | | | | | | | |
| 72 | يدرس | study | studied | 75 | يصلي | pray | Prayed |
| 73 | يبكي | Cry | Cried | 76 | يلعب | Play | Played |
| 74 | يحاول | try | tried | 77 | يستمتع | enjoy | Enjoyed |
| لاحظ أن الأفعال التالية انتهت بحرفي ct و هي قياسية و من الممكن وجود شواذ | | | | لاحظ أن الأفعال التالية انتهت بحرف x و هي قياسية و من الممكن وجود شواذ | | | |
| 78 | يرفض | reject | rejected | 81 | يصلح | fix | Fixed |
| 79 | يحترم | respect | respected | 82 | يخلط | mix | mixed |
| 80 | يهمل | neglect | neglected | 83 | يسترخي | relax | relaxed |
| لاحظ أن الأفعال التالية انتهت بحرفي nt و هي قياسية و من الممكن وجود شواذ | | | | لاحظ أن الأفعال التالية انتهت بحرفي gh و هي قياسية و من الممكن وجود شواذ | | | |
| 84 | يريد | want | Wanted | 86 | يضحك | laugh | laughed |
| 85 | يؤجر | rent | rented | 87 | يزن | weigh | weighed |
| لاحظ أن الأفعال التالية تنتهي بحرفي er و en و معظمها قياسية ، أي أننا سنضيف ed في التصريف الثاني و الثالث | | | | لاحظ أن الأفعال التالية تبدأ بحرفي de و re و تنتهي بحرف e لذلك سنضيف إليها d فقط في التصريفين الثاني و الثالث | | | |
| 88 | يسمع | listen | listened | 92 | يقرر | decide | decided |
| 89 | يربط (الحزام) | fasten | fastened | 93 | يصف | describe | described |
| 90 | يرش (يسقي) | water | watered | 94 | يحل محل | replace | replaced |
| 91 | يهمس بالكلام | whisper | whispered | 95 | يقلل | reduce | reduced |
| لاحظ أن الأفعال التالية تنتهي بالحروف (re / ce / ue / ge / ze / use / ate) هي قياسية (نضيف حرف d فقط في التصريف الثاني و الثالث) مع وجود فعل شاذ و هو freeze | | | | | | | |
| 96 | يهتم | care | Cared | 104 | يتعادل - يحايد | neutralize | neutralized |
| 97 | يستأجر | hire | Hired | 105 | يعصر | squeeze | squeezed |
| 98 | يرقص | dance | Danced | 106 | يرفض | refuse | refused |

| | | | | | | | |
|--|---------------|------------|-------------|---|-----------------|-----------|-------------|
| 99 | يواجه | face | Faced | 107 | يسبب | cause | caused |
| 100 | يسابق | race | Raced | 108 | يكره | hate | hated |
| 101 | يحل محل | replace | replaced | 109 | يشوي | grate | grated |
| 102 | يقلل | reduce | reduced | 110 | يخترع (يخلق) | Create | created |
| 103 | ينتقم | revenge | revenged | 111 | يهتز | Vibrate | vibrated |
| لاحظ أن الأفعال التالية تنتهي بـ ve و التصريف الثاني و الثالث يكون بإضافة d فقط و هناك أفعال شواذ ستذكر لاحقاً | | | | | | | |
| 112 | يعيش | live | lived | 115 | يؤمن/يصدق | believe | believed |
| 113 | يقوص | dive | dived | 116 | يستقبل (يستلم) | receive | received |
| 114 | يخدم | serve | served | 117 | يهدئ (يسكت) | relieve | relieved |
| لاحظ أن الأفعال التالية تكرر فيها حرفين ساكنين متتابعين تكون معظمها قياسية ما عدا الأفعال التي تنتهي بتكرار الحرف L فليست كلها قياسية ومنها أفعال شواذ و سيتم ذكرها في قسم الأفعال غير القياسية مثل (crossbreed) | | | | | | | |
| 118 | يناقش | discuss | discussed | 127 | يحدث | happen | happened |
| 119 | يخمن | guess | guessed | 128 | يختفي | disappear | disappeared |
| 120 | يقبل | kiss | kissed | 129 | يستعير | borrow | borrowed |
| 121 | يعاني | suffer | suffered | 130 | يلقح (يحصن) | vaccinate | vaccinated |
| 122 | يختلف | differ | differed | 131 | ينجح | succeed | succeeded |
| 123 | يلخص | summarize | summarized | 132 | يقترح | suggest | suggested |
| 124 | يرسخ | simmer | simmered | 133 | يكالغ | struggle | struggled |
| 125 | يزود | supply | supplied | 134 | يتبع | follow | followed |
| 126 | يدعم | support | supported | 135 | يتصل - ينادي | call | called |
| لاحظ أن الأفعال التالية تكرر فيها حرفين ساكنين غير متتابعين تكون معظمها قياسية (أي أن التصريف الثاني و الثالث لها ينتهي بـ ed) و من الممكن وجود شواذ مثل (understand / withdraw / Interbreed) | | | | | | | |
| 136 | يتذكر | remember | remembered | 146 | ينعش | survive | survived |
| 137 | يشك | Suspect | suspected | 147 | يعتمد | depend | depended |
| 138 | يفاجئ | surprise | surprised | 148 | يدافع | defend | defended |
| 139 | يفجر | bomb | bombed | 149 | يقرر | decide | decided |
| 140 | يبدأ | start | Started | 150 | يكسر شعاع ضو | refract | refracted |
| 141 | يترجم | translate | translated | 151 | يقرر | report | reported |
| 142 | يتذوق | taste | Tasted | 152 | يطلب | require | required |
| 143 | يعالج | treat | Treated | 153 | يشفي - يستعيد | recover | recovered |
| 144 | ينقل | transmit | transmitted | 154 | يسجل | register | registered |
| 145 | يوزع - ينشر | distribute | distributed | 155 | يسجل - يدون | record | recorded |
| لاحظ أن الأفعال التالية تحتوي على حرفي ai تكون معظمها أفعال قياسية (التصريف الثاني و الثالث لها ينتهي بـ ed) | | | | لاحظ أن الأفعال التي يكرر فيها حرف z i تكون معظمها أفعال قياسية (أي أن التصريف الثاني و الثالث لها ينتهي بـ ed) | | | |
| 156 | يفشل-يرسب | fail | failed | 161 | يزور | visit | visited |
| 157 | يبحر | sail | sailed | 162 | يحدد - يحصر | limit | limited |
| 158 | يدير | train | trained | 163 | ينهي | finish | finished |
| 159 | ينتظر | wait | waited | 164 | يتمدن (يتحضر) | civilize | civilized |
| 160 | تعطر - يغدق | rain | rained | 165 | لا يحب | dislike | disliked |
| الأفعال التالية قياسية (ينتهي التصريف الثاني و الثالث لها بـ ed) و لم نستطع أن ندرجها ضمن أي من المجموعات السابقة | | | | | | | |
| 166 | يسمع | hear | heard | 175 | يسافر | travel | travelled |
| 167 | يرفع | lift | lifted | 176 | يحصد | harvest | harvested |
| 168 | يخيط | sew | sewed | 177 | يهبط | land | landed |
| 169 | يساعد | help | helped | 178 | يتكلم | talk | talked |
| 170 | ينزلق (يتزلق) | slip | slipped | 179 | يمشي | walk | walked |
| 171 | ينظف | clean | cleaned | 180 | يشكر | thank | thanked |
| 172 | يوقع | sign | signed | 181 | يحب | like | liked |
| 173 | يحذر | warn | warned | 182 | يعود (يرجع) | bake | baked |
| 174 | يحول | turn | turned | 183 | يطبع | type | typed |
| | | | | 184 | يموت | die | died |

ثانياً : الأفعال غير القياسية (غير المنتظمة) (Irregular verbs) : وهي الأفعال التي تسمى بالشواذ (لا يضاف لها في التصريف الثاني والثالث ed) ، ومنها أفعال تصل كما هي في التصريف الثاني والثالث و أخرى يحدث لها تغيير في بعض حروفها في التصريف الثاني والثالث و لقد قمنا بتقسيمها في مجموعات و ذلك لتسهيل عملية الحفظ بمعرفة الحروف التي تم حذفها أو إضافتها لتحويل الفعل إلى التصريف الثاني والثالث .

أولاً : أفعال غير قياسية (تكون في جميع التصاريف متشابهة)

| الرقم | المعنى | مضارع (التصريف الأول) | التصريف الثاني والثالث | الرقم | المعنى | مضارع (التصريف الأول) | التصريف الثاني والثالث |
|---|---------------|-----------------------|------------------------|---|---------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| NO. | The meaning | Infinitive | Past / P.p | NO. | The meaning | Infinitive | Past / P.p |
| هذه الأفعال من الشواذ و التصريفات الثلاثة لها هي نفسها | | | | | | | |
| لاحظ أنها تنتهي بحرفي et لتتمكن من تمييزها و حفظها | | | | لاحظ أنها تنتهي بحرفي t و يوجد فيها حرف u لتتمكن من و حفظها | | | |
| 1 | يضع | put | put | 19 | يلزم - يترك | let | let |
| 2 | يقطع | cut | cut | 20 | يراهن | bet | bet |
| 3 | يجرح - يؤلم | hurt | hurt | 21 | يجلس | set | set |
| 4 | ينفجر - ينفطر | burst | burst | 22 | يُدْرَج | inset | inset |
| 5 | يخفق | bust | bust | 23 | يزعج | beset | beset |
| 6 | يحبس - يحجز | shut | shut | 24 | | reset | reset |
| 7 | بؤجر | sublet | sublet | 25 | | offset | offset |
| 8 | يزعج | upset | upset | | | | |
| 9 | يطعن | thrust | thrust | 26 | يكلف | cost | cost |
| 10 | يهجر - يقلع | quit | quit | لاحظ أنها تحتوي على المقطع cast لتتمكن من تمييزها و حفظها | | | |
| 11 | يزود | input | input | 27 | يقذف - يلقي | cast | cast |
| لاحظ أنها تنتهي بحرفي it لتتمكن من تمييزها و حفظها | | | | 28 | ينشر - يذيع | broadcast | broadcast |
| 12 | يصدم - يضرب | hit | hit | 29 | | recast | recast |
| 13 | | shit | shit | 30 | | miscast | miscast |
| لاحظ أنها تحتوي على المقطع read لتتمكن من تمييزها و حفظها | | | | 31 | | forecast | forecast |
| 14 | يقرا | read | read | | | | |
| 15 | ينتشر | spread | spread | 32 | يتساقط - يعزل | shed | shed |
| 16 | | misread | misread | 33 | | bid | bid |
| 17 | | proofread | proofread | | | | |
| 18 | يعيد قراءة | reread | reread | | | | |

ثانياً : أفعال غير قياسية (تختلف في التصاريف الثلاثة)

ملاحظة هامة : فيما يلي ما تم تلوينه من حروف في المصدر باللون الأحمر هي الحروف التي سيحدث فيها التغيير في التصريف الثاني والثالث للفعل و قد تم تلوين التغيير هذا في التصريف الثاني والثالث بالأزرق ، مع التركيز على ما تم حذفه أو إضافته من حروف .

| الرقم | المعنى | المصدر (التصريف الأول) | التصريف الثاني الماضي | التصريف الثالث |
|-------|-------------|------------------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| NO. | The meaning | Infinitive | Past | P.P |
| 1 | يجد | find | found | found |
| 2 | يربط | bind | bound | bound |
| 3 | يطحن | grind | ground | ground |
| 4 | يشرب | drink | drank | drunk |
| 5 | يغطس - يفرق | sink | sank | sunk |
| 6 | يتقلص | shrink | shrank | shrunk |

| الرقم | المعنى | المصدر (التصريف الأول) | التصريف الثاني الماضي | التصريف الثالث |
|-------|--------------|------------------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| NO. | The meaning | Infinitive | Past | P.P |
| 11 | ينام | sleep | slept | slept |
| 12 | يحفظ | keep | kept | kept |
| 13 | يبكي - يقطر | weep | wept | wept |
| 14 | يكنس - يجرف | sweep | swept | swept |
| 15 | يزحف - يتملق | creep | crept | crept |
| 16 | يشعر | feel | felt | felt |
| 17 | يركع - يسجد | kneel | knelt | knelt |

| | | | | |
|----|------------------|----------------|------------------|------------------|
| 7 | يقني | <u>sing</u> | sang | sung |
| 8 | يلدغ - يلمع | <u>sting</u> | stang | stung |
| 9 | ينمو - يقفز | <u>spring</u> | sprang | sprung |
| 10 | يدق الجرس | <u>ring</u> | rang | rung |
| 26 | يستند - يعيل | <u>lean</u> | leant | leant |
| 27 | يعني - يقصد | <u>mean</u> | meant | meant |
| 28 | يحترق - يثير | <u>burn</u> | burnt | burnt |
| 29 | يتعلم | <u>learn</u> | learnt | learnt |
| 30 | يحلم | <u>dream</u> | dreamt - dreamed | dreamt - dreamed |
| 31 | يعامل - يوزع | <u>deal</u> | dealt | dealt |
| 32 | يقفز - يثبت | <u>leap</u> | leapt | leapt |
| 26 | يستند - يعيل | <u>lean</u> | leant | leant |
| 33 | يتحدث | <u>speak</u> | spoke | spoken |
| 34 | يكسر | <u>break</u> | broke | broken |
| 35 | يسرق | <u>steal</u> | stole | stolen |
| 36 | يقنع - يمزق | <u>tear</u> | tore | torn |
| 37 | يقسم - يحلف | <u>swear</u> | swore | sworn |
| 38 | يتحمل - يثمر يلد | <u>bear</u> | bore | born |
| 39 | يلبس - يرتدي | <u>wear</u> | wore | worn |
| 40 | ياكل | <u>eat</u> | ate | eaten |
| 41 | يهزم - يضرب | <u>beat</u> | beat | beaten |
| 42 | ياخذ | <u>take</u> | took | taken |
| 43 | يخطئ | <u>mistake</u> | mistook | mistaken |
| 44 | يهتز | <u>shake</u> | shook | shaken |
| 45 | يستيقظ | <u>wake</u> | woke | waken |
| 46 | يستيقظ | <u>awake</u> | awoke | awoken |
| 47 | يصنع | <u>make</u> | made | made |
| 61 | يجمد | <u>freeze</u> | froze | frozen |

| | | | | |
|----|------------------|-------------------|-----------|-----------|
| 18 | يلفخ - ينزف | <u>bleed</u> | bled | bled |
| 19 | يلقس - يتناسل | <u>breed</u> | bred | bred |
| 20 | يهجن | <u>crossbreed</u> | crossbred | crossbred |
| 21 | | <u>interbreed</u> | interbred | interbred |
| 22 | يعذي - يطعم | <u>feed</u> | fed | fed |
| 23 | | <u>breastfeed</u> | breastfed | breastfed |
| 24 | | <u>spoon-feed</u> | spoon-fed | spoon-fed |
| 25 | ينطلق بسرعة | <u>speed</u> | sped | sped |
| 48 | يكتب | <u>write</u> | wrote | written |
| 49 | يعض | <u>bite</u> | bit | bitten |
| 50 | يخفي - يختبئ | <u>hide</u> | hid | hidden |
| 51 | يركب - يمتطي | <u>ride</u> | rode | ridden |
| 52 | يرتفع يصعد | <u>rise</u> | rose | risen |
| 53 | يرتفع يظهر | <u>arise</u> | arose | arisen |
| 54 | يقود | <u>drive</u> | drove | driven |
| 55 | يعطي | <u>give</u> | gave | given |
| 56 | يسامح | <u>forgive</u> | forgave | forgiven |
| 57 | ياتي | <u>come</u> | came | come |
| 58 | يصبح | <u>become</u> | became | become |
| 59 | يذهب | <u>go</u> | went | gone |
| 60 | يفعل - يعمل | <u>do</u> | did | done |
| 93 | يعرف | <u>know</u> | knew | known |
| 94 | ينمو - يربي | <u>grow</u> | grew | grown |
| 95 | يرمي | <u>throw</u> | threw | thrown |
| 96 | يعصف - | <u>blow</u> | blew | blown |
| 97 | يطير | <u>fly</u> | flew | flown |
| 98 | يسحب | <u>draw</u> | drew | drawn |
| 99 | ينسحب (سحب نقود) | <u>withdraw</u> | withdrew | withdrawn |

| | | | | |
|----|--------------------|--------|---------|---------|
| 62 | يختار | choose | chose | chosen |
| 63 | يفقد - يضيع | lose | lost | lost |
| 64 | يغادر - يترك | leave | left | left |
| 65 | يرسل | send | sent | sent |
| 66 | يقضي - ينفق | spend | spent | spent |
| 67 | يعير - يقرض | lend | lent | lent |
| 68 | | rent | rent | rent |
| 69 | ينثني - ينثني | bend | bent | bent |
| 70 | يبني | build | built | built |
| 71 | يقول | say | said | said |
| 72 | يكسب - يدفع | pay | paid | paid |
| 73 | يرسم - يرتب | lay | laid | laid |
| 74 | يتهجى | spell | spelt | spelt |
| 75 | يشم | smell | smelt | smelt |
| 76 | يمسك - يحمل | hold | held | held |
| 77 | يقود - يؤدي إلى | lead | led | led |
| 78 | يشترى | buy | bought | bought |
| 79 | يفكر - يعتقد | think | thought | thought |
| 80 | يجلب - يحضر | bring | brought | brought |
| 81 | يحارب - يقاتل | fight | fought | fought |
| 82 | يلتمس - يسعى | seek | sought | sought |
| 83 | يدرس | teach | taught | taught |
| 84 | يمسك | catch | caught | caught |

| | | | | |
|----|----------------|-------|-------|-------|
| 85 | يسبح | swim | swam | swum |
| 86 | يجلس | sit | sat | sat |
| 87 | يحفر | dig | dug | dug |
| 88 | يفوز | win | won | won |
| 89 | يبدأ | begin | began | begun |
| 90 | يبصق | spit | spat | spat |
| 91 | ينسج | spin | spun | spun |
| 92 | يغرز - يطعن | stick | stuck | stuck |

| | | | | |
|-----|--------------------|---------------------|------------|-----------------------|
| 100 | يقف | stand | stood | stood |
| 101 | يلهم | understand | understood | understood |
| 102 | يبيع | sell | sold | sold |
| 103 | يخبر - | tell | told | told |
| 104 | ينال - يحصل على | get | got | got |
| 105 | يستيقظ | get up | got up | got up |
| 106 | ينسى | forget | forgot | forgot - forgotten |
| 107 | يكون | am/ is | was | been |
| 108 | | are | were | been |
| 109 | يمتلك | has/ have | had | had |
| 110 | يشاء - يريد | will | would | |
| 111 | يستطيع | can | could | |
| 112 | | shall | should | |
| 113 | | has to / have to | had to | |
| 114 | | must | had to | |
| 115 | يعرض | show | showed | showed shown |
| 116 | يقابل | meet | met | met |
| 117 | يسقط | fall | fell | fallen |
| 118 | يشعل | light | lit | lit |
| 119 | يُغلق | hang | hung | hung |
| 120 | ينسج | weave | wove | woven |
| 121 | تشرق | shine | shone | shone |
| 122 | يكذب | lie | lay | lain |
| 123 | يرى | see | saw | seen |
| 124 | يجري | run | ran | run |

The Tenses الأزمنة

The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

The usage : الاستخدام

| No. | We use this tense نستخدم هذا الزمن | Examples أمثلة |
|-----|---|--|
| 1 | when we want to talk about daily habits or usual activities . عندما نريد أن نتكلم عن عادات يومية أو أنشطة معتادة . | 1/ I get up at six o'clock every morning. . 2/ I play football twice a week..الاسبوع 3/ I take a shower daily. 4/ He drinks tea at breakfast. 5/ Aisha uses what's up every night. |
| 2 | when we want to talk about permanent situations (for repeated or regular actions in the present time period) عندما نريد أن نتكلم عن حالات دائمة (أحداث متكررة أو منتظمة في الفترة الزمنية الحالية) . | 1/ I live in Sana'a . . 2/ Ali works in a hospital. على يعمل في مستشفى . |
| 3 | when we want to talk about facts or general truths . عندما نريد أن نتكلم عن حقائق علمية أو حقائق عامة . (أي معلومات ثابتة لا اختلاف عليها) | 1/ The Moon goes around the Earth. . 2/ Water freezes at zero degrees Celsius . 3/ The Sun rises in the east..الشرق |
| 4 | For things that are always true. للأشياء التي تكون دائماً صحيحة . | 1/ The baby always cries.. 2/ We wear heavy clothes in winter. . 3/ It rains a lot in summer.. |
| 5 | to write headlines even when talking about the future or the past . لكتابة عناوين (الأخبار) حتى عندما نتحدث عن خبر في . المستقبل أو الماضي . (راجع عناوين الأخبار في الوحدة ٢) | 1/ Boxer Weds Sweetheart ملاك يتزوج حبيبته (محبوبته) لا تكتب نقطة (.) في نهاية الخبر (الجملة) |
| 6 | when we want to talk about timetables. عندما نريد أن نتكلم حول جداول المواعيد مثل (جدول الحصص ، مواعيد الطيران ، مواعيد البرامج ، إلخ) | 1/ The English lesson starts at 8:45 . درس الإنجليزي يبدأ في الساعة 8:45 . |

The keywords : الكلمات الدالة على الزمن:

- 1/ always دائماً 2/ usually عادة 3/ sometimes أحياناً 4/ often غالباً
5/ never أبداً 6/ daily / weekly / monthly / yearly سنوياً / شهرياً / أسبوعياً / يومياً
7/ every كل (every day / every week / every month / every year)
8/ Once. مرة / twice.... ثلاث مرات / three times...
9/ rarely = seldom نادراً 10/ generally عموماً

ملاحظة : ١ / تأتي الكلمات التي باللون الأحمر بعد الفاعل مباشرة ، بينما تأتي الكلمات التي باللون الأزرق في نهاية الجملة ، وكلمة sometimes من الممكن أن تأتي في الوضعين
٢ / إذا أتت إحدى الكلمات الدالة التالية في الجملة (rarely / seldom / never) فإن الجملة تعتبر منفية .
٣ / كلمة (always) في النفي تتحول إلى (never)

Q : How to make (form) a positive sentence in the present simple tense?

كيف يمكننا تشكيل جملة مثبتة في زمن المضارع البسيط؟

مفعول به أو تكلمة Object or Complete.... + فعل في التصريف الأول V1 + الفاعل Subject

| | القاعدة الأولى : Rule 1 | أمثلة : Examples |
|--------------------------|---|---|
| | إذا كان الفاعل ← (I / you / we / they / اسم جمع) | |
| 1 Affirmative الإثبات | S + فعل في المصدر (V1 (inf.) + فاعل S إذا كان الفاعل جمع أو أحد الضمائر (I / you / we / they) فإننا لا نضيف للفعل أي شيء بل نضعه في التصريف الأول (مصدر مجرد من أي إضافة) | 1/ They watch T.V every night. هم يشاهدون التلفاز كل ليلة . 2/ We go to school every day. نحن نذهب إلى المدرسة كل يوم. |
| 2/ Negative النفي | S + فاعل S + (don't) + V1 (inf.) + نستخدم (don't) بعد الفاعل و من ثم نضع الفعل في المصدر كما هو في الجملة المثبتة | 1/ They don't watch T.V every night. هم لا يشاهدون التلفاز كل ليلة . 2/ We don't go to school every day. |

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| 3/ Yes / No Question | Do + S الفاعل + inf. المصدر ...? نستخدم (Do) بداية السؤال بمعنى (هل) و من ثم الفاعل ثم نضع الفعل في المصدر و يجب أن تبدأ الإجابة بـ Yes أو No | 1/ Do they watch T.V every night? -Yes, they do. / No, they don't. 2/ Do you go to school every day? |
| 4/ (WH) Question | WH + (do) + S الفاعل + inf. المصدر ... ? نستخدم (Do) بعد كلمات الاستفهام التي تبدأ بحرفي (Wh) | 1/ What do they do every night? 2/ When do you go to school? |
| القاعدة الثانية : Rule 2 إذا كان الفاعل ← (اسم مفرد (he / she / it /) | | أمثلة : Examples : |
| 1 Affirmative الاثبات | S + V1 (Inf.) المصدر + فعل في المصدر + (s / es / ies) + 1/ نضيف للفعل es إذا انتهى الفعل بأحد الحروف السبعة التالية (o - s - ss - ch - sh - x - z) 2/ بينما نضيف للفعل حرف s إذا لم ينتهي بأحد الحروف السبعة 3/ أما إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف y فإنا نرى الحرف الذي قبله فإذا كان ساكناً فإنا نغير حرف y إلى i و نضيف es ، بينما إذا كان الحرف الذي قبل y متحركاً فإنا لا نغير حرف y بل نضيف له حرف s فقط | 1/ He always watches this channel. 2/ Ali often fixes his car. 3/ Hana`a cooks the lunch every day. 4/ The boy always drinks a lot of milk. 5/ The cat eats meat daily. 6/ He always plays football. 7/ She usually studies English. |
| 2/ Negative النفي | S + (doesn't) + V1 (inf.) + نستخدم (doesn't) بعد الفاعل و من ثم نضع الفعل في المصدر (أي أننا سنحذف حرف s و es و ies) * إذا أتت إحدى الكلمات الدالة التالية في الجملة (rarely / seldom / never) فإن الجملة تعتبر منفية . * كلمة (always) في النفي تتحول إلى never | 1/ He never watches this channel. 3/ Hana`a doesn't cook the lunch every day. 5/ The cat doesn't eat meat daily. 6/ He never plays football. |
| 3/ Yes / No Question | Does + S الفاعل + inf. المصدر ...? نستخدم (Does) بداية السؤال بمعنى (هل) و من ثم الفاعل ثم نضع الفعل في المصدر (بدون أي إضافات) و يجب أن تبدأ الإجابة بـ Yes أو No (Yes, S فاعل does.) (No, S فاعل doesn't.) | 1/ Does he watch this channel? Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't. 2/ Does Hana'a cook the lunch every day? 3/ Does she help her mother? |
| 4/ (WH) Question | WH + (does) + S الفاعل + inf. المصدر ... ? نستخدم (does) بعد كلمات الاستفهام التي تبدأ بحرفي (Wh) | 1/ What does he watch every night? 2/ Who cooks the lunch every day? 3/ When does Ali get up? |

| | | |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| شرط عدم وجود فعل رئيسي في الجملة | القاعدة الثالثة : Rule 3 مع أفعال With verb to be (am / is / are) | أمثلة : Examples : |
| 1 Affirmative الاثبات | S + be (am / is / are) + اسم + adj. صفة + adverb (ظرف) I → am (he / she / it / اسم مفرد) → is (you / they / we / اسم جمع) → are | 1/ I am Ali .. أنا علي .. 2/ I am happy .. أنا سعيد .. 3/ I am here .. أنا هنا .. 4/ He is a teacher .. هو مدرس .. 5/ We are at home .. نحن في البيت .. 6/ The students are in the class . |
| 2/ Negative النفي | S + be (am / is / are) + not + اسم + adj. صفة + adverb (ظرف) | 1/ I am not Ali .. أنا لست علي .. 4/ He is not a teacher . 5/ We are not at home . |
| 3/ Yes / No Question | Be (Am / Is / Are) + S اسم الفاعل + noun + adj. صفة + adverb (ظرف) ? بحيث سيكون معنى (Am / Is / Are) هل و يجب أن تبدأ الإجابة بـ Yes أو No | 1/ Am I Ali ? هل أنا علي ؟ Yes, you are . / No, you aren't . 2/ Is he a teacher ? هل هو مدرس ؟ Yes, he is . / No, he isn't . 3/ Are we at home ? هل نحن في البيت ؟ |
| 4/ (WH) Question | WH + (am / is / are) + S الفاعل +? | 1/ Who are you ? من أنت ؟ 2/ How is he ? كيف حاله ؟ 3/ Where are the students ? أين الطلاب ؟ |

Q : Choose the best alternatives : : اختار أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | |
|----|--|-----------|-----------|--------------|--------------|
| 1 | The Moonaround the Earth . | a go | b goes | c went | d going |
| 2 | A cowus milk . | a give | b gives | c gaves | d given |
| 3 | Here we | a go | b going | c goes | d gone |
| 4 | Whereyour friend live ? | a is | b do | c has | d does |
| 5 | Hesmokes. | a doesn't | b isn't | c never | d didn't |
| 6 | Hesmoke. | a doesn't | b isn't | c never | d don't |
| 7 | A farmer oftena plough to break up the soil. | a use | b uses | c using | d usage |
| 8 | A cow's mouth nevermoving. | a stops | b stop | c stopping | d stopped |
| 9 | Hehere once a week. | a come | b came | c comes | d coming |
| 10 | She T.V daily. | a watch | b watched | c watches | d watching |
| 11 | Here I | a go | b went | c gone | d going |
| 12 | Mohammed in Sana'a. | a live | b lives | c living | d is living |
| 13 | Wafa'aat the airport. | a works | b work | c is working | d working |
| 14 | The managerthe news at night. | a watches | b watch | c watched | d watching |
| 15 | Rainy weathercrops or plants to grow. | a help | b helps | c is helping | d helped |
| 16 | We usuallyon foot. | a come | b comes | c came | d coming |
| 17 | Does hemoney? | a has | b have | c had | d having |
| 18 | Do youvolleyball every day? | a play | b plays | c played | d playing |
| 19 | Boxer Sweetheart | a Wed | b Weds | c Wedding | d Wedded |
| 20 | HurricaneCentral America | a Hit | b Hits | c Hitting | d Is Hitting |
| 21 | Wind TurbinesCheap Electricity | a Means | b Mean | c Meaning | d No answer |
| 22 | Victim of Road Accident | a dies | b die | c dead | d death |

The future simple tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

The usage: الاستخدام

We use this tense to talk about something or anything that will happen in the future.

نستخدم هذا الزمن لكي نتحدث عن أي شيء سيحدث في المستقبل.

The keywords : الكلمات الدالة على الزمن :

| | | | |
|--------------------|--|------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1/ tomorrow غداً | 2/ In the future في المستقبل | 3/ tonight الليلة | 3/ later فيما بعد |
| 4/ soon قريباً | 5/ next القادم (next day اليوم القادم | - next week - الأسبوع القادم | () |
| 6/ later on لاحقاً | 7/ in an hour | 8/ probably من المحتمل | 9/ After بعد ذلك |

| | القاعدة الأولى : Rule 1 | أمثلة Examples |
|---------------------------------|---|--|
| 1 Affirmative الإثبات | S + will + V (Inf.) + ... الفعل في المصدر + will + الفاعل S *تختصر كلمة will إلى ('ll) مع الضمائر في الكتابة و الكلام | 1/ I will go tomorrow . أنا سوف أذهب غداً 2/ We'll help him next week . 3/ The long period of hot weather will end tomorrow. |
| 2/Negative النفي : | S + will + not + V (Inf.) + ... الفعل في المصدر + will + not + الفاعل S *تختصر كلمة will not إلى (won't) | 1/ I will not go tomorrow . أنا لن أذهب غداً 2/ We won't see it next month |
| 3/ Yes / No Question | Will + S + V (Inf.) + ... ? الفعل في المصدر + الفاعل S + Will بحيث سيكون معنى (Will) هل و يجب أن تبدأ الإجابة بـ Yes أو No | 1/ Will you come tomorrow ? Yes, I will . / No, I will not . 2/ Will he visit us ? Yes, he will . / No, he won't . |
| 4/ (WH) Question | WH + will + S + V (Inf.) + ... ? الفعل في المصدر + الفاعل S + will + WH | 1/ When will you go to Sana'a ? 2/ What will she do tomorrow ? |

ملاحظات هامة :

1/ نستخدم will و التي معناها (سوف أو سـ) عندما يكون الحدث متوقع (غير أكيد) و كذلك للتنبؤ بأحوال الطقس، و يأتي بعدها الفعل في التصريف الأول

2/ نستخدم will مع كل الضمائر (He / She / It / I / You / We / They) و مع كل الاسماء سواء مفردة أو جمع

3/ عندما نبدأ السؤال بـ (will) فإن معناها (هل) و بالتالي يجب أن تبدأ الإجابات بـ (yes) أو (No)

4/ بالنسبة للكلمتين الداليتين (soon / probably) شرط أن تأتي بعد كلمة (will) مباشرة لتكون الجملة في زمن المستقبل .

1/ We'll soon find your bag . 2/ He will probably attend the class tomorrow .

5/ كلمة (after) تدل على زمن المستقبل و لكن بشرط أن يأتي بعدها وقت (زمن محدد) .

1/ I will meet you after two hours . أنا سأقابلك بعد ساعتين .

| | القاعدة الثانية : Rule 2 | أمثلة Examples |
|-----------------------------------|--|---|
| 1 / Affirmative الإثبات | S + be (am / is / are) + going to + V (Inf.) + ... I → am (he / she / it / اسم مفرد) → is (you / they / we / اسم جمع) → are | 1/ I am going to meet you after three hours. أنا سوف أقابلك بعد 3 ساعات. 2/ We are going to travel tomorrow. نحن سنسافر غداً. |
| 2/ Negative النفي | S + be (am / is / are) + not + going to + V (Inf.) + ... | 1/ I am not going to play football tomorrow. أنا سوف لن أعب كرة القدم غداً . 2/ He is not going to come. |
| 3/ Yes / No Question | (Am / Is / Are) + S + going to + V (Inf.) + ? بحيث سيكون معنى (Am / Is / Are) هل و يجب أن تبدأ الإجابة بـ Yes أو No | 1/ Am I going to meet him? 2/ Is he going to come tomorrow? Yes, he is. / No, he is not. 3/ Are you going to meet him? |
| 4/ (WH) Question | WH + (am / is / are) + S + going to + V (Inf.) + ... ? | 1/ Who is going to come with me? 2/ What are you going to do? 3/ Where are they going to live? 4/ How are you going to travel? |

ملاحظات هامة :

١/ نستخدم (going to) و التي معناها (سوف) عندما تكون متأكدين من وقوع الحدث (يوجد تخطيط أو ترتيب فعلي للحدث كان تكون قد حجزت تذكرة سفر مثلاً) ، و يأتي بعدها الفعل في التصريف الأول .
٢/ تختصر (going to) إلى (gonna) في الكلام فقط ، بينما تبقى كما هي في الكتابة (going to)

| القاعدة الثالثة : Rule 3 | | أمثلة Examples |
|---------------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1 Affirmative الإثبات | S + shall + V (Inf.) مصدر + ... تستخدم (shall) مع الضميرين (I / We) فقط و تستخدم غالباً في الأسئلة | 1/ I shall go. 2/ We shall go. |
| 2/ Yes / No Question | Shall + S فاعل + V1 (inf.) مصدر +? | 1/ Shall I go? 2/ Shall we go? |

| القاعدة الرابعة : Rule 4 | | أمثلة Examples |
|------------------------------------|--|--|
| S + (has / have) + noun اسم | | 1/ I have work tomorrow . أنا عندي عمل غدا . 2/ He has an interview next week. أنا لدي مقابلة الاسبوع القادم. |

| القاعدة الخامسة : Rule 5 | | أمثلة Examples |
|--|--|--|
| S + V1 (s / es) + نستطيع أن نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل عندما يكون معنا جداول مواعيد زمنية و بالتحديد مع هذه الأفعال open / close / start / being / finish / arrive / leave) | | 1/ The plane arrives at 7 o'clock tomorrow . الطائرة ستصل في الساعة ٧ غداً . 2/ The meeting starts at nine o'clock tomorrow . المقابلة ستبدأ في الساعة ٩ غداً |

| القاعدة السادسة : Rule 6 | | أمثلة Examples |
|---|--|-----------------------|
| S + V1 (s / es) + كما نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل عند كتابة عناوين الأخبار | | Boxer Weds Sweetheart |

| القاعدة السابعة : Rule 7 | | أمثلة Examples |
|---|--|--|
| S + be (am / is / are) + to + V1 (inf.) مصدر + ١/ تستخدم هذه القاعدة للتعبير عن أحداث مستقبلية تم الترتيب الفعلي لها . ٢/ و كذلك لتنبؤات الطقس في المستقبل. | | 1/ The president is to meet the ambassador tomorrow . الرئيس سيقابل السفير غداً . 2/ It is to rain tomorrow . إنها ستمطر غداً . |

| القاعدة الثامنة : Rule 8 | | أمثلة Examples |
|--|--|--|
| S + be (am / is / are) + V1 + ing + نستطيع أن نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن ترتيبات في المستقبل | | 1/ I am leaving Sana'a tomorrow . 2/ He is travelling after tomorrow . 3/ We are playing tennis tomorrow evening . |

اختار أفضل الخيارات : : Choose the best alternatives : Q

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---------------|---|----------------|---|---------------|---|----------|
| 1 | The press conferenceat 9 o'clock tomorrow . | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | will starting | 2 | going to start | 3 | starts | 4 | starting |
| 2 | Wecome tomorrow . | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | don't | 2 | won't | 3 | couldn't | 4 | aren't |
| 3 | Isoon find it . | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | am | 2 | have | 3 | going to | 4 | will |
| 4 | The ministerto meet the governor tomorrow . | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | will | 2 | going | 3 | is | 4 | shall |
| 5 | He isCairo next week . | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | leaving | 2 | leave | 3 | to leaving | 4 | Left |
| 6 | The weather.....next week. | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | will rain | 2 | is to rain | 3 | going to rain | 4 | 1 and 2 |
| 7 | We are.....travel tonight. | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | going to | 2 | will to | 3 | will | 4 | won't |

زمن المضارع المستمر The present continuous tense

The usage: الاستخدام

We use this tense to talk about something that is happening at the time of speaking now.

نستخدم هذا الزمن للتعبير عن أي شيء يحدث وقت الكلام (الآن)

The keywords : الكلمات الدالة على الزمن :

| | | | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------|---|------------------------|------------------|
| 1.Now الآن | 2.Look انظر | 3. be careful | 4.Listen استمع | 5. be quite اهدأ |
| 6.hurry / hurry up استعجل | 7.Right now حالاً | 8.At this moment في هذه اللحظة | 11-Nowadays هذه الأيام | |
| 9.At the present في الوقت الحاضر | 10-These days هذه الأيام | 14.look out! انتبه / احترس | 15. Ashhh / hush اصمت | |
| 12.today اليوم | 13. wait انتظر | *تأتي الكلمات التي باللون الأزرق في بداية الجملة بينما تأتي بقية الكلمات التي باللون الأحمر في نهاية الجملة | | |

| | <u>Rule: القاعدة</u> | أمثلة Examples |
|-----------------------------------|---|---|
| 1 / Affirmative الإثبات | <p>S + (am / is / are) + VI (inf.) + ing + ...</p> <p>I → am (he / she / it / اسم مفرد) → is (you / they / we / اسم جمع) → are</p> | <p>1/ I am going to school now.</p> <p>2/ Look! Ali is running.</p> <p>3/ He is fixing his car.</p> <p>4/ She is helping her mother.</p> <p>5/ The boy is playing now.</p> <p>6/ They are swimming now.</p> <p>7/ The students are writing the lesson at this moment.</p> <p>8/ The teachers are teaching their students at the moment.</p> <p>9/ You are cooking the lunch.</p> <p>10 / We are studying English nowadays.</p> <p>11/ Look out! a car is coming .</p> |
| 2/ Negative النفي | <p>S + (am / is / are) + not + VI (inf.) + ing + ...</p> | <p>1/ I am not going to school now.</p> <p>2/ Look! Ali is not running.</p> <p>3/ He is not fixing his car.</p> <p>4/ She is not helping her mother.</p> <p>5/ The boy is not playing now.</p> <p>6/ They are not swimming now.</p> <p>7/ We are not studying English nowadays.</p> |
| 3/ Yes / No Question | <p>(Am / Is / Are) + S + VI (inf.) + ing + ?</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><u>بحيث سيكون معني (Am / Is / Are) هل</u> و يجب أن تبدأ الإجابة بـ Yes أو No</p> | <p>1/ Are you playing football now? Yes, I am . / No, I am not .</p> <p>2/ Is he playing football at this moment?</p> <p>3/ Is she helping her mother?</p> <p>4/ Are they praying now?</p> |
| 4/ (WH) Question | <p>WH + (am / is / are) + S + VI (inf.) + ing + ?</p> | <p>1/ Where are you going? ؟ أين أنت ذاهب ؟</p> <p>2/ Where is he studying? ؟ أين يدرس ؟</p> <p>3/ What are they doing? ؟ ماذا يفعلون ؟</p> <p>4/ What is Ali doing now?</p> |

ملحوظة مهمة جداً:

have = own (يمتلك) - like - love - know - hate - prefer - believe - need - seem - want.

الأفعال السابقة لا يصح أن نضيف لها ing حتى وإن أنت إحدى الكلمات الدالة على الزمن بل تعامل مثل الأفعال في زمن المضارع البسيط أي أننا سنضيف إليها حرف s إذا كان الفاعل اسم مفرد أو (He / She / It) ، بينما سنتركها كما هي (في المصدر) إذا كان الفاعل اسم جمع أو (I / We / They / You) . كما في الأمثلة التالية :

1-I have a car now. أنا امتلك سيارة الآن

2- He needs you now .

ما عدا الفعل **have** فمن الممكن أن نضيف إليه **ing** في حالة أن يكون معناه (يتناول) أي أن يأتي بعده اسم شيء يؤكل أو اسم وجبة ، وكذلك يمكن أن نضيف إليه **ing** في حالة أخرى وهي أن يأتي بعده كلمة وقت . كما في المثالين التاليين :

1/ I am having my lunch now . أنا أتناول غدائي الآن . 2/ I am having good time now .

الجدول التالي يوضح كيفية إضافة **ing** إلى الأفعال بشكل صحيح :

| الرقم No. | Verb | إضافة ing Add ing | ملاحظات notes |
|----------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------|--|
| 1- 2- | write take | writing taking | إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) ونريد إضافة ing للفعل فعلينا أن نحذف حرف (e) ثم نضيف للفعل ing |
| 1- 2- | run swim | running swimming | إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن واتي قبله حرف متحرك (a - e - o - u) فعلينا أن نضيف (نكرر) الحرف الأخير ثم نضيف للفعل ing |
| 1- 2- | read cook | reading cooking | إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن واتي قبله حرفين متحركين فنضيف للفعل ing بدون أي تغيير في الفعل |
| 1- 2- | visit open | visiting opening | إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن واتي قبله حرف متحرك واحد ووجد في الفعل نفسه حرف متحرك آخر فلا نغير في الفعل أي شيء بل نضيف له ing فقط |
| 1- 2- 3- | walk talk watch | walking talking watching | إذا انتهى الفعل بحرفين ساكنين أو أكثر فلا نقوم بأي تعديل على الفعل بل نضيف للفعل ing فقط |
| 1- 2- 3- | Play fix snow | playing fixing snowing | إذا انتهى الفعل بإحدى هذه الحروف الثلاثة (y- x-w) واتي قبلها حرف متحرك فلا نقوم بأي تعديل على الفعل بل نضيف للفعل ing فقط ، والسبب في ذلك لصعوبة النطق. |
| 1- 2- | lie die | lying dying | إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرفين ie فإننا نستبدلها بالحرف y ثم نضيف ing |

Q : Choose the best alternatives : : اختار أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|----------------------------------|---|-----------|---|----------|---|------------|---|--------------|
| 1 | Look out ! A car | a | come | b | coming | c | is coming | d | comes |
| 2 | The manageryou now . | a | need | b | needs | c | is needing | d | needing |
| 3 | Look , they | a | swim | b | swimming | c | swam | d | are swimming |
| 4 | Hehis lunch at the moment. | a | is having | b | having | c | is hasing | d | have |
| 5 | What are you? | a | do | b | did | c | doing | d | does |
| 6 | Shesleeping now. | a | isn't | b | doesn't | c | didn't | d | can't |

زمن الماضي التام البسيط The past perfect simple tense

The usage: الاستخدام

We use this tense when we want to talk about two actions happened in the past , one preceded the other and the action which happened the first is the past perfect and the action which happened the second is the past simple tense .

نستخدم هذا الزمن عندما نريد أن نتكلم عن حدثين وقعا في الماضي واحد سبق الآخر، والذي يحدث أولاً يكون في زمن الماضي التام ، أما الحدث الذي يحدث في الأخير يكون في زمن الماضي البسيط.

The keywords : الكلمات الدالة على الزمن

و هذه الكلمات تستخدم للربط بين زمني الماضي التام و البسيط
(بحلول الوقت (by the time) (عندما (when) (بسبب (لأن) (because) (قبل (before) (بعد (After)

| القاعدة : <u>The Rule</u> | |
|------------------------------|--|
| 1 Affirmative الاثبات | التصريف الثالث للفعل (had + V (P.p.) + الفاعل S |
| 2/ Negative النفي | التصريف الثالث للفعل (had + not + V (P.p.) + الفاعل S |

١/ إذا استخدمت كلمة (after) أو كلمة (because) للربط بين الزمنين فيجب أن تكتب **بعدها** الجملة التي في زمن الماضي التام أولاً سواء أنت الكلمة في البداية أو في الوسط ، مع التركيز على وجود الفاصلة في حالة كتابتهما في البداية ، و ذلك كما في القواعد و الأمثلة التالية :

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| 1/ After 2/ Because | + Past perfect (ماضي تام) + , + Past simple (ماضي بسيط) تصريف ثاني V2 + فاعل S + had + P.p. + , + S |
| Examples أمثلة | 1/ After I had done my homework , I went to the park. بعد أن كتبت واجبي ، ذهبت إلى الحديقة . 2/ Because he had not studied well , he didn't pass the exam . بسبب أنه لم يدرس جيداً ، هو لم ينجح في الامتحان . |

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| Past simple (ماضي بسيط) + S + V2 + فاعل | 1/ after 2/ because | + Past perfect (ماضي تام) S + had + P.p. |
| Examples أمثلة | 2- I went to bed after I had watched T.V. . أنا ذهبت إلى السرير بعد أن شاهدت التلفاز . 2/ He didn't pass the exam because he had not studied well . هو لم ينجح في الامتحان لأنه لم يدرس جيداً . | |

٢/ أما إذا استخدمت كلمة (before) أو كلمة (when) أو كلمة (by the time) للربط بين الزمنين فيجب أن تكتب **بعدها** الجملة التي في زمن الماضي البسيط أولاً كما في الجدول التالي :

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| 1/ Before 2/ When 3/ By the time | + Past simple (ماضي بسيط) + S + V2 + فاعل | + , + Past perfect (ماضي تام) S + had + P.p. |
| Examples أمثلة | 1/ Before he went home , he had seen me. . قبل أن يذهب إلى البيت ، هو كان قد رأي . 2/ When I arrived at home , they had gone . عندما وصلت البيت ، هم كانوا قد غادروا . 3/ By the time he arrived , we had already left. نحن كنا بالفعل قد غادرننا . | |

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| Past perfect (ماضي تام) + S + had + P.p. | 1/ before 2/ when | + Past simple (ماضي بسيط) S + V2 + فاعل |
| Examples أمثلة | 1/ I had watched TV before I went to bed . . أنا شاهدت التلفاز قبل أن أذهب إلى السرير . 2/ I had seen Ali when I went to my house . . أنا رأيت علي عندما ذهبت إلى بيتي . | |

| القاعدة : <u>The Rule</u> | | أمثلة Examples |
|----------------------------|---|--|
| 3/ Yes / No Question | Had + S + P.p + فعل تصريف ثالث ؟ بحيث سيكون معنى (had) هنا (هل) ، و بالتالي يجب أن تبدأ الإجابة بـ (Yes) أو (No) | 1/ Had you watched T.V before you went to bed ? هل شاهدت التلفاز قبل أن تذهب إلى السرير ؟ *Yes , I had . * No , I hadn't |
| 4/(WH) Question | WH + had+ S + P.p + فعل تصريف ثالث ؟ | 1/ What you had done before you went to bed? 2/ When had you seen Ali ? متى كنت قد رأيت علي ؟ |

اختار أفضل الخيارات : : Choose the best alternatives : Q

| | | | | |
|---|---|---------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| 1 | After hehis homework , hethe film . | | | |
| | a had written / watched | b had writed/ watch | c written / watch | d |
| 2 | Hehis homework before hethe film . | | | |
| | a had written / watches | b write / watch | c writed / watched | d had written/ watched |

الجمل الشرطية Conditional Sentences

Conditional Sentences are statements discussing known factors or hypothetical situations and their consequences. الجمل الشرطية هي عبارات تناقش العوامل المعروفة أو المواقف الافتراضية و عواقبها.

Complete conditional sentences contain a conditional clause and the consequence.

تحتوي الجمل الشرطية الكاملة على جملة الشرط (التي تحتوي على (If) و جملة النتيجة .

There are four different types of conditional sentences in English. يوجد 4 أنواع مختلفة من الجمل الشرطية :

النوع الأول (Zero Conditional Sentences) الجمل الشرطية الصفرية

| | | |
|---|-------------------|---|
| 1 | Structure التركيب | 1/ If + present simple tense مضارع بسيط + , + present simple tense مضارع بسيط 2/ present simple tense مضارع بسيط + if + present simple tense مضارع بسيط |
| 2 | Usage الاستخدام | In true conditional sentences that express a habitual activity or general truth, (If) is very close in meaning to (when). في جمل شرطية صحيحة التي تشرح نشاط معتاد أو حقيقة عامة، (أي أن النتيجة ستكون مضمونة إذا تحقق الشرط) سيكون معنى (If) محصور جداً بمعنى (عندما) . |
| 3 | Examples أمثلة | 1/ If it rains, the streets get wet. / لو أنها تمطر ، الشوارع تصبح مبللة . When it rains, the streets get wet. 2/ When water reaches 100 degrees , it boils. / عندما يصل الماء إلى 100 درجة ، فإنه يغلي . 3/ If you don't brush your teeth, you get cavities. / إذا لم تنظف أسناتك بالفرشاة ، ستصاب بالتسوس . 4/ Water freezes if the temperature reaches 32° F / 0° C. |

النوع الثاني (First Conditional Sentences) الجمل الشرطية الأولى

| | | |
|---|-------------------|--|
| 1 | Structure التركيب | If + present simple tense مضارع بسيط + , + S + will / can / shall / may + infinitive مصدر + C. <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black; padding: 0 5px;"> <p>S + فعل (V1 / (V1 + s, es, ies)) S + فعل + (have / has / am / is / are) S + فعل + (don't / doesn't + V1)</p> </div> </div> |
| 2 | Usage الاستخدام | are used to express situations in which the outcome is likely to happen in the future. تستخدم للتعبير عن المواقف التي يحتمل أن تحدث فيها النتيجة في المستقبل (أي أنه ليس مضموناً) . |
| 3 | Examples أمثلة | 1/ If you study hard, you will pass your exam. / إذا أنت تدرس بجد ، فسوف تجتاز امتحانك . 2/ If he studies hard, he will pass his exam. / لو أنه يدرس بجد ، سيجتاز امتحانه . 3/ If I finish my homework , I may go to the park. / إذا (لو) أنهى واجبي المنزلي ، فلربما أذهب إلى الحديقة . 4/ I will stay at home if it rains. / سأبقى في البيت إذا العطر بهطل . |

النوع الثالث (Second Conditional Sentences) الجمل الشرطية الثانية

| | | |
|---|-------------------|--|
| 1 | Structure التركيب | If + past simple tense ماضي بسيط + , + S + would / could / should / might + infinitive مصدر + C. <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black; padding: 0 5px;"> <p>S + فعل (V2 / ..ed) + ... S + فعل + (had / was / were) + ... S + فعل + (didn't + V1) + ...</p> </div> </div> |
| 2 | Usage الاستخدام | are useful for expressing outcomes that are completely unrealistic or will not likely happen in the future. مفيدة للتعبير عن نتائج غير واقعية تماماً (أو لن تحدث في المستقبل) على الأرجح . |
| 3 | Examples أمثلة | 1/ If you studied hard, you would pass your exam. / لو درست بجد ، لاجتزت (لنجحت) امتحانك . 2/ If I were you, I would study Medicine. / إذا (لو) أنني كنت في مكانك ، لدرست طب . 3/ If I had enough money , I could buy a car. / لو كان عندي مال كافي ، لاستطعت أن أشتري سيارة . 4/ She would answer the phone if she were in her office right now. هي كانت ستجيب على الهاتف لو أنها كانت في مكتبها حقاً . |

النوع الرابع: Type 4 (Third Conditional Sentences) (الجمل الشرطية الثالثة)

| | | | | |
|---|-----------------------------|---|---|---------------------------|
| 1 | Structure التركيب | If + past perfect tense تام ماضي + , + S + (تصريف ثالث S + had + P.p) | would could should might | + have + P.p. + C. |
| 2 | Usage الاستخدام | are used to explain that present circumstances would be different if something different had happened in the past. . تستخدم لتوضيح أن الظروف الحالية ستكون مختلفة إذا حدث شيء مختلف في الماضي . | | |
| 3 | Examples أمثلة | 1/ If you had seen Ali , you would have told me. (لاخبرتني) . 2/ If he had studied hard , he would have passed the exam. (في الامتحان) . 3/ I could have gone to the movies if I had cleaned the house. | | |

Note : ملحوظة : (Unless / إذا لم = Ifnot)

(Unless) is used instead of (If ...not) in conditional sentences of all types.. في جميع أنواع الجمل الشرطية.

| With (if) | With (unless) |
|---|--|
| 1/ You will be sick if you don't stop eating. ستصبح مريض إذا لم تتوقف عن الأكل . | 1/ You will be sick unless you stop eating. ستصبح مريض ما لم تتوقف عن الأكل . |
| 2/ If you don't study hard, you will not pass the exam. | 2/ Unless you study hard, you will not pass the exam. |
| 3/ If he was not very ill , he would be at work. | 3/ Unless he was very ill , he would be at work. |

Q : Choose the best alternatives : : اختار أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | |
|----|---|--------------|--------------|-----------|--------------|
| 1 | If you were in my position, whatyou do ? | a will | b Shall | c would | d Can |
| 2 | If Iyou, I'd study English . | a are | b am | c was | d were |
| 3 | If your sister were here, shewhat to do . | a Knew | b would know | c knows | d will know |
| 4 | If Ia scholarship, I would study media abroad . | a got | b get | c gotten | d am getting |
| 5 | If we went by bus, Itbe cheaper . | a will | b can | c would | d may |
| 6 | If Iyou, I would buy a car . | a are | b were | c was | d have |
| 7 | If he studies hard , hethe exam . | a will pass | b would pass | c pass | d could pass |
| 8 | If he is a doctor , he willyou . | a treat | b treats | c treated | d treating |
| 9 | If she had money , shelend you . | a will | b can | c may | d would |
| 10 | If Imoney , I will buy this house . | a have | b has | c had | d be |
| 11 | If hehard , he would pass the exam . | a studies | b studied | c studyed | d study |
| 12 | Unless hehard , he would not pass the exam . | a studies | b studied | c studyed | d study |
| 13 | Unless hehard , he will not pass the exam . | a studies | b studied | c studyed | d study |
| 14 | Unless he hadhard , he would not have passed the exam . | a studies | b studied | c studyed | d study |
| 15 | If I had gotten enough money , I travelled abroad . | a would have | b would | c will | d can |

فيما يلي تمرين شامل على ما سبق من الأزمنة

Q : Choose the best alternatives : : اختار أفضل الخيارات :

| | | | | | | | | | |
|----|--|---|-------------|---|---------------|---|------------------|---|-------------|
| 1 | Mohammed alwayshis car . | a | fix | b | fixs | c | fixes | d | fixies |
| 2 | EverybodyEnglish . | a | like | b | likes | c | liking | d | likeing |
| 3 | Wethem yesterday . | a | find | b | finded | c | finds | d | found |
| 4 | Heborn in 2010 . | a | is | b | Be | c | was | d | been |
| 5 | No-one | a | smoke | b | smoking | c | is smokes | d | smokes |
| 6 | Khalidcards once a day . | a | play | b | played | c | plays | d | playes |
| 7 | Look out! A car | a | come | b | comes | c | came | d | is coming |
| 8 | Ali and Nashwannext Friday . | a | are coming | b | going to come | c | come | d | will coming |
| 9 | Theystudy tomorrow . | a | don't | b | didn't | c | want | d | won't |
| 10 | Be quiet they | a | studying | b | are studying | c | studied | d | study |
| 11 | Ihere since 1990 . I am still living here . | a | have lived | b | live | c | have been living | d | living |
| 12 | While the mixture , you fry the pieces of fish . | a | was boiling | b | boiling | c | is boiling | d | boils |
| 13 | What are you ? | a | do | b | did | c | doing | d | done |
| 14 |you attend the lecture tomorrow morning ? | a | Will | b | Are | c | Have | d | Do |
| 15 |you see Arwa last night ? | a | Do | b | Did | c | Have | d | Will |
| 16 | Hehave anything . | a | don't | b | doesn't | c | isn't | d | wasn't |
| 17 | Shesleeping now . | a | don't | b | doesn't | c | isn't | d | didn't |
| 18 | Have youthis book before ? | a | read | b | red | c | readed | d | reading |
| 19 | If he studies hard , hethe exam . | a | will pass | b | would pass | c | pass | d | could pass |
| 20 | If he is a doctor , he willyou . | a | treat | b | treats | c | treated | d | treating |
| 21 | If she had money , shelend you . | a | will | b | can | c | may | d | would |
| 22 | If Imoney , I will buy this house . | a | have | b | has | c | had | d | be |
| 23 | If hehard , he would pass the exam . | a | studies | b | studied | c | studyed | d | study |
| 24 | She canEnglish well . | a | speak | b | speaks | c | spoke | d | spoken |

| | | | | |
|----|---|-------------------|---|---------------|
| 25 | I amSana'a tomorrow . | | | |
| | a | going to leaving | b | leaving |
| | | | c | will |
| | | | d | |
| 26 | Did youyour homework last week ? | | | |
| | a | make | b | made |
| | | | c | do |
| | | | d | are |
| 27 | Hesmokes . | | | |
| | a | doesn't | b | never |
| | | | c | didn't |
| | | | d | has |
| 28 | I slept after Ithe homework . | | | |
| | a | wrote | b | have written |
| | | | c | had written |
| | | | d | has written |
| 29 | The doctor ordered himsmoking . | | | |
| | a | to stop | b | stop |
| | | | c | stopped |
| | | | d | stops |
| 30 | Weafter one hour . | | | |
| | a | come | b | will come |
| | | | c | going to come |
| | | | d | |
| 31 | I don't know what to do afterschool . | | | |
| | a | leave | b | leaving |
| | | | c | left |
| | | | d | leaving |
| 32 | My luggagearrived yet . | | | |
| | a | have | b | has |
| | | | c | hasn't |
| | | | d | haven't |
| 33 | Three hours of sleepenough . | | | |
| | a | isn't | b | aren't |
| | | | c | weren't |
| | | | d | Hasn't |
| 34 | Itbe a toothbrush uncertain . | | | |
| | a | must | b | has to |
| | | | c | might |
| | | | d | haven't |
| 35 | Ithis place before . | | | |
| | a | visit | b | will visit |
| | | | c | have visited |
| | | | d | visits |
| 36 | We have been living here2010 . | | | |
| | a | in | b | on |
| | | | c | since |
| | | | d | at |
| 37 | Why are you? | | | |
| | a | cry | b | cried |
| | | | c | crying |
| | | | d | cries |
| 38 |he a doctor ? | | | |
| | a | Is | b | Does |
| | | | c | Has |
| | | | d | Did |
| 39 |she speak English ? | | | |
| | a | Is | b | Does |
| | | | c | Has |
| | | | d | Had |
| 40 |you meet Nashwan last week ? | | | |
| | a | Are | b | Do |
| | | | c | Did |
| | | | d | Have |
| 41 | What are you ? | | | |
| | a | do | b | did |
| | | | c | done |
| | | | d | doing |
| 42 | When did youyesterday ? | | | |
| | a | sleep | b | slept |
| | | | c | sleeping |
| | | | d | sleeped |
| 43 | Where have you ? | | | |
| | a | be | b | been |
| | | | c | being |
| | | | d | nothing |
| 44 | My cousin ___ to be married next month. | | | |
| | a | is | b | will |
| | | | c | are |
| | | | d | am |
| 45 | You.....much better marks in the last two months. | | | |
| | a | have been getting | b | are getting |
| | | | c | get |
| | | | d | getting |

المبني للمجهول (The Passive)

You can use (passive) when you want to make the object is more important than a subject .
يمكنك أن تستخدم (المبني للمجهول) عندما تريد أن تجعل المفعول به أكثر أهمية من الفاعل .

في الجمل المبنية للمعلوم نبدأ بالفاعل ثم الفعل يليهما المفعول به ، بينما في الجمل المبنية للمجهول نبدأ بالمفعول به + الفعل المساعد المناسب + التصريف الثالث و من ثم نكتب الفاعل .

س - كيف أستطيع أن أحول الجملة من مبنية للمعلوم إلى مبنية للمجهول ؟

ج - لكي نحول الجملة من مبنية للمعلوم إلى مبنية للمجهول يجب أن نتبع الخطوات التالية :-

1/ نكتب المفعول به أولاً بحيث يكون الحرف الأول منه كبير .

2/ ننظر إلى الجملة الأصلية (أي جملة المبني للمعلوم) بحيث يجب علينا أن نحدد في أي زمن هي و على حسب الزمن نستخدم القاعدة المناسبة كما في الجداول التي بالأسفل .

3/ نكتب التصريف الثالث للفعل و من ثم نكتب by و بعدها نكتب الفاعل إذا كان ذو أهمية مثلاً إذا كان الفاعل اسم فيذكر بعد by أما إذا كان ضمير مثل (He / She / They /.....) فليس من الضروري كتابته ، و لا نذكر الفاعل إذا كان كلمة (nobody) أو (no one) بحيث أنه لا يصح أن نكتب by nobody ، و كذلك في الجمل الأمرية (التي تبدأ بفعل أمر) فلا يذكر الفاعل لأنه غير موجود .

كيفية استخراج (معرفة) المفعول به في الجملة المبنية للمعلوم :

1/ يأتي المفعول به عادة بعد الفعل ، و قد يأتي بعد المفعول به حرف جر و كلمات بعده ، و لكننا لا نكتب في بداية الجملة المبنية للمجهول إلا المفعول به فقط بينما حرف الجر و ما يليه من كلمات تعتبر تكملة للجملة نكتبها في نهاية الجملة المبنية للمجهول ، ما عدا حرف الجر of و ما بعده من كلمات يكتب في بداية الجملة بعد المفعول به (لأنه يعتبر تابع للمفعول به) . مع التركيز على الكلمات الدالة على الزمن فقد تأتي بعضها بعد الفعل مباشرة و بعضها في نهاية الجملة و البعض الآخر في بداية الجملة . أمثلة :

1/ Someone has closed the doors of the house . (The doors of the house) المفعول به هنا هو

2/ Tsunami killed 100.000 people in 2004 . (100.000 people) المفعول به هنا هو

3/ إذا كان المفعول به اسم فإنا نكتب نفس الاسم في بداية الجملة المبنية للمجهول ، بينما إذا كان المفعول به أحد ضمائر المفعول (me / us /

them / him / her) فإنا نحولها إلى ضمائر فاعل في بداية الجملة المبنية للمجهول ماعدا الضميرين It / you يبقيان كما هما كما يلي :

| | | | | | | | |
|--|----|----|------|-----|-----|----|-----|
| me / us / | me | us | them | him | Her | It | You |
| إذا كان المفعول به أحد ضمائر المفعول في الجملة المبنية للمعلوم | | | | | | | |
| تتحول إلى ضمائر فاعل نكتب في بداية الجملة المبنية للمجهول | I | We | They | He | She | It | You |

Example : مثال / We will see him tomorrow → He will be seen tomorrow by us .

3/ إذا كان الفاعل اسم فإنا نكتب نفس الاسم في نهاية الجملة المبنية للمجهول بعد by ، بينما إذا كان الفاعل أحد ضمائر الفاعل (I /

We / They / She / He) فإنا نحولها إلى ضمائر مفعول في نهاية الجملة المبنية للمجهول بعد by ، ماعدا الضميرين It / you يبقيان كما هما كما يلي :

| | | | | | | | |
|---|----|----|------|-----|-----|----|-----|
| I / you | I | We | They | He | She | It | You |
| إذا كان الفاعل أحد ضمائر الفاعل في بداية الجملة المبنية للمعلوم | | | | | | | |
| تتحول إلى ضمائر مفعول نكتب في نهاية الجملة المبنية للمجهول | me | us | them | him | Her | It | You |

Example : مثال / We will see him tomorrow → He will be seen tomorrow by us .

4/ قد يأتي مفعولين في نفس الجملة (في الجملة المبنية للمعلوم) و ذلك يكون أحياناً إذا أتى في الجملة أحد الأفعال التالية :

(give / ask / tell / offer / pay / show / teach / take / lend / bring)

و بالتالي يمكن للطالب أن يختار أحد المفعولين لتحويل الجملة إلى مبنية للمجهول .

المفعول به الثاني المفعول به الأول المفعول به الثاني المفعول به الأول

1/ He has given me a present .

2/ He has asked the teacher some questions .

A present has been given to me . / I have been given a present . / إما 1/ الإجابات :

Some questions have been asked to the teacher . / 2/ The teacher has been asked some questions . / إما

5/ يعتبر المفعول به ركن أساسي من أجل تحويل الجملة من مبنية للمعلوم إلى مبنية للمجهول ، و في حالة عدم وجود مفعول به في الجملة أو السؤال

فلا يمكن أن يتم تحويلها إلى مبني للمجهول ، و هذا يحدث عادة في الفقرات التي يأتي فيها مجموعة من الأفعال مثل (go / live / look / happen

arive / sit / stand / collapse / die / sleep / swim / smile / laugh / cry) و تسمى بـ (intransitive verbs) ما يعرف في اللغة

العربية (بالأفعال غير المتعدية) أي أنها أفعال لا يأتي بعدها مفعول به كما في الأمثلة التالية :

1/ I go to school . (لا تبني للمجهول) 2/ I live in Sana'a . (لا تبني للمجهول)

و فيما يلي جدول يشمل قواعد التحويل (من جمل مبنية للمعلوم إلى مبنية للمجهول) على حسب الأزمنة ، و قد أخذنا نكر قواعد الأزمنة التي شرحناها من قبل في درس الأزمنة (على يسار الجدول تحت عمود Active) و تلك للتذكير و من أجل المقارنة بين Active و Passive

| مبنى للمجهول Passive | مبنى للمعلوم Active |
|--|--|
| 1- زمن المضارع البسيط The present simple tense | |
| <p>تصريف ثالث للفعل (am / is / are) + P.p. + مفعول به O</p> <p>is → (إذا كان المفعول به مفرد) are → (إذا كان المفعول به جمع)</p> <p>1/ T.V is watched every-night by him. 2/ His parents are helped daily by Mohammed . 3/ Football is played once a week by them . 4/ The homework is written at night by me .</p> | <p>1/ S (اسم مفرد - he - she - it) + مفعول به O + فعل مصدر (s - es - ies) + V (inf.) 1/ He watches T.V every-night . 2/ Mohammed helps his parents daily .</p> <p>2/ S (اسم جمع - I - you - they - we) + مفعول به O + فعل مصدر V (inf.) 3/ They play football once a week . 4/ I write the homework at night .</p> |
| <p>عادة ما تأتي الكلمات التالية الدالة على هذا الزمن بعد الفاعل في الجمل المبنية للمعلوم (always / usually / sometimes / often / never) و في الجمل المبنية للمجهول نكتبها بعد (am / is / are) :</p> <p>1/ He always watches this channel . 2/ We usually speak English in the class .</p> <p>إذا كانت الجمل المبنية للمعلوم منفية في زمن المضارع البسيط</p> <p>تصريف ثالث P.p. + (am not / isn't / aren't) + مفعول به O</p> <p>1/ The class isn't attended dally by him . 2/ The instructions aren't followed by them .</p> | |
| 2- زمن الماضي البسيط The past simple tense | |
| <p>تم شرحه ضمن الخلاصة اللغوية رقم ٣ في الوحدة الثانية</p> <p>تصريف ثالث P.p. + (was / were) + مفعول به O</p> <p>1/ A car was bought last week by Khalid . 2/ The Pyramids were visited by Ali in 2010. 3/ The rule wasn't explained by him .</p> <p>مفعول به O + التصريف الثاني (past) V2 + فاعل S</p> <p>1/ Khalid bought a car last week . 2/ Ali visited the Pyramids in 2010. 3/ He didn't explain the rule .</p> | |
| 3- زمن المضارع المستمر The present continuous tense | |
| <p>تصريف ثالث P.p. + being + (am / is / are) + مفعول به O</p> <p>am → (إذا كان المفعول به هو الضمير) is → (إذا كان المفعول به مفرد) are → (إذا كان المفعول به جمع)</p> <p>1/ The exam is being written now by me . 2/ The students are being asked at the moment by the teacher 3/ The lunch is being cooked for the guest by them . 4/ The rooms aren't being cleaned now by her .</p> | <p>مفعول به O + (am / is / are) + V(ing) + فاعل S</p> <p>am → (إذا كان الفاعل) is → (اسم مفرد - he / she / it / إذا كان الفاعل) are → (اسم جمع - we / they / you / إذا كان الفاعل)</p> <p>1/ I am writing the exam now . 2/ The teacher is asking the students at the moment. 3/ They are cooking the lunch for the guest . 4/ She isn't cleaning the rooms now .</p> |
| 4- زمن الماضي المستمر The past continuous tense | |
| <p>تصريف ثالث P.p. + being + (was / were) + مفعول به O</p> <p>1/ The books were being collected from the students by me 2/ The match was being watched by us .</p> | <p>مفعول به O + (was / were) + V(ing) + فاعل S</p> <p>1/ I was collecting the books from the students . 2/ We were watching the match .</p> |

5-

زمن المضارع التام The present perfect simple tense

مفعول به O + تصريف ثالث P.p. + (has / have) + فاعل S

has → (اسم مفرد / he / she / it / إذا كان الفاعل)
have → (اسم جمع / I / you / we / they / إذا كان الفاعل)

- 1/ She has washed all her clothes .
- 2/ They have seen the doctor in Taiz .
- 3/ He hasn't finished his homework yet .

تصريف ثالث P.p. + (has / have) + مفعول به O

has → (إذا كان المفعول به مفرد)
have → (إذا كان المفعول به جمع)

- 1/ All her clothes have been washed by her .
- 2/ The doctor has been seen in Taiz by them .
- 3/ His homework hasn't been finished yet by him.

عادة ما تأتي الكلمات الدالة على هذا الزمن بعد has أو have في الجمل المبنيّة للمعلوم (just / already / recently / never /) وفي الجمل المبنيّة للمجهول نكتبها أيضاً بعد (has / have) :

- 1/ I have just taken Ali's car .
- 2/ She has already cleaned the rooms .

- 1/ Ali's car has just been taken by me .
- 2/ The rooms have already been cleaned by her .

6-

زمن الماضي التام The past perfect tense

مفعول به O + تصريف ثالث P.p. + had + فاعل S

- 1/ He had visited this place .

تصريف ثالث P.p. + had + been + مفعول به O

- 1/ This place had been visited by him .

7-

زمن المستقبل البسيط The future simple tense

1/ S فاعل + (am / is / are) + going to + مفعول به O + فعل في المصدر V(inf.)

- 1/ He is going to write the lesson tomorrow.
- 2/ They are going to watch this film tonight.

2/ S فاعل + will + مفعول به O + فعل في المصدر V(inf.)

- 1/ They will visit the old town next week.

1/ O مفعول به + (am / is / are) + going to + تصريف ثالث للفعل P.p.

- 1/ The lesson is going to be written tomorrow by him.
- 2/ This film is going to be watched tonight by them .

2/ O مفعول به + will + be + P.p. تصريف ثالث للفعل

- 1/ The old town will be visited next week by them .

8-

زمن المضارع التام المستمر The present perfect continuous tense

S الفاعل + have, has+been + V (مصدر) + ing + مفعول به O
has → (اسم مفرد / he / she / it)
have → (اسم جمع / I / we / they / you)

I have been studying English for ten years .

O مفعول به + have, has + been + being + P.p.
has → (إذا كان المفعول به مفرد)
have → (إذا كان المفعول به جمع)

English has been being studied for ten years by me.

9-

في حالة وجود احد الأفعال الناقصة في الجملة وهي ما تسمى بالـ (Modal Verbs) في الجملة المبنيّة للمعلوم : فإننا سوف نستخدم نفس الفعل الناقص عند تحويل الجملة إلى مبنيّة للمجهول وهي مثل :

(can / could / shall / should / will / would / may / might / ought to / must / need / dare / used to / ...)

S فاعل + (فعل ناقص Modal verb) + مفعول به O + فعل في المصدر V(inf.)

- 1/ I must study English.
- 2/ He can drive a car.
- 3/ She will help Arwa.
- 4/ We should understand this lesson.
- 5/ We shall do it tomorrow .



O مفعول به + (الفعل الناقص نفسه Modal verb) + تصريف ثالث P.p. + C.....

- 1/ English must be studied by me .
- 2/ A car can be driven by him .
- 3/ Arwa will be helped by her .
- 4/ This lesson should be understood by us .
- 5/ It will be done tomorrow by us .

إذا أتى الفعل الناقص shall فإنه يستبدل بـ will في الجملة المبنيّة للمجهول كما في المثال رقم ٥

| | |
|--|--|
| 10- | في حالة وجود احد الافعال المساعدة في الجملة في الجملة المبنية للمعلوم ، فإتيا سوف تتغير على حسب المفعول به (إذا كان مفرد أو جمع) عند تحويل الجملة إلى مبنية للمجهول و هي مثل : (has to / have to / is to / are to / am to) ما عدا الفعل التالف (had to) فإتيا يضل كما هو عند التحويل لأنه ماضي |
| S + (has to / have to / had to / is to / are to / am to) + V (inf.) + O | O + (has to / have to / had to / is to / are to / am to) + be + P.p. + C..... |
| (اسم مفرد / he / she / it / إذا كان الفاعل) → has to (اسم جمع / I / you / we / they / إذا كان الفاعل) → have to | (إذا كان المفعول به مفرد) → has to (إذا كان المفعول به جمع) → have to |
| (إذا كان الفاعل / I) → am to (اسم مفرد / he / she / it / إذا كان الفاعل) → is to (اسم جمع / we / they / you / إذا كان الفاعل) → are to | (إذا كان المفعول به هو الضمير / I) → am to (إذا كان المفعول به مفرد) → is to (إذا كان المفعول به جمع) → are to |
| 1/ He <u>has to</u> understand all the lessons. 2/ I <u>have to</u> help all the students. 3/ We <u>are to</u> study this subject. 4/ She <u>had to</u> clean the house. | 1- All the lessons <u>have to</u> be understood by him . 2- All the students <u>have to</u> be helped by me . 3- This subject <u>is to</u> be studied by us . 4- The house <u>had to</u> be cleaned by her . |
| 11- | إذا بدأت الجملة المبنية للمعلوم بفعل (أي أن الجملة أمرية order (تبدأ بفعل أمر) |
| V (inf.) + O | Let + O + be + P.p. |
| 1/ Open the door . 2/ Read this story . | 1/ Let the door be opened . 2/ Let this story be read . |
| 12- | إذا كان المطلوب هو تحويل سؤال من مبني للمعلوم إلى مبني للمجهول فسيكون التحويل على حسب زمن السؤال ، كما في الأمثلة التالية ، مع العلم أننا قد وضنا المفعول به باللون الأحمر لتمييزه . |
| 1/ Do you watch T.V at night ? 2/ Does she help her brothers every day ? 3/ Where does he see Ali every day ? 4/ Did he play football yesterday ? 5/ Where will you meet your sisters tomorrow ? | 1/ Is T.V watched at night by you ? 2/ Are her brothers helped every day by her ? 3/ Where is Ali seen every day by him ? 4/ Was football played yesterday by him ? 5/ Where will your sisters be met tomorrow by you ? |

حول ما يلي إلى مبني للمجهول : : Change into the passive voice : Q :

| | |
|---|--|
| 1- He simmered the mixture for ten minutes . | 12- The government builds new school every year |
| 2- My parents will do the shopping next Friday . | 13- They are painting the walls at the moment . |
| 3- The fire has destroyed the whole building . | 14- Edison invented the light bulb in1891 . |
| 4- The cat is eating the meat under the table . | 15- We must help poor people all the time . |
| 5- He gives his mother a beautiful flower every day | 16- We use kilometer to measure length . |
| 6- The minister opened a new hospital yesterday . | 17- The storm hit the area last night . |
| 7- We have already made some cake for the party | 18- You can buy a newspaper from the bookshop . |
| 8- I am eating vegetables these days . | 19- She gives him some money . |
| 9- Fuad may buy a new Toshiba laptop . | 20- The clerk wrote the names of the passengers . |
| 10- Mahmoud always helps the poor people . | 21- The students should answer all the questions . |
| 11- Scientists find remedies for many diseases . | 22- Ali delivers the post every day |

أما بطريقة الأتمتة فيكون طريقة السؤال عن المبني للمجهول كالتالي :

اختار أفضل الخيارات : : Choose the best alternatives : Q :

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|--------|---|---------|---|-----------|---|---------------|
| 1 | The new hospitalby the prime Minister last week. | a | open | b | opened | c | is opened | d | was opened |
| 2 | Last Thursday two small childrenkilled by a speeding car. | a | are | b | were | c | have | d | was |
| 3 | A windowyesterday by Khalid. | a | broke | b | break | c | is broken | d | was broken |
| 4 | Books areof paper. | a | made | b | make | c | making | d | makes |
| 5 | Finally, the bike has | a | repair | b | repairs | c | repairing | d | been repaired |
| 6 | The fire wasby fighters. | | | | | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|--|------------|---|--------------|---|------------|---|--------------|
| | a | control | b | controls | c | controlled | d | controlling |
| 7 | Football is now by Ali . | | | | | | | |
| | a | be played | b | being played | c | played | d | playing |
| 8 | Some vegetables been bought for Ahmed by him . | | | | | | | |
| | a | have | b | has | c | is | d | was |
| 9 | This rule should by us . | | | | | | | |
| | a | wrote | b | written | c | be written | d | been written |
| 10 | The dinnerby Arwa every day . | | | | | | | |
| | a | is cooking | b | is cooked | c | was cooked | d | cooks |
| 11 | He yesterday by them . | | | | | | | |
| | a | seen | b | is seen | c | was seen | d | saw |
| 12 | The president is to tomorrow morning by him . | | | | | | | |
| | a | be met | b | be metting | c | being met | d | be meet |
| 13 | Let the door be | | | | | | | |
| | a | opened | b | open | c | opens | d | opening |
| 14 |has been decorated well . | | | | | | | |
| | a | The rooms | b | The room | c | She | d | They |

Q : Choose the best alternatives :

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|--|--|--|---|---|--|--|
| 1 | Ali is playing football now . This is an active sentence whose passive is | | | | | | | |
| | a | Football is played now by Ali . | | | b | Football is been played now by Ali . | | |
| | c | Football is being played now by Ali . | | | d | Football has played now by Ali . | | |
| 2 | Arwa cooks the dinner every day .This an active sentence whose passive is | | | | | | | |
| | a | The dinner is cooked by Arwa every day . | | | b | The dinner is being cooked by Arwa every day . | | |
| | c | The dinner was cooked by Arwa every day. | | | d | The dinner has cooked by Arwa every day . | | |
| 3 | He has bought some vegetables for Ahmed . This an active sentence whose passive is..... | | | | | | | |
| | a | Some vegetables has been bought for Ahmed by him | | | b | Some vegetables have been bought for Ahmed by him | | |
| | c | Some vegetables are been bought for Ahmed by him | | | d | Some vegetables had been bought for Ahmed by him . | | |
| 4 | We should write this rule . This an active sentence whose passive is..... | | | | | | | |
| | a | This rule should be written by us . | | | b | This rule shall be written by us . | | |
| | c | This rule has been written by us . | | | d | This rule is written by us . | | |
| 5 | They saw him yesterday . This is an active sentence whose passive sentence is | | | | | | | |
| | a | Him was seen yesterday by them . | | | b | He had seen yesterday by them . | | |
| | c | He was seen yesterday by them . | | | d | He is seen yesterday by them . | | |
| 6 | He is to meet the president tomorrow morning . This is an active sentence whose passive sentence is | | | | | | | |
| | a | The president is to met tomorrow morning by him . | | | b | The president is to be met tomorrow morning by him . | | |
| | c | The president is to be meet tomorrow morning by him . | | | d | The president is to being meet tomorrow morning by him . | | |
| 7 | The students were swimming in the swimming pool . This is an active sentence whose passive sentence is | | | | | | | |
| | a | Swimming was being swum in the swimming pool by the students . | | | b | Swimming were being swum in the swimming pool by the students . | | |
| | c | Swimming is being swum in the swimming pool by the students . | | | d | No passive . | | |
| 8 | Open the door . This is an active sentence whose passive sentence is | | | | | | | |
| | a | The door is opened . | | | b | The door was opened . | | |
| | c | The door has opened . | | | d | Let the door be opened . | | |

حروف الجر The Prepositions

| 1 | to | الاستخدام : | أمثلة : Examples : |
|---|----|--|--|
| | | ١/ يستخدم بمعنى (إلى) إذا أتى بعده اسم مكان ما أو دولة أو مدينة أو عاصمة | 1-I go to the park 2- Ali went to school . |
| | | ٢/ يستخدم بمعنى (إلى) إذا أتى في نفس الجملة حرف الجر (from) و ذلك لتحديد فترة زمنية أو مسافة (.....fromto) (...من ...إلى.....) | 1-It is 300 kilometers from Sana'a to Aden . |
| | | ٣/ يستخدم بمعنى (لكي) إذا أتى بعده جملة توضح السبب و الفعل الذي يأتي بعد to يجب أن يكون في المصدر . | I sleep early to get up at six o'clock . أنام مبكراً لكي أستيقظ الساعة السادسة |
| | | ٤/ إذا أتى to بعد الأفعال و الكلمات التالية، فيجب أن يأتي بعد حرف الجر to فعل في المصدر | 1/ He used to play football. 2/ I am able to speak English . 3/ I want to go . 4/ I'd love to come . 5/ He has to go now . 6/ It is possible to crossbreed the animals from the same part. 7/ I always go to the mosque in order to pray. 8/ I decided to go for a walk . 9/ She is willing to cook the lunch . |
| | | used to إعداد أن / يستخدم لـ | |
| | | able to أن قدار أن / يستخدم لـ | |
| | | willing to مستعد لـ | |
| | | want to يريد أن | |
| | | need to يحتاج أن | |
| | | possible to يمكن أن | |
| | | going to/ is to / are to (سوف) | |
| | | in order to لكي | |
| | | has to / have to had to / يجب أن | |
| | | chance to فرصة لـ | |
| | | decided to قرر أن | |
| | | ability to قدرة لـ | |
| | | would hate to يكره أن | |
| | | would like to يحب أن | |
| | | would love to يحب أن | |
| | | would prefer يفضل أن | |
| | | look forward + to + verb يتطلع إلى أن (يشنق إلى أن) + فعل + ing | I look forward to meeting you. |
| | | ٥/ نستخدم to عادة بعد الأفعال و الكلمات التالية و يكون له معاني مختلفة ، و بشرط أن يأتي بعد حرف الجر to اسم | 1/ Smoking leads to death. 2/ I'll travel according to the advertisement. 3/ I write a letter to my father every Friday 4/ The school is next to my house |
| | | Lead to يؤدي إلى | |
| | | next to بجانب | |
| | | talk to يتكلم مع | |
| | | write to يكتب لـ | |
| | | similar to مشابه لـ | |
| | | according to متقن لـ - طبقاً لـ | |

| 2 | by | الاستخدام : | أمثلة : Examples : |
|---|----|--|--|
| | | ١/ يستخدم (by) بمعنى (بـ) أو (بواسطة) إذا أتى بعده اسم وسيلة من وسائل المواصلات مثل (car / bus / taxi / plane / train / boat / ship) | 1-I came to Sana'a by car . |
| | | ٢/ يستخدم قبل الكلمات التالية (by land) بمعنى براً / (by sea) بمعنى بحراً و قبل (by air) بمعنى جواً . | Ali will come by air . |
| | | ٣/ قد يستخدم بعد الأفعال التالية (used by) بمعنى يستخدم بواسطة ، (made by) بمعنى صنع بواسطة | 1-A tractor is a machine used by a farmer . 2-This car is made by Japanese people . |
| | | ٤/ قد يأتي بعد by فعل مضاف له ing | Sound is created by vibrating . |


| 3 | In | الاستخدام : | أمثلة : Examples : |
|---|----|--|---|
| | | ١/ يستخدم حرف الجر (in) بمعنى (في) قبل الدول والعواصم والتواريخ وأشهر السنة (إذا لم يأتي قبلها تاريخ يوم محدد) والفصول الأربعة والاتجاهات الأربعة وأجزاء اليوم مثل (في الصباح in the morning ، في الظهيرة in the afternoon ، في المساء in the evening) . | 1/ I was born in Yemen . 3/Rama the Cama was born in 1998 . 4/ They will come in January . 5/ We are going to travel in winter . 6/ He works in the morning . |
| | | ٢/ يستخدم حرف الجر in بمعنى في بعد الفعل made (صنع) و لكن بشرط أن يأتي بعد in اسم دولة | This car is made in China . |
| | | ٣/ يستخدم حرف الجر in بمعنى في بعد الفعل live (يعيش) و لكن بشرط أن يأتي بعد in اسم مكان أو دولة أو مدينة | I live in Sana'a . |
| | | ٤/ يستخدم in عادة بعد الأفعال و الكلمات التالية : Interested in مهتم بـ / believe in يؤمن أو يصدق بـ / covered in مغطى بـ / Success in نجاح في / training in تدريب في و بشرط أن يأتي بعد حرف الجر in فعل في المصدر + ing أو قد يأتي اسم | 1/ He is interested in watching the film . 2/ We are interested in sports . 3/ I believe in Allah . 4/ I have fourteen years training in teaching . |


| 4 | for | الاستخدام : | أمثلة : Examples : |
|---|-----|--|--|
| | | يأتي حرف الجر for بعد الكلمات التالية: و بشرط أن يأتي بعد حرف الجر for فعل في المصدر + ing أو أن يأتي اسم / يطلب ask for / ممتن لـ grateful for / يتقدم لطلب عمل apply for / يبحث عن look for / ينتظر لـ wait for / مؤهل لـ qualified for مشهور بـ famous for يدفع عن أو يحاسب عن pay for / paid for | 1/ she applied for a manager job. 2/ I'd be grateful for your quick reply. 3/ Ask your school office for an application form 4/ He is qualified for this job . 5/ I am waiting for you . 6/ She is looking for her pen . 7/ Yemen is famous for its old buildings |
| | | ٢/ نستخدم حرف الجر for بمعنى (لمدة) إذا أتى بعد وقت (زمن) ، كما في الأمثلة التالية : | 1/ I will stay here for two weeks . أنا سوف أمكث (أبقي) هنا لمدة اسبوعين . 2/ Ali is going to travel by the plane for 10 hours . علي سيسافر بالطائرة لمدة ١٠ ساعات . |

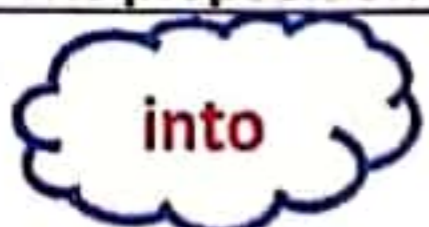
| 5 | Of | الاستخدام : | أمثلة : Examples : |
|---|----|---|--|
| | | ١/ يستخدم حرف الجر of بمعنى من بعد الفعل made (مصنوع من) و لكن بشرط أن يأتي بعد of اسم مادة صناعية | A window is made of glass. |
| | | ٢/ يستخدم حرف الجر of بعد الأفعال والكلمات التالية : / قادر على capable of / يعتني بـ take care of / خائف من afraid of / فرصة في chance of / يتحمل مسؤولية take charge of / نقص في (شحة في) a shortage of / خبرة في experience of بدلاً من (عوضاً عن) instead of و بشرط أن يأتي بعد حرف الجر of فعل في المصدر + ing أو قد يأتي اسم | 1/ I am afraid of Allah . 2/ A nurse takes care of the patients . 3/ She has the chance of travelling abroad. 4 / He has experience of teaching 5 / A famine is a shortage of food . |
| | | ٣/ يستخدم of بمعنى (من) و يأتي عادة بعد الكلمات التالية / قطعة من a piece of / زوج من a pair of / مجموعة من a group of الكثير a lot of / جزء من part of / نوع من kind of / نوع من type of / بسبب because of / عدد من a number of / الكثير من lots of / من one of من اثنين من two of / واحد من one of و بشرط أن يأتي بعد حرف الجر of اسم | 1/ A prefix is a group of letters that goes in front of the stem . 2/ He wants to buy a pair of shoes 3/ He will give me a piece of advice. 4/ The lion and the tiger are part of the cat family. |

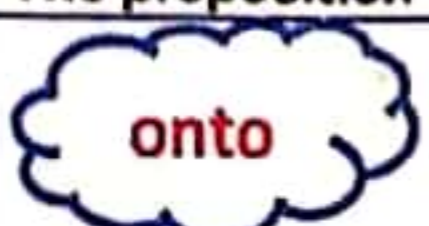
| 6 | at | الاستخدام : | أمثلة : Examples : |
|---|----|--|--|
| | | ١/ حرف الجر (at) والذي يعني (في) يأتي قبل أسماء أماكن مثل : / في كلية الطب at the Medical College / في المدرسة at school / في البيت at home / في القطب الشمالي at the North Pole / في المطار at the airport / في الجامعة at the university / / في مصنعنا at our factory / في المصنع at the processing factory / في العمل at work / ٢/ حرف الجر (at) والذي يعني (في) يأتي قبل ما يدل على الوقت مثل : / في الصباح at morning / ظهراً at noon / في منتصف الليل at midnight / في الليل at night / في نهاية الاسبوع at the weekend / في هذه اللحظة at the moment / في المساء at evening / / في الساعة السابعة at seven o'clock ٣/ حرف الجر (at) والذي يعني (في) يأتي قبل كلمات أخرى مثل : / في أعماق الـ at the bottom of / في أعلى الـ at the top of / في آخر at last / في أول at first / في نفس المكان at the same place / في نفس الوقت at the same time / في نفس المكان / في درجة حرارة ١٥ °C - 15 at / في مناسبة خاصة at a private ceremony / في البداية at the beginning | 1/He is at home . 2/ She is at school . 3/ I watch this channel at night . 4/ I go there at 6 o'clock . 5/ the frozen peas put into cold-storage at -18°C . |
| | | ١/ حرف الجر (at) يأتي بعد الكلمات التالية / ممتاز في excellent at / سيء في bad at / جيد في Good at يأس من Hopeless at / متفائل بـ hopeful at و بشرط أن يأتي بعد حرف الجر at فعل في المصدر + ing أو أن يأتي اسم | 1/ He is good at dealing with people. 2/ He is excellent at Biology. 3/ He is hopeless at it . |

| NO. | حرف الجر The preposition | الاستخدام : | الاستخدام : |
|-----|---|---|--|
| 7 |  | يأتي حرف الجر on قبل الكلمات التالية بمعنى في أو على 1- on Saturday أيام الأسبوع 2- on holiday في عطلة (أجازته) 3- on Richter scale على مقياس ريختر 4- on the PH scale على مقياس PH 5- on foot مشياً على الأقدام 6- on motorbike على الدراجة 7- on May 14 th 1993 قبل التاريخ الكامل 8- on the horizon في الأفق | يأتي حرف الجر on بعد الكلمات التالية : 1/ put on (يرتدي) 2/ depend on (يعتمد على) 3/ focus on (يركز على) 4/ lost my hold on فقد السيطرة على |

| NO. | حرف الجر The preposition | الاستخدام : | أمثلة : Examples : |
|-----|---|---|---|
| 8 |  | from يعني (من) و قد يأتي قبل أسماء أماكن (كالدول و العواصم و المدن) كالتالي : اسم مكان + be (am / is / are) + from + S فاعل + come from..... 1/ fromto (منإلى) لتحديد فترة زمنية أو مسافة أو (من شخص إلى آخر) ... 2/ fromuntil (منوحتى) 3/ fromtill (منوحتى) أما الفقرتين ٢ ، ٣ فتستخدمان فقط لتحديد فترة زمنية Suffer from (يعاني من) / developed from (طور من) (بعيداً من far from) / (يستعير من borrow from) | 1/ I am from Yemen . 2/ He is from Japan . I come from the school . 1/ It is three hundred kilometers from Sana'a to Taiz . 2/ I studied from seven o'clock to ten o'clock . 3/ I studied from seven o'clock until ten o'clock . |

| NO. | حرف الجر The preposition | الاستخدام : | أمثلة : Examples : |
|-----|---|---|---|
| 9 |  | with يعني (مع) إذا أتى قبل الكلمات التالية مثل : (deal with مع) / (يتعامل مع) / (come with مع) / (يأتي مع) (stay with مع) / (يعيش مع) / (live with مع) (play with مع) / (يلعب مع) / (come along with مع) (talk with مع) / (يتكلم مع) / (go with مع) / (يذهب مع) (helpful with مع) / (يتحدث مع) / (speak with مع) with يعني (بـ) إذا أتى قبل الأفعال التالية مثل : (provide with بـ) / (يزود بـ - يجهز بـ) / (يعلى بـ fill with) (يفتح بـ open with) / (يأكل بـ eat with) with يعني (من) إذا أتى قبل الكلمات التالية مثل : (pleased with من) / (غضب من angry with) | 1/ I come with Ali . 2/ He lives with his family . 3/ They played with us . 4/ I talk with Arwa . I fill the bottle with water . He is angry with me . |

| NO. | حرف الجر The preposition | الاستخدام : | أمثلة : Examples : |
|-----|---|---|--|
| 10 |  | يأتي حرف الجر into بعد و فيما بين الكلمات التالية 1/ divided into . 2/ get into the car . 3/ go into business . 4/ go into Government Administration. | 1/ He divided the apple into two halves 2/ They would like to go into business 3/ I got into the car . |

| NO. | حرف الجر The preposition | الاستخدام : | أمثلة : Examples : |
|-----|---|---|---|
| 11 |  | يأتي حرف الجر onto مع الكلمات المقابلة | 1- climb onto its back. 2- blow (blown) onto their sides . |

كلمات مع حروف جر مختلفة و (phrasal verbs) :

| |
|--|
| <p>look for ... / يبحث عن ... / look after ... / يعتني بـ / look at ... / ينظر إلى ... / look out of (مثلاً) / ينظر من خلال النافذة</p> <p>look up ... / يتطلع إلى أن (يشترك إلى أن) (look forward to + v (ing) / احترس / احذر ... / look out / يبحث عن المعنى في القاموس</p> <p>...look like ... / يبدو / يشبه</p> <p>Examples أمثلة : 1/ Don't look for your pen . It is with me . 2/ If you don't know the meaning of this word look up . 3/ She looks after her children . 4/ I look forward to meeting you . 5/ Look out! A car is coming . 6/ Curtains used to stop people looking in . 7/ Look at the sky . 8/ You look like your father .</p> |
| <p>get into ... (يصعد إلى) السيارة مثلاً ... / get up ... / يستيقظ ... / get + adj. صفة / get back to ... / يعود إلى / يسترجع ...</p> <p>get out of ... (ينزل من على الباص ، السفينة ، الطائرة ،) / get in ... / get off ... (ينزل من على الباص ، السفينة ، الطائرة ،)</p> <p>Examples أمثلة 1/ I have just got off the plane from Paris .</p> |
| <p>come from ... / يأتي من ... / come with ... / يأتي مع ... / come in ... / come on ... / Come back ... / يعود / come by ..</p> <p>come out of / يخرج من / come in + تاريخ</p> |
| <p>turn left ... / يلف يسار ... / turn right .. / يلف يمين .. / turninto ... / يحول ... / Turn on / turn off</p> |
| <p>take off .. / take out .. / take part of ... / يشارك في ... / take care of ... / يعتني بـ / يهتم بـ / take + وقت (يستغرق ..)</p> <p>take place .. / take charge of ... / يتحمل مسؤولية ... / take responsibility for .. / يتحمل مسؤولية</p> |
| <p>Put / يضع / put on / يرتدي / يلبس / put out / يخمد أو يطفى حريق / put off ... / يؤجل ... / put up .. / put in ...</p> <p>Examples أمثلة 1/ Put on your jacket . 2/ They put out the fire .</p> |
| <p>Kind of / نوع من / kind to / لطيف مع</p> |

اختار أفضل الخيارات : : Choose the best alternatives : Q :

| | | | | | | | | | |
|----|--|---|---------|---|---------|---|-----------|---|-----------|
| 1 | The cat is coveredfur . | a | In | b | with | c | by | d | on |
| 2 | The window is madeglass . | a | In | b | of | c | by | d | on |
| 3 | We don't teachthe weekend . | a | in | b | with | c | at | d | of |
| 4 | They livethe first floor . | a | of | b | in | c | on | d | at |
| 5 | Hana'a is badbiology . | a | at | b | in | c | on | d | for |
| 6 | Abdullah gets up7 o'clock . | a | at | b | in | c | on | d | of |
| 7 | They camebus . | a | on | b | in | c | by | d | for |
| 8 | This car is madeBritain . | a | in | b | of | c | by | d | on |
| 9 | I am gratefulyou . | a | for | b | of | c | in | d | with |
| 10 | He has experienceteaching children . | a | for | b | of | c | at | d | to |
| 11 | Animals are dividedfamilies . | a | for | b | with | c | into | d | onto |
| 12 | He has experienceteaching . | a | at | b | for | c | of | d | on |
| 13 | They are interestedreading . | a | in | b | on | c | at | d | with |
| 14 | She is goodArabic . | a | in | b | on | c | at | d | for |
| 15 | They are gooddealingpeople . | a | at / in | b | in / at | c | at / with | d | on / with |
| 16 | I believeAllah . | | | | | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|--|-------|---|-------|---|-----|---|------|
| | a | in | b | on | c | by | d | with |
| 17 | I am gratefulyou . | | | | | | | |
| | a | of | b | for | c | by | d | on |
| 18 | Fill the bottlewater . | | | | | | | |
| | a | into | b | with | c | by | d | in |
| 19 | They usually come to schoolfoot . | | | | | | | |
| | a | in | b | on | c | by | d | with |
| 20 | They always come to workbus . | | | | | | | |
| | a | in | b | with | c | by | d | on |
| 21 | He is willingtravel abroad . | | | | | | | |
| | a | in | b | to | c | on | d | at |
| 22 | Don't lookyour dictionary . It's with me . | | | | | | | |
| | a | up | b | after | c | for | d | to |
| 23 | They are going to apply this job . | | | | | | | |
| | a | in | b | of | c | for | d | on |
| 24 | I'm interestedwriting stories . | | | | | | | |
| | a | in | b | on | c | of | d | for |
| 25 | Hadeel has a good experienceteaching English . | | | | | | | |
| | a | in | b | with | c | at | d | of |
| 26 | She must be gratefulyour help . | | | | | | | |
| | a | for | b | with | c | of | d | at |
| 27 | I'm leaving the countrythe end of the month . | | | | | | | |
| | a | on | b | to | c | at | d | in |
| 28 | You should applythe job . | | | | | | | |
| | a | for | b | by | c | of | d | in |
| 29 | Is there any chancegetting tickets for tonight concert ? | | | | | | | |
| | a | of | b | for | c | at | d | in |
| 30 | Yemeni people are famoustheir generosity . | | | | | | | |
| | a | about | b | of | c | by | d | for |

الاشتقاق (الفعل والاسم) (The Derivation)(Verb and Noun)

بالأسفل بالأفعال التي لها نفس الأسماء و قمتا بتقسيمها في مجموعات على حسب ما تبدأ أو تنتهي به الأفعال من حروف متشابهة فمثلاً : الأفعال التي تبدأ بالحروف (re / cl / pl / f / w / h / st) تكون الأسماء هي نفس الأفعال مع وجود بعض الشواذ ، و الأفعال التي تنتهي بالحروف (m / k) تكون الأسماء أيضاً نفس الأفعال مع وجود بعض الشواذ ، أو وجود حرف في وسطها متشابه و ذلك لتسهيل عملية الحفظ فقط و ليست بقواعد و على الطالب التركيز على وجود كلمات شاذة (الفعل ليس نفس الاسم) و قد تم كتابتها باللون الأزرق

ملاحظة : كل ما في الجداول التالية تخص القسمين العلمي و الأدبي بينما ما تم التظليل عليه باللون الأصفر هي كلمات تخص القسم العلمي فقط

| Verb | فعل | Noun | اسم | Verb | فعل | Noun | اسم |
|------------|-------------|------------|--------------|---------|-----------------|---------------|---------------|
| Start | يبدأ | Start | بداية | farm | يعمل بالزراعة | farm | مزرعة |
| struggle | يكافح | struggle | كفاح | face | يواجه | face | وجه |
| study | يدرس | study | دراسة | fast | يصوم | fast | صيام |
| store | يخزن | store | مخزن | fill | يملأ | fill | مملوء |
| state | ينص / يصرح | state | حالة | fish | يصطاد | fish | سمكة |
| stay | يمكث/يقدم | stay | إقامة | film | يصنع فيلم/ يمثل | film | فيلم |
| stop | يتوقف | stop | توقف | fire | يشعل | fire | حريق |
| sting | يلدغ | sting | لدغة | fight | يقاتل | fight | قتال |
| step | يخطو | step | خطوة | finger | يمس بإصبعه | finger | اصبع |
| stress | يؤكد | stress | توكيد / ضغط | fear | يخاف | fear | خوف |
| star | يتألق | star | نجم | focus | يركز | focus | مركز |
| steam | يتبخر | steam | بخار | fly | يطير | fly | ذباب |
| stem | يتفرع من | stem | جذر الكلمة | flood | يغمر/يفيض | flood | فيضان |
| stir | يحرك | stir | تحريك | freeze | يجمد | freeze | تجمد |
| stone | يعمل بالحجر | stone | حجر | form | يشكل/ينشأ | form | شكل |
| starve | يجوع | starvation | مجاعة | fry | يقلي | frying | قلي |
| strengthen | يقوي | strength | قوة | free | يحرر | freedom | حرية |
| Help | يساعد | Help | مساعدة | feel | يحصن- يشعر | feel- feeling | شعور |
| heat | يسخن | heat | تسخين | find | يجد | finding | لقينة |
| hand | يناول باليد | hand | يد | Plan | يخطط | Plan | خطة |
| hate | يكره | hate | كره | place | يضع | place | مكان |
| harvest | يحصد | harvest | حصاد | plough | يحرث | plough | محرث |
| hurt | يجرح | hurt | جرح | play | يلعب | play | مسرحية |
| hope | يأمل | hope | أمل | plant | يزرع | plant | نبات |
| hunger | يجوع | hunger | جوع | clean | ينظف | clean | نظيف |
| hold | يمسك | hold | ببئ | clear | يوضح | clear | وضوح |
| house | يسكن | house | بيت | close | يغلق | close | مغلق |
| hurry | يسرع | hurry | سرعة | clue | | clue | مفتاح لحل لغز |
| head | يقود/يووجه | head | رأس | cloud | تغيم | cloud | غيمة |
| hole | يحفر | hole | حفرة | claw | يخدش | claw | مخلب |
| hit | يضرب | hit | ضربة | climb | يتسلق | climb | تسلق |
| hug | يعانق / يضم | hug | عناق | | | | |
| hear | يسمع | hearing | سماع | | | | |
| Water | يسقي | Water | ماء | Dream | يحلم | Dream | حلم |
| wonder | يعجب | wonder | تعجب | scream | يصرخ | scream | صراخ |
| worry | يقلق | worry | قلق | stream | يتدفق | stream | جداول |
| wish | يتمنى | wish | أمنية | storm | تعصف | storm | عاصفة |
| will | يعزم/يوصي | will | مشيئة/وصية | steam | يتبخر | steam | بخار |
| wind | يستروح | wind | ريح | dam | يسد | dam | سد |
| watch | يشاهد | watch | مشاهدة/ ساعة | program | يبرمج | program | برنامج |
| wed | يتزوج | wedding | زواج | inform | يبلغ عن/ يُعلم | information | معلومات |
| weigh | يزن | weight | وزن | warm | يدفئ | warmth | دفئ |
| weaken | يضعف | weakness | ضعف | swim | يسبح | swimming | سباحة |
| widen | يعرض | width | عرض | | | | |

| | | | | | | | |
|---|--|---|---|--|---|--|--|
| Can call crash match saw layout salt add marry act vary | يستطيع يتصل يحطم يوصل رأى يصمم يملح يضيف يتزوج يمثل يتنوع | Can call crash match saw layout salt addition marriage actor variation | عليه نداء تحطم كبريت-مباراة منشار تصميم ملح إضافة زواج ممثل تنوع | Drink walk attack milk work cook book look talk click back kick check speak | يشرب يمشي يهاجم يحب يعمل يطبخ يحجز ينظر يتكلم يقرع يعود يركل يفحص يتحدث | Drink walk attack milk work cook book look talk click back kick check speech | مشروب تمشية هجوم حليب عمل طبخ كتاب نظرة كلام فرقة ظهر ركلة فحص حديث |
| Interview View | يقابل يشاهد | Interview interviewer view -viewer | مقابلة مشهد- مشاهد | Report return rescue refuse reach reply research rest respect repair rent result read review recover | ينقل خبر يرجع ينقذ يرفض يصل إلى يجيب يبحث يستريح يحترم يصلح يستأجر ينتج يقرأ يراجع يشفي | report return rescue refuse reach reply research rest respect repair rent result reading revision recovery | تقرير إرجاع إنقاذ رفض متناول جواب بحث استراحة احترام اصلاح ايجار نتيجة قراءة مراجعة شفاء |
| End Dye test left care correct egg Open Love design chew sell press | ينهى يصبغ يختبر غادر يعني يصحح يجمع البيض يفتح يحب يصمم يمضغ يبيع يضغط | End Dye test left care correct egg Open Love design chewing sale pressure | نهاية صبغة اختبار يسر عناية تصحیح بيضة مفتوح حب تصميم مضغ بيع ضغط | Shape colour light sound | يشكل يلون ينير يصدر صوت | Shape colour light sound | شكل لون ضوء صوت |
| Offer Answer | يقدم / يعرض يجيب | Offer Answer | تقديم / عرض إجابة | Change Damage | يغير يدمر | Change Damage | تغيير تدمير |
| بالأسفل ما يخص أجزاء الجسم من أفعال و أسماء | | | | بالأسفل يخص أفعال الحواس من أفعال و أسماء | | | |
| Hand eye nose face finger head left right elbow | يتناول باليد يحدث إلى يشم يواجه يمس بإصبعه يرأس - يقود غادر يصحح ينعطف-يثني | Hand eye nose face finger head left right elbow | يد عين-بصر أنف وجه اصبع رأس يسر يمين كثف | Smell touch taste watch see feel hear | يشم يلمس يتذوق يشاهد يرى يشعر يسمع | Smell touch taste watch sight feel-feeling hearing | رائحة - الشم اللمس التذوق مشاهدة رؤية شعور سماع |
| بالأسفل أفعال لها نفس الأسماء و كلها لها علاقة بالطقس | | | | بالأسفل أفعال لها نفس الأسماء أيضا | | | |
| Fog dust wind cloud rain | يشوش يغبر يهب تقيم تمطر | Fog dust wind cloud rain | ضباب غبار ريح غيمة مطر | Cut Cool Control Ring Telephone Try poison | يقطع يبرد يسيطر يقرع جرس يتصل يحاول يسمم | Cut Cool Control Ring Telephone Try poison | قطع-مجرح بارد سيطرة خاتم اتصال محاولة سم |

فيما يلي افعال ولها اسماء مختلفة عنها و لكننا لمنا بتسميها على حسب ما ينتهي به الفعل من حروف و ما تم اضافة الى الفعل ليحول إلى اسم و ذلك لتسهيل عملية الحفظ فقط و هي ليست بقواعد و انما محصورة بما سيتم ذكره من افعال و اسماء في هذا الجدول ، و كما ذكرنا سابقاً ان ما تم تلوينه بالأزرق هي كلمات لا تنطبق عليها القاعدة كمثلياتها من الكلمات الموجودة معها في نفس المجموعة .

| Verb | فعل | Noun | اسم | Verb | فعل | Noun | اسم |
|---|-----------|----------------|---------------|--|------------|-------------------|---------------|
| لاحظ ان الأفعال انتهت بـ ver و تحولها إلى اسم أضفنا y | | | | لاحظ ان الأفعال انتهت بـ ve و تحولها إلى اسم أضفنا al | | | |
| Discover | يكتشف | Discovery | اكتشاف | Arrive | يصل | Arrival | وصول |
| recover | يشفي | recovery | شفاء | survive | ينجو | Survival-survivor | البقاء-التجاة |
| deliver | يوصل | delivery | توصيل | remove | يزيل | removal | إزالة |
| cover | يغطي | cover | غطاء | dissolve | يذوب | dissolve | ذوبان |
| لاحظ ان الأفعال التي تنتهي بالحروف (ss / pt / ent/ ct) و تحولها إلى اسم أضفنا ion | | | | لاحظ ان الأفعال انتهت بـ te و تحولها إلى اسم نحذف e و نضيف ion | | | |
| Collect | يجمع | Collection | جمع | Create | يخلق/يبدع | Creation | خلق- ابداع |
| protect | يحمي | protection | حماية | educate | يتعلم | education | تعليم |
| connect | يربط | connection | رباط | vibrate | يهتز | vibration | اهتزاز |
| correct | يصحح | correction | تصحيح | translate | يترجم | translation | ترجمة |
| infect | يعدوي | infection | عدوى | illustrate | يشرح | illustration | شرح |
| direct | يوجه/يتجه | direction - or | إتجاه | investigate | يحقق | investigation | تحقيق |
| reflect | يعكس | reflection | انعكاس | operate | يعمل | operation | عملية |
| reject | يرفض | rejection | رفض | vaccinate | يلفح | vaccination | تلقيح |
| expect | يتوقع | expectation | توقع | administrate | يدير | administration | إدارة |
| affect | يؤثر | effect | أثر | concentrate | يركز | concentration | تركيز |
| react | يتفاعل | reaction | تفاعل | communicate | يتواصل | communication | تواصل |
| refract | ينكسر | refraction | انكسار | evaporate | يتبخر | evaporation | تبخير |
| contact | يراجع | contacting | مراجعة | generate | يولد | generation | توليد |
| instruct | يوجه | instruction | توجيه | punctuate | يرقم | punctuation | ترقيم |
| invent | يخترع | invention | اختراع | participate | يشارك | participation | مشاركة |
| prevent | يمنع | prevention | منع | motivate | يحفز | motivation | تحفيز |
| suggest | يقترح | suggestion | اقترح | exaggerate | يبالغ | exaggeration | مبالغة |
| except | يستثنى | exception | استثناء | emigrate | يهاجر | immigration | هجرة |
| adapt | يتكيف | adaption | تكيف | indicate | يشير إلى | indicator | مؤشر |
| Discuss | يناقش | Discussion | مناقشة | grate | يزعج | grating | ازعاج |
| confess | يعترف | confession | إعتراف | ignite | يشعل | ignition | إشعل |
| compress | يضغط | compression | ضغط | invite | يدعو | invitation | دعوة |
| express | يشرح-يفسر | expression | شرح-تفسير | pollute | يلوث | pollution | تلوث |
| press | يضغط | pressure | ضغط | contribute | يساهم | contribution | مساهمة |
| process | | process | | لاحظ ان الأفعال انتهت بـ tion و تحولها إلى اسم نحذف e و أضفنا tion | | | |
| guess | يخمن | guess | تخمين | Introduce | يقدم | Introduction | تقديم |
| kiss | يقبل | kiss | قبلة | Produce | ينتج | Production | إنتاج |
| stress | يؤكد | stress | توكيد | لاحظ ان الأفعال انتهت بـ de و تحولها إلى اسم نحذف de و أضفنا sion | | | |
| Combine | يربط | Combination | رباط | Explode | يفجر | Explosion | تفجير |
| examine | يتمحن/يخذ | examination | امتحان/اختبار | corrode | يتآكسد | corrosion | تآكسد |
| imagine | تبر | imagination | خيال | conclude | ينتهي-يختم | conclusion | خاتمة |
| define | يتخيل | definition | تعريف | decide | يقرر | decision | قرار |
| line | يعرف | line | سطر | divide | يقسم | division | تقسيم |
| Observe | يسطر | Observation | مراقبة | include | يرشد | inclusion | تضمن |
| Starve | يراقب | Starvation | معاناة | guide | | guidance | ارشاد |
| serve | يعاني | service | خدمة | Permit | يسمح | Permission | سماح |
| Organize | يخدم | organization | نظام | transmit | ينقل | transmission | نقل- إرسال |
| immunize | ينظم | immunization | تحصين | admit | يسمح | admission | سماح |
| neutralize | يحصن | neutralization | محايدة | | | | |
| - | يحيد | neutrality | تعادل | | | | |
| civilize | - | civilization | تمدن /حضارة | | | | |
| summarize | يتمدن | summary | خلاصة/ملخص | | | | |
| memorize | يلخص | memory | ذاكرة | | | | |

| emphasize distill | | | | emphasis distillation | | | | توكيد تقطير | | | |
|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| يتكرر يؤكد يقطر- يرشح | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Explain prepare add register describe solve | | | | Explanation preparation addition registration description solution | | | | شرح تحضير إضافة تسجيل وصف حل | | | |
| يتحرك يحسن يتطلب يقيس يعاقب يدهش يعلن يرتب يخطب يحكم-يقضي يشجع يدير | | | | Movement improvement requirement measurement punishment astonishment advertisement arrangement engagement judgment encouragement management- manager agreement treatment enjoyment development government equipment payment-ing excitement experiment | | | | حركة تحسين متطلب قياس عقاب دهشة إعلان ترتيب خطوبة حكم-قضاء تشجيع إدارة - مدير موافقة معالجة استمتاع تطوير حكومة تجهيزات/تجهيز دفع إثارة تجربة | | | |
| Move improve require measure punish astonish advertise arrange engage judge encourage manage agree treat enjoy develop govern equip pay excite experiment | | | | | | | | | | | |
| يوافق يعالج يستمتع يتطور يحكم يجهز - يدفع يشير يجرب | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Mix depart Press | | | | Mixture departure pressure | | | | خليط مغادرة ضغط | | | |
| يخلط يغادر يضغط | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Know advise weigh choose succeed lose diagnose die Compare Crossbreed Visit Bleed Grow live Melt | | | | Knowledge advice weight choice success loss diagnosis death Comparison Cross Visit-visitor Blood Grower life Melting | | | | معرفة نصيحة وزن إختيار نجاح فقدان/خسارة تشخيص موت مقارنة تهجين زيارة/ زائر دم مزارع حياة ذوبان | | | |
| يعرف ينصح يزن يختار ينجح يفقد/ يخسر بشخص يموت يقارن يهجن يزور ينزف ينمو-يزرع يعيش يذوب-ينصهر | | | | | | | | | | | |
| بالأسفل أفعال لها أسماء مختلفة | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Refer differ prefer depend appear attend prove guide perform exist influence experience | | | | Reference difference preference dependence appearance attendance providence guidance performance existence influence experience | | | | المرجع إختلاف تفضيل إعتماد مظهر حضور ارشاد أداء وجود تأثير تجربة | | | |
| يرجع إلى يختلف يفضل يعتمد يظهر يحضر يبرهن يرشد يؤدي يوجد يؤثر في يجرب | | | | | | | | | | | |
| بالأسفل أفعال انتهت بـ en | | | | | | | | | | | |
| shorten lengthen strengthen darken weaken deepen widen cheapen | | | | short - shortage length strength dark-darkness weakness depth width cheapness | | | | نقص طول قوة ظلام ضعف عمق عرض رخص | | | |
| يقصر يطول يقوي يظلم يضعف يعمق يعرض يرخص | | | | | | | | | | | |

٢- وقد يأتي السؤال أيضاً عن طريق إختيار الإجابة الصحيحة أو عن طريق وضع علامة صح أو خطأ .

Q : Write true (T) or false (F) :.... ضع صح أو خطأ

1- He wants to marriage . (F) 2- This is my suggest . (F)

توضيح سبب الخطأ :

- ١- الخطأ في الجملة الأولى في كلمة (marriage) وهي اسم ومعناها زواج ونحن نعلم أنه يأتي بعد (want to) عادة فعل في المصدر لذلك سنستبدل الاسم بالفعل منها وهو يتزوج (marry)
- ٢- الخطأ في الجملة الثانية في كلمة (suggest) حيث أنها فعل وقد أنت بعد صفة الملكية (my) وكما نعلم أنه يأتي بعد صفات الملكيات اسم ، لذلك سنحول الفعل إلى اسم والاسم منه هو (suggestion) بحيث تصبح الإجابات بعد التصحيح كالتالي :
- 1- He wants to marry. 2- This is my suggestion .

الاشتقاق (Derivation) الأسماء والصفات Nouns and Adjectives

لقد جمعنا في الجدول التالي معظم الأفعال والأسماء لها وحاولنا تقسيمها إلى مجموعات متشابهة وذلك لتسهيل فهم وحفظ كيفية تحويل الاسم إلى صفة والعكس وهي ليست بقواعد ثابتة في اللغة الإنجليزية وإنما هي محصورة بما هو موجود في الجدول فقط :

| Adjective | الصفة | Noun | الاسم |
|---|-----------------|--------------|--------------|
| لاحظ أن الصفات التي تنتهي بـ ant أو ent نحذف حرف t ونكتب ce لتتحول إلى أسماء ما عدا ثلاث صفات ستضيف إليها cy لتتحول إلى أسماء | | | |
| Patient | صبور | Patience | صبر |
| Present | حاضر | Presence | حضور |
| Confident | واثق | Confidence | ثقة |
| Diligent | مجتهد | Diligence | اجتهاد |
| Different | مختلف | Difference | اختلاف |
| Independent | مستقل | Independence | استقلال |
| Silent | صامت | Silence | صمت |
| Absent | غائب | Absence | غياب |
| Violent | عنيف | Violence | عنف |
| urgent | مُلح | Urgency | إلحاح |
| frequent | متكرر | Frequency | تكرار |
| transparent | شفاف | transparency | شفافية |
| Distant | بعيد | Distance | بُعد (مسافة) |
| Important | مهم | Importance | أهمية |
| الحروف التي باللون الأحمر هي ما تم اضافتها إلى اسم الدولة للحصول على الصفات (الجنسيات) | | | |
| | الصفة (الجنسية) | اسم الدولة | |
| American | أمريكي | America | أمريكا |
| Armenian | أرمني | Armenia | أرمينيا |
| Russian | روسي | Russia | روسيا |
| Roman | روماني | Rome | روما |
| African | أفريقي | Africa | أفريقيا |
| Indian | هندي | India | الهند |
| Arabian | عربي | Arabia | العربية |
| Japanese | ياباني | Japan | اليابان |
| Chinese | صيني | China | الصين |
| Vietnamese | فيتنامي | Vietnam | فيتنام |
| Yemeni | يمني | Yemen | Yemeni |
| Omani | عماني | Oman | عمان |
| Iraqi | عراقي | Iraq | العراق |
| Kuwaiti | كويتي | Kuwait | الكويت |
| Qatari | قطري | Qatar | قطر |
| British | بريطاني | Britain | بريطانيا |
| French | فرنسي | France | فرنسا |
| Greek | يوناني | Greece | اليونان |
| لاحظ ما هو آخر حرف للصفات نضيف إليها بـ ness لتتحول إلى أسماء | | | |
| Sick | مريض | Sickness | مرض |
| Dark | مظلم | Darkness | ظلام |
| Weak | ضعيف | Weakness | ضعف (تحالة) |

| Adjective | الصفة | Noun | الاسم |
|--|------------|-------------|---------|
| لاحظ أن الصفات التالية انتهت بـ thy / ry / ny / ky / ty / dy و لتتحول إلى أسماء نحذف حرف y مع بعض التغييرات التي باللون الأخضر | | | |
| Windy | عاصف | Wind | رياح |
| Cloudy | غائم | Cloud | غيوم |
| Sandy | رملِي | Sand | رمل |
| Speedy | سريع | Speed | سرعة |
| Greedy | طماع | Greedy | طمع |
| Muddy | موحل | Mud | وحل |
| Shady | مظلل | Shade | ظلال |
| Tidy | مرتب | Tidiness | ترتيب |
| Misty | مغبر | Mist | غبار |
| Dirty | متسخ | Dirt | وسخ |
| Thirsty | عطشان | Thirst | عطش |
| Dusty | مغبر | Dust | غبار |
| Salty | مملح | salt | ملح |
| Rocky | صخري | Rock | صخرة |
| Lucky | محظوظ | Luck | حظ |
| Rainy | ممطر | Rain | مطر |
| Sunny | مشمس | Sun | شمس |
| Scary | مخيف | Scare | خوف |
| hungry | جائع | hunger | جوع |
| Healthy | صحي | Health | صحة |
| Wealthy | ثري | Wealth | ثروة |
| Spicy | حار - متبل | spices | بهارات |
| للتحويل أسماء الجهات الأربع إلى صفات نضيف ern | | | |
| Eastern | شرقي | East | شرق |
| western | غربي | West | غرب |
| northern | شمالي | North | شمال |
| Southern | جنوبي | South | جنوب |
| لاحظ أن الصفات التالية تنتهي بـ al و لنحولها إلى أسماء نحذفنا al مع بعض التغييرات التي باللون الأخضر | | | |
| Adjectival | نعتي - | Adjective | صفة نعت |
| Verbal | | Verb | فعل |
| Additional | إضافي | Addition | إضافة |
| Educational | تربوي | Education | تربية |
| Prepositional | | Preposition | حرف جر |
| Traditional | تقليدي | Tradition | تقليد |
| Instructional | تعليمي | Instruction | تعليم |
| Adverbial | ظرفي | Adverb | ظرف |
| Partial | جزئي | Part | جزء |
| Industrial | صناعي | Industry | صناعة |

| | | | |
|--|------------|-------------------|-----------|
| Thick | سميك | Thickness | سُمك |
| Kind | رحيم | Kindness | رحمة |
| Tired | متعب | Tiredness | تعب |
| hard | صلب | Hardness | صلابة |
| good | جيد | Goodness | جودة |
| sad | حزين | Sadness | حزن |
| Happy | سعيد | Happiness | سعادة |
| Tidy | مرتب | Tidiness | ترتيب |
| Lazy | كسول | Laziness | كسل |
| Busy | مشغول | Business | شغل (عمل) |
| Friendly | ودود | Friendliness | ود |
| ugly | قبيح | Ugliness | قبح |
| heavy | ثقيل | heaviness | ثقل |
| نضيف إلى الصفات التالية ness لتتحول إلى أسماء | | | |
| Polite | مؤدب | Politeness | أدب |
| Ill | مريض | Illness | مرض |
| Cheap | رخيص | Cheapness | رخص |
| Conscious | واعي | Consciousness | وعي |
| conscientious | بضمير حي | Conscientiousness | حي الضمير |
| لاحظ أن الصفات التالية انتهت بـ ous و لتتحول إلى أسماء حذفنا ous مع بعض التغييرات (باللون الأخضر) | | | |
| Disastrous | كارثي | Disaster | كارثة |
| Mountainous | جبلي | Mountain | جبل |
| Dangerous | خطير | Danger | خطر |
| Adventurous | مغامر | Adventure | مغامرة |
| Desirous | راغب في | Desire | رغبة |
| Famous | مشهور | Fame | شهرة |
| Mysterious | غامض | Mystery | غموض |
| Continuous | مستمر | Continuity | استمرارية |
| Ambitious | طموح | Ambition | طموح |
| Religious | متدين | Religion | ديني |
| الصفات التالية انتهت بـ ful و لتتحول إلى أسماء حذفنا ful | | | |
| Powerful | قوي | Power | قوة |
| Wonderful | رائع | Wonder | روعة |
| Fearful | خائف | Fear | خوف |
| Careful | حذر | Care | حذر |
| Skillful | ماهر | Skill | مهارة |
| Successful | ناجح | Success | نجاح |
| Beautiful | جميل | Beauty | جمال |
| Helpful | مساعد | Help | مساعدة |
| Colourful | ملون | Colour | لون |
| Useful | مفيد- نافع | Use | فائدة |
| Hopeful | متلهف | Hope | أمل |
| الصفات التالية انتهت بـ able و لتتحول إلى أسماء نحذف able مع التركيز على بعض التغييرات (باللون الأخضر) | | | |
| comfortable | مريح | Comfort | راحة |
| valuable | ذو قيمة | Value | قيمة |
| Desirable | مرغوب | Desire | رغبة |
| lovable | محبوب | Love | حب |
| measurable | مقاس | Measurement | قياس |
| enjoyable | ممتع | Enjoyment | متعة |

| | | | |
|--|-----------------|------------------------------|----------------------|
| Special | خاص - خصوصي | Specialist Specialty | متخصص خصوصية |
| Social | اجتماعي | Society | مجتمع |
| Familial | عائلي | Family | عائلة |
| Accidental | عرضي | Accident | حادث |
| Coastal | ساحلي | Coast | ساحل |
| environmental | بيئي | Environment | بيئة |
| experimental | تجريبي | Experiment | تجربة |
| Horizontal | أفقي | Horizon | أفق |
| Agricultural | زراعي | Agriculture | زراعة |
| Natural | طبيعي | Nature | طبيعة |
| Central | مركزي | Center | مركز |
| Neutral | محايد متعادل | Neutralization Neutrality | محايدة تعادل-حياد |
| Tropical | استوائي | Tropic | خط استواء |
| Logical | منطقي | Logic | علم المنطق |
| Chemical | كيميائي | Chemistry | كيمياء |
| Medical | طبي | Medicine | طب (دواء) |
| electrical | كهربائي | Electricity | كهرباء |
| Equal | متساوي | Equality | مساواة |
| Difficult | صعب | Difficulty | صعوبة |
| أضفنا إلى الصفات التالية ity / ty لتتحول إلى أسماء | | | |
| Safe | أمن | Safety | أمان |
| Certain | مؤكد | Certainty | أكيد |
| Active | نشط | Activity | نشاط |
| Familiar | مألوف | Familiarity | ألفة |
| Popular | شعبي | popularity | شعبية |
| Necessary | ضروري | Necessity | ضرورة |
| Humid | رطب | Humidity | رطوبة |
| ما يلي هو أسماء بعض الأشكال و الصفات لها | | | |
| round /circular | دائري | circle | دائرة |
| curved | منحني | curve | منحني |
| square | رباعي | Square | مربع |
| straight | مستقيم | Straight | مستقيم |
| rectangular | مستطيل | rectangle | مستطيل |
| triangular | ثلاثي | triangle | مثلث |
| angular | ذو زاوية | Angle | زاوية |
| لاحظ أن الصفات التالية قد انتهت بـ ed و لتتحول إلى أسماء حذفنا ed ، والبعض الآخر أضفنا إليها ment والبعض أضفنا ion ، sion ، ation ، cation | | | |
| Pointed | محدد | Point | موقع |
| Interested | مهتم | Interest | اهتمام |
| Curved | منحني | Curve | انحناء |
| Worried | قلق | Worry | قلق |
| Deserted | صحراوي | Desert | صحراء |
| Advertised | معلن | Advertisement | إعلان |
| Required | مطلوب | Requirement | متطلب |
| Equipped | مجهز | Equipment | تجهيز |
| Treated | معالج | Treatment | معالجة |
| Excited | مثار | Excitement | إثارة |
| Connected | مرتبط | Connection | ارتباط |
| Polluted | ملوث | Pollution | تلوث |
| Concentrated | مركز | Concentration | تركيز |

| | | | |
|--|------------|---------------------|-------------|
| Applicable | مطبق | Application | تطبيق |
| Considerable | معتبر | Consideration | اعتبار |
| Ignoble | ذئبي | Ignition | دناءة |
| لاحظ أن معظم الصفات التالية تنتهي بـ ible و لتتحول إلى أسماء استبدلنا تلك النهاية بـ ibility | | | |
| Able | قادر | Ability | قدرة |
| possible | محتمل | Possibility | احتمال |
| Visible | مرئي | Visibility | رؤية |
| Responsible | مسئول | Responsibility | مسؤولية |
| الصفات التالية انتهت بـ ic و لتتحول إلى أسماء نحذف ic مع التركيز على بعض التغييرات (باللون الأخضر) | | | |
| Islamic | إسلامي | Islam | إسلام |
| volcanic | بركاني | Volcano | بركان |
| Scientific | علمي | Science | علم |
| Acidic | حمضي | Acid | حمض |
| Photographic | فوتوغرافي | Photograph | فوتوغرافيا |
| Formulaic | مصاغ | Formula | صيغة |
| Energetic | فعال نشيط | Energy | طاقة نشاط |
| Atmospheric | جوي | Atmosphere | جو |
| Epidemic | وبائي | Epidemic | وباء |
| Sulphuric | كبريتي | Sulphur | كبريت |
| الصفات التالية لها أسماء أخرى (لم نستطع إدراجها ضمن مجموعات) | | | |
| Wet | مبلل (رطب) | Wet | بلل (رطوبة) |
| Literate | متقن | Literacy | ثقافة |
| Old | كبير السن | Age | عمر |
| Lost | ضائع | Loss | ضياع خسارة |
| Acidic | حمضي | Acidity-acid | حموضة |
| Alkaline | قلوي | Alkalinity - alkali | قلوية |
| Flowing | متدفق | Flow | تدفق |
| Hot | حار | Heat | حرارة |
| Nuclear | نووي | Nucleus | نواة |
| sour | حامض | Sour | حامض |

| | | | |
|--|--------|---------------|-------------|
| Educated | متعلم | Education | ثقافة |
| Destructed | مدمر | Destruction | دمار |
| Expected | متوقع | Expectation | توقع |
| Qualified | مؤهل | Qualification | اهلية/ مؤهل |
| Organized | منظم | Organization | منظمة |
| Distilled | مقطر | Distillation | تقطير |
| Divided | مقسم | division | تقسيم |
| الصفات التالية انتهت بـ ive و لتتحول إلى أسماء استبدلنا بـ ion | | | |
| Instructive | | Instruction | تعليمات |
| Imaginative | خيالي | Imagination | خيال |
| relative | موصول | relation | صلة |
| informative | مثقف | information | معلومات |
| communicative | | communication | تواصل |
| descriptive | وصفي | description | وصف |
| comparative | مقارنة | comparison | مقارنة |
| لاحظ أننا أضفنا إلى الصفات التالية age لتتحول إلى أسماء | | | |
| Married | متزوج | Marriage | زواج |
| Short | قصير | Shortage | (نقص) |
| الصفات التالية انتهت بـ en و لتتحول إلى أسماء نحذفنا en | | | |
| golden | ذهبي | Gold | ذهب |
| Wooden | خشبي | Wood | خشب |
| Woollen | صوفي | Wool | صوف |

الجدول التالي يحتوي على أفعال و أسماء و صفات

| No. | Verb فعل | Noun اسم | Adjective صفة | No. | Verb فعل | Noun اسم | Adjective صفة |
|-----|----------|----------|---------------|-----|----------|---------------|---------------|
| 1 | Help | Help | Helpful | 61 | Love | Love | Loveable |
| 2 | Hope | Hope | Hopeful | 62 | Desire | Desire | Desirable |
| 3 | Colour | Colour | Colourful | 63 | Collapse | Collapse | Collapsible |
| 4 | Care | Care | Careful | 64 | Change | Change | Changeable |
| 5 | Fear | Fear | Fearful | 65 | Work | Work | Workable |
| 6 | Wonder | Wonder | Wonderful | 66 | Manage | Management | Manageable |
| 7 | Skill | Skill | Skillful | 67 | Drink | Drink | Drinkable |
| 8 | Succeed | Success | Successful | 68 | Suit | Suit | Suitable |
| 9 | Power | Power | Powerful | 69 | Believe | Belief | Believable |
| 10 | Mind | Mind | Mindful | 70 | Enjoy | Enjoyment | Enjoyable |
| 11 | Trust | Trust | Trustful | 71 | Measure | measurement | Measurable |
| | | | | 72 | Measure | Measurement | Measurable |
| 12 | Worry | Worry | Worried | 73 | Move | Movement | Moveable |
| 13 | Exhaust | Exhaust | Exhausted | 74 | Consider | Consideration | Considerable |
| 14 | Interest | Interest | Interested | | | | |
| 15 | Correct | Correct | Corrected | 75 | Clean | Clean | Clean |
| 16 | Control | Control | Controlled | 76 | Clear | Clear | Clear |
| 17 | Desert | Desert | Deserted | 77 | Light | Light | Light |

| | | | | | | | |
|----|-------------|---------------|--------------|-----|-------------|------------------------------|---------------|
| 18 | Damage | Damage | Damaged | 78 | Sound | Sound | Sound |
| 19 | Experience | Experience | Experienced | 79 | Right | Right | Right |
| 20 | Store | Store | Stored | 80 | Surface | Surface | Surface |
| 21 | Dye | Dye | Dyed | 81 | Left | Left | Left |
| | | | | 82 | Right | Right | Right |
| 22 | Pollute | Pollution | Polluted | 83 | Fast | Fast | Fast |
| 23 | Educate | Education | Educated | 84 | Calm down | Calm | Calm |
| 24 | Concentrate | Concentration | Concentrated | | | | |
| 25 | Organize | Organization | Organized | 85 | Communicate | communication | Communicative |
| 26 | Expect | Expectation | Expected | 86 | Describe | Description | Descriptive |
| 27 | Distill | Distillation | Distilled | 87 | Imagine | Imagination | Imaginative |
| 28 | Qualify | Qualification | Qualified | 88 | Inform | Information | Informative |
| 29 | Destroy | Destruction | Destructed | 89 | Compare | Comparison | Comparative |
| 30 | Divide | Division | Divided | | | | |
| | | | | 90 | Cheapen | Cheapness | Cheap |
| | | | | 91 | Sharpen | Sharp | Sharp |
| 31 | Require | Requirement | Required | 92 | Lengthen | Length | Long |
| 32 | Excite | Excitement | Excited | 93 | Strengthen | Strength | Strong |
| 33 | Advertise | Advertisement | Advertised | 94 | Widen | Width | Wide |
| 34 | Improve | Improvement | Improved | 95 | Deepen | Depth | Deep |
| 35 | Engage | Engagement | Engaged | 96 | Shorten | Shortage | Short |
| 36 | Encourage | Encouragement | Encouraged | 97 | Harden | Hardness | Hard |
| 37 | Agree | Agreement | Agreed | 98 | Weaken | Weakness | Weak |
| 38 | Equip | Equipment | Equipped | 99 | Darken | Darkness | Dark |
| 39 | Astonish | Astonishment | Astonished | 100 | Sicken | Sickness | Sick |
| 40 | Treat | Treatment | Treated | 101 | Warm | Warmth | Warm |
| 41 | Develop | Development | Developed | | | | |
| 42 | Injure | Injury | Injured | 102 | Lose | Loss | Lost |
| | | | | 103 | Marry | Marriage | Married |
| 43 | Rain | Rain | Rainy | 104 | Free | Freedom | Free |
| 44 | Dirt | Dirty | Dirty | 105 | Die | Death | Dead |
| 45 | Dust | Dust | Dusty | 106 | Tidy | Tidiness | Tidy |
| 46 | Mist | Mist | Misty | 107 | Affect | Effect | Affected |
| 47 | Cloud | Cloud | Cloudy | 108 | Add | Addition | Additional |
| 48 | Thirst | Thirst | Thirsty | 109 | Naturalize | Naturalization Neutrality | Natural |
| 49 | Wind | Wind | Windy | 110 | Experiment | Experiment | Experimental |
| 50 | Water | Water | Watery | 111 | Govern | Government | Governmental |
| 51 | Salt | Salt | Salty | 112 | Refuse | Refuse | Refusal |
| 52 | Fog | Fog | Foggy | 113 | Instruct | Instruction | Instructional |
| 53 | Sun | Sun | Sunny | 114 | Differ | Difference | Different |
| 54 | Scare | Scare | Scary | 115 | Simplify | Simplified | simple |
| 55 | Taste | Taste | Tasty | 116 | Endanger | Danger | Dangerous |
| 56 | Ice | Ice | Icy | 117 | Enrich | Richness | Rich |
| 57 | Shade | Shade | Shady | 118 | Equalize | Equal/ Equality | Equal |
| 58 | Hunger | Hunger | Hungry | 119 | Clean | Clean / Cleanliness | Clean |
| 59 | Lazy | Laziness | Lazy | 120 | Cross breed | Cross | Cross bred |
| 60 | Busy | Business | Busy | | | | |

Q : Choose the best alternatives : اختار افضل الخيارات :

| | | | | |
|---|--|--------------|--------------|------------|
| 1 | The word (short) is an adjective whose verb is | | | |
| | a short | b shorten | c shortage | d shorts |
| 2 | The word (visible) is an adjective whose noun is | | | |
| | a visible | b visibility | c vision | d b and c |
| 3 | The noun of adjective " polite " | | | |
| | a politer | b impolite | c politeness | d politest |
| 4 | The noun of the verb " move " | | | |
| | a movement | b moveness | c movies | d Nothing |

كيف تصنع أسئلة؟؟ How to Make Questions??

ملحوظة مهمة : إذا فهمت كيف تصنع أسئلة على حسب الكلمات التي تحتها خط ، فهو كاف لتعرف كيف تجيب عن أسئلة القطعة التي تعتبر أكثر سؤال و زاري مهم لا يكاد يخلو منه أي امتحان .

لكي تتأكد من أن السؤال مركب بطريقة صحيحة نتبع الخطوات التالية :

١/ نبدأ أول كلمة في السؤال بحرف كبير (capital) .

٢/ أول كلمة هي كلمة الاستفهام المناسبة التي سيتم شرح كيفية اختيارها في الجداول التالية (What / Where / How / Why / ...)

٣/ و بالنسبة لقواعد تركيب السؤال باستخدام أحد الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة التالية :

1/ verb to be (am / is / are / was / were) 2/ verb to do (do / does / did)

3/ verb to have (has / have / had)

4/ Modal verbs أفعال ناقصة (will / would / can / could / shall / should / may might / must)

فقد تم شرحها بالتفصيل في قسم الأزمنة في هذا الكتاب فقم بالرجوع إليها للتذكير ، فإنها يجب أن تكون مكتوبة بعد كلمة الاستفهام المناسبة ، و بعد كلمة الاستفهام و الفعل المساعد أو الناقص يكتب الفاعل و من ثم تكلمة السؤال .

٤/ ثم لا تنسى أنه يجب أن نضع في آخر السؤال علامة استفهام ؟

ملاحظات هامة جداً : كما أن الخطأ قد يكون في كيفية استبدال الضمانر المناسبة في السؤال و الاجابة كالتالي

١/ إذا بدأت الجملة بالضمير I أو بالضمير we تتحولان في السؤال إلى you

٢/ إذا بدأت الجملة بـ I am تتحول في السؤال إلى are you

٣/ إذا بدأت الجملة بـ I was تتحول في السؤال إلى were you

٤/ إذا جاء في الجملة me تتحول في السؤال إلى you

٥/ إذا جاء في الجملة my أو our تتحولان في السؤال إلى your

٦/ إذا جاء في الجملة never تتحول في السؤال إلى ever

و فيما يلي كلمات الاستفهام و شرح عملها و كيف يتم اختيارها ليصبح السؤال صحيح :

| No. | الكلمة The word | الاستخدام (متى تستخدم) The usage : | أمثلة : Examples : |
|-----|-----------------------------|---|--|
| 1 | Who (من / من الذي) | we use [Who] to ask about people للسؤال عن البشر للفاعل المفرد و الجمع و بالتالي فإن الاجابة عادة ما تبدأ باسم بشر أو ما يدل على أنه بشر | A : Who wrote this poem ? من كتب هذه القصيدة ؟ B : Adel wrote this poem . عادل كتب هذه القصيدة . |
| 2 | Whom (من / من الذي) | للسؤال عن البشر المفعول به المفرد و الجمع أي أن الاجابة ستحتوي على اسم بشر أو ما يدل على أنه بشر عليه في محل (مفعول به) أي أنه بعد الفاعل و الفعل (وجود فعل رئيسي في الاجابة) | A: Whom will you meet tomorrow ? من ستقابل غداً ؟ B : I will meet Adel tomorrow . سأقابل عادل غداً . |
| 3 | Whose (ملك من / لمن) | للسؤال عن الملكية we use (whose) to ask about possession أي أن الاجابة ستحتوي على أحد ضمائر الملكية أو صفات الملكية أو على s الملكية كما في الأمثلة المقابلة . | A :Whose book is it ? لمن (ملك من) الكتاب ؟ B : It's my book .. انه كتابي .. B : It's mine .. (لي) انه ملكي (لي) B : It's All's book انه كتاب علي |
| 4 | Why (لماذا / ما السبب) | We use (why) to talk or ask about the reason . للسؤال عن السبب . بحيث يجب أن تحتوي الاجابة على احدى الكلمات (because) و التي تعني (لأن أو بسبب) أو كلمة (in order to) و التي تعني (لكي) | A : Why did he go to the hospital ? لماذا ذهب إلى المستشفى ؟ B : He went to the hospital because he was sick. لانه مريض. |

| | | | |
|----|--------------------------------|--|--|
| 5 | When (متى) | we use (when) to ask about the time. للسؤال عن الوقت (الزمن) . و بالتالي فإن الاجابة يجب ان تحتوي على وقت (كالساعة) أو كلمات تدل على الزمن | 1/ <u>When</u> do you get up ? متى تستيقظ ؟ I get up at <u>seven o'clock</u> . 2/ <u>When</u> did they go to London ? متى ذهبتم إلى لندن ؟ They went to London <u>in 1995</u> . 3/ <u>When</u> did you see him ? متى رأيته ؟ I saw him <u>last week</u> . رأيتة الاسبوع الماضي . |
| 6 | Where (أين) | We use (where) to talk or ask about places or locations . للسؤال عن الأماكن أو المواقع . و بالتالي فإن الاجابة يجب ان تحتوي على مكان أو موقع محدد أو ظرف مكان . | 1/ <u>Where</u> does he live ? أين يعيش ؟ He <u>lives</u> in Sana'a .. في صنعاء . 2/ <u>Where</u> is your house ? أين هو بيتك ؟ My house is <u>in front of the mosque</u> . بيتي أمام المسجد . |
| 7 | How (كيف) | we use (How) to ask about the manner (الطريقة) , the means and the states (الحالة) للسؤال عن الطريقة أو الوسيلة أو الحالة . و عادة ما تحتوي الاجابة على حال أو صفة | 1/ <u>How</u> was he driving the car ? كيف كان يقود السيارة ؟ He was driving the car <u>recklessly</u> . كان يقود السيارة بتهور . 2 / <u>How</u> are you ? كيف حالك ؟ * I am fine .. أنا بخير .. 3/ <u>How</u> does he look like ? كيف يبدو ؟ He <u>looks like</u> short and slim . كان يبدو قصير و نحيف . |
| 8 | What (ماذا / ما) | للسؤال عن العديد من الأشياء مثل الألوان ، الأشكال ، الأحجام ، الوظائف ، المهن ، الأسماء ، تعاريف ، و للسؤال عن ماذا فعل فلان أو | 1/ <u>What</u> does he like ? ماذا يحب ؟ 2/ <u>What</u> do they grow in Yemen ? ماذا يزرع في اليمن ؟ 3/ <u>What</u> did he visit last week? ما ذلك ؟ 4/ <u>What</u> is that ? 1/ <u>What</u> is his job? ما هو عمله ؟ الاجابات 1- He likes <u>English</u> . 2- They grow <u>coffee and vegetables</u> in Yemen . 3- He visited <u>Sana'a</u> last week 4/ That is a <u>car</u> .. تلك سيارة .. 5/ He is a <u>doctor</u> . انه طبيب . |
| 9 | Which (اي / أي من) | للتخيار بين الأشياء | 1/ <u>Which</u> pen do you want ? أي قلم تريد ؟ 2/ <u>Which</u> car do you choose ? أي سيارة تختار ؟ الاجابات 1/ I want <u>that pen</u> . 2/ I choose <u>this nice car</u> . |
| 10 | نبدأ السؤال بفعل مساعد أو ناقص | الأفعال المساعدة هي أفعال الـ be و هي (am / is / are / have /) و كذلك (do / does / did) و (was / were) و الأفعال الناقصة (Modal verbs) مثل (has / had (will / would / can/ could /) نبدأ السؤال بأحد الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة السابقة (مع العلم أن معناها جميعاً إذا أنت في بداية السؤال (هل)) إذا بدأت الإجابة بـ Yes أو No ، و عليك مراجعة قسم القواعد الخاص بالآزمنة لتعرف كيف تحدد زمن السؤال و كيف يتم تكوينه | 1/ Do you like apples ? هل تحب التفاح ؟ Yes , I do . / No , I don't . 2/ Is he a doctor ? هل هو طبيب ؟ Yes , he is . / No , he isn't . 3/ will you travel tomorrow? هل ستسافر غداً ؟ Yes , I will . / No , I won't . |

و بالنسبة لكلمة الاستفهام (How) و التي يمكن أن تستخدم بمعانٍ مختلفة إذا أتى بعدها كلمات مثل (long / old / high / wide /) :

| | طريقة الأسئلة : | الاجابات |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | How long كم المدة How long have you been studying English? لعدة كم تدرس الانجليزية ؟ | I have been studying English <u>for four years</u> . لعدة أربع سنوات . |
| 2 | How long كم طول 1/ How long is the table ? 2/ How long is it ? | 1/ The table is <u>two meters long</u> . 2/ It is <u>five centimeters long</u> . |
| 3 | How old كم عمر 1/ How old is Ali ? كم عمر علي ؟ 2/ How old are you ? | 1/ Ali is <u>ten years old</u> . ١٠ سنوات 2/ I am <u>ten years old</u> . |
| 4 | How high كم ارتفاع 1/ How high is it ? كم ارتفاعه ؟ 2/ How high is it ? | 1/ It is <u>eight meters high</u> . 2/ It is <u>four centimeters high</u> . |
| 5 | How wide كم عرض 1/ How wide is it ? كم عرضه ؟ | 1/ It is <u>three meters wide</u> . 2/ It is <u>six kilometers wide</u> . |
| 6 | How far كم المسافة أو كم تبعد 1/ How far is it from Sana'a to Taiz ? 2/ How far is it from here to there ? 3/ How far is it to the school ? كم تبعد المدرسة ؟ | 1/ It is <u>three hundred kilometers</u> from Sana'a to Taiz . 2/ It's <u>twenty</u> from here to there . 3/ It is <u>5 kilometers</u> to the school . ٥ كم |

| | | | |
|----|---|---|--|
| 7 | How deep كم عمق | 1/ How deep is the well? كم عمق البئر? 2/ How deep is it? كم عمقها? | 1/ The well is <u>six meters deep</u> . 2/ It is <u>four meters deep</u> . |
| 8 | How tall كم طول | 1/ How tall are you? كم طولك? | 1/ I am <u>1 meter and 56 centimeters</u> . طولي متر و ٥٦ سنتيمتر . |
| 9 | How much كم هذا المبلغ كم (سعر/ ثمن) | 1/ How much are they? 2/ How much is it? 3/ How much does the car cost? | 1/ They are <u>five thousand dollars</u> . 2/ It is <u>six hundred rials</u> . 3/ The car costs <u>ten thousand dollars</u> |
| 10 | How much كم وزن | 1/ How much do you weigh? كم تزن? 2/ How much do it weigh? كم وزنه? | 1/ I weigh <u>70 kilos</u> . . ٧٠ كيلو . 2/ It weigh <u>55 K.G.</u> . ٥٥ كيلوجرام . |
| 11 | How much كم كمية (مع الاسماء غير القابلة للعدد) | 1/ How much sugar do you have? كم كمية السكر الذي لديك? 2/ How much water was in the tank? كم كمية الماء الذي كان في الخزان? | 1/ We have <u>a little sugar</u> . أنا عندي القليل من السكر . 2/ There was <u>too much water</u> in the tank . كان يوجد الكثير من الماء في الخزان |
| 12 | How many كم عدد (مع الاسماء القابلة للعدد) | 1/ How many brothers have you got? كم عدد إخوانك? 2/ How many chairs are in the class? كم عدد الكراسي التي في الفصل? | 1/ I have got <u>three brothers</u> . عندي ثلاثة إخوة . 2/ There are <u>five chairs</u> in the class . يوجد خمسة كراسي في الفصل . |

اختار أفضل الخيارات : Q 1 : Choose the best alternatives :

| | | | | |
|----|---|---|--------------|---------------|
| 1 | A :is the park? a When | B : The park is near the hospital. b <u>Where</u> | c What | d How |
| 2 | A : won the prize? a <u>Who</u> | B : <u>All</u> won the prize. b Whom | c Which | d When |
| 3 | A : do people wear thin clothes? a Who | B : People wear thin clothes <u>in summer</u> . b Whom | c Which | d <u>When</u> |
| 4 | A :does it cost? a How old | B : It costs <u>2000 rials</u> . b <u>How much</u> | c How many | d How long |
| 5 | A :house is that? a <u>Whose</u> | B : That is <u>Ali's house</u> . b Whom | c Which | d Who |
| 6 | A : did they come? a Where | B : They came <u>yesterday</u> . b <u>When</u> | c Why | d Who |
| 7 | A : colour is Abdullah car? a Where | B : Abdullah's car is <u>red</u> . b <u>what</u> | c Why | d Who |
| 8 | A : did he go to the doctor yesterday? B : He went to the doctor yesterday <u>because he was sick</u> . a Where | b what | c <u>Why</u> | d Who |
| 9 | A :she write her homework every day? B : <u>No</u> . She does not write her homework every day. a Do | b <u>Does</u> | c Did | d What |
| 10 | A : is the opposite of lazy? a Where | B : The opposite of lazy is <u>hardworking</u> . b <u>What</u> | c Who | d Why |
| 11 | A : What he buy last night? a do | B : He bought a new car <u>last night</u> . b <u>did</u> | c will | d is |
| 12 | A : What you buy from the supermarket? a do | B : I will buy milk from the supermarket. b <u>will</u> | c are | d does |

Section three

القسم الثالث

تمارين متنوعة بالطريقة الوزارية الجديدة (الأتمتة) تم تجميعها من العديد من الامتحانات الوزارية

Q2 : Choose the best alternatives :

| | | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|---|-----------|---|-----------|---|---------------|---|----------|
| 1 | A:does sound travel ? B: As waves . | a | How | b | Why | c | Which | d | What |
| 2 | Where isdictionary ? | a | you | b | your | c | yourself | d | yours |
| 3 | These chairs are | a | me | b | I | c | my | d | mine |
| 4 | They sawyesterday . | a | him | b | he | c | himself | d | he is |
| 5 | Khalid fixed the car | a | heself | b | hisself | c | himself | d | Herself |
| 6 |need you now . | a | We | b | Our | c | Us | d | Ours |
| 7 | This is the mantaught me English . | a | who | b | whom | c | which | d | whose |
| 8 | I remember the dayI got married . | a | whom | b | why | c | which | d | When |
| 9 | We saw the personhair is white . | a | who | b | whom | c | which | d | whose |
| 10 | That is the dogbit Ahmed . | a | who | b | whom | c | which | d | whose |
| 11 | Do it | a | myself | b | himself | c | herself | d | yourself |
| 12 | The students.....you taught last year are from Taiz . | a | who | b | whom | c | which | d | whose |
| 13 | This is the institute I studied . | a | where | b | whom | c | which | d | whose |
| 14 | That is book..... I bought from the bookshop . | a | who | b | whom | c | which | d | whose |
| 15 | A :book is it ? B : Nashwan's book . | a | Who | b | How | c | Whose | d | Where |
| 16 | A : Whatare they ? B: They are small . | a | size | b | shape | c | colour | d | Long |
| 17 | A: Howis this car ? B: five thousand dollars . | a | many | b | much | c | far | d | Long |
| 18 | He is asas his friend . | a | young | b | youth | c | Younger | d | taller |
| 19 | They can run | a | fastly | b | fast | c | fasting | d | Fastest |
| 20 | The compound word is | a | advantage | b | newspaper | c | International | d | slowly |
| 21 | She is | a | Japan | b | a Japan | c | Japanese | d | Yemen |
| 22 | The word (knowledge) is | | | | | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|----------------|---|----------------|---|----------------|---|----------------|
| | a | a verb | b | a noun | c | an adjective | d | an adverb |
| 23 | The word (midyear) has | | | | | | | |
| | a | a prefix | b | a suffix | c | both | d | No answer |
| 24 | The compound word is | | | | | | | |
| | a | marketing | b | ploughing | c | hardworking | d | necessary |
| 25 | A group of letters that goes at the beginning of a word . | | | | | | | |
| | a | prefix | b | suffix | c | Stem | d | |
| 26 | Is to combine or join two nouns to make a new word . | | | | | | | |
| | a | compound words | b | synonyms | c | suffixes | d | |
| 27 | A house made of snow . | | | | | | | |
| | a | kayak | b | igloo | c | Arctic | d | |
| 28 | The word (Unbelievable) has | | | | | | | |
| | a | a prefix | b | a suffix | c | both | d | |
| 29 | The compound word is | | | | | | | |
| | a | friendship | b | relationship | c | Spaceship | d | freedom |
| 30 | She is the sameas Fatima . | | | | | | | |
| | a | old | b | age | c | older | d | oldest |
| 31 | I'd likeat home . | | | | | | | |
| | a | to stay | b | stayed | c | staying | d | studies |
| 32 | I heard him | | | | | | | |
| | a | crying | b | is crying | c | cries | d | was crying |
| 33 | I look forward toyou . | | | | | | | |
| | a | meet | b | met | c | meeting | d | meets |
| 34 | This is the manhelped me yesterday . | | | | | | | |
| | a | who | b | whom | c | which | d | Whose |
| 35 | She isthan her sister. | | | | | | | |
| | a | beautiful | b | more beautiful | c | most beautiful | d | much beautiful |
| 36 | He is thestudent in the class . | | | | | | | |
| | a | good | b | better | c | best | d | worse |
| 37 | He drove the carand faster . | | | | | | | |
| | a | faster | b | fast | c | fastest | d | fastly |
| 38 | He fixed the car | | | | | | | |
| | a | myself | b | himself | c | herself | d | yourself |
| 39 | (Recklessly) is | | | | | | | |
| | a | noun | b | adjective | c | adverb | d | Verb |
| 40 | We know | | | | | | | |
| | a | they | b | their | c | them | d | We |
| 41 | Do it | | | | | | | |
| | a | myself | b | itself | c | yourself | d | themselves |
| 42 | I fixed the car | | | | | | | |
| | a | myself | b | itself | c | yourself | d | themselves |
| 43 | He canhis homework alone . | | | | | | | |
| | a | do | b | make | c | did | d | made |
| 44 | She willtea . | | | | | | | |
| | a | do | b | make | c | did | d | made |
| 45 | Theyto swim . | | | | | | | |
| | a | can | b | able | c | are able | d | Can't |
| 46 | He cana camel . | | | | | | | |
| | a | get on | b | get in | c | embark | d | ride |
| 47 | The word (.....) can be both a verb and noun . | | | | | | | |
| | a | homeful | b | appearance | c | milk- | d | lovely |
| 48 | They have gotmoney . | | | | | | | |

| | a | a number of | b | a group of | c | a pair of | d | amount of |
|----|---|---|---|--|---|--------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------|
| 49 | The contract of (I would) is | | | | | | | |
| | a | I'll | b | I've | c | I'm | d | I'd |
| 50 | These books are | | | | | | | |
| | a | me | b | mine | c | my | d | myself |
| 51 | We would likeat home . | | | | | | | |
| | a | stay | b | to stay | c | staying | d | to staying |
| 52 | We need Khalid for | | | | | | | |
| | a | necessary | b | necessaries | c | necessarily | d | necessity |
| 53 | They prefer | | | | | | | |
| | a | swim | b | to swim | c | swimming | d | b and c |
| 54 | They saw threeover there . | | | | | | | |
| | a | mouse | b | mouses | c | mice | d | mices |
| 55 | I look forward toyou in the near future . | | | | | | | |
| | a | meeting | b | meet | c | meating | d | met |
| 56 | The boys are interested in T.V . | | | | | | | |
| | a | watch | b | watches | c | watched | d | watching |
| 57 | Would you mindme , please ? | | | | | | | |
| | a | help | b | helping | c | help | d | helping |
| 58 | Would you likewith us ? | | | | | | | |
| | a | to come | b | come | c | came | d | coming |
| 59 | I felt somethingbehind me . | | | | | | | |
| | a | moves | b | moving | c | moved | d | is moving |
| 60 | They always watch this channel . This sentence is positive whose negative sentence is | | | | | | | |
| | a | They didn't always watch this channel . | b | They never always watch this channel . | c | They not always watch this channel . | d | They never watch this channel . |
| 61 | The word well-dressed and scruffy are | | | | | | | |
| | a | prefixes | b | synonyms | c | suffixes | d | antonyms |
| 62 | He doesn't have pens , does he | | | | | | | |
| | a | . | b | ? | c | ! | d | , |
| 63 | What a beautiful girl | | | | | | | |
| | a | . | b | ? | c | ! | d | , |
| 64 | He is excellent at English , isn't he | | | | | | | |
| | a | . | b | ? | c | ! | d | , |
| 65 | Can you help meplease ? | | | | | | | |
| | a | . | b | ? | c | ! | d | , |
| 66 | The wordhas a silent letter . | | | | | | | |
| | a | open | b | photo | c | knife | d | window |
| 67 | He isin sports . | | | | | | | |
| | a | interest | b | interests | c | interested | d | interesting |
| 68 | The uncountable noun is | | | | | | | |
| | a | luggage | b | job | c | story | d | wife |
| 69 | This is his | | | | | | | |
| | a | able | b | ables | c | enable | d | ability |
| 70 | Abdullah is | | | | | | | |
| | a | ambitious | b | ambition | c | adventure | d | |
| 71 | He is a | | | | | | | |
| | a | sing | b | singer | c | song | d | singing |
| 72 | Be | | | | | | | |
| | a | polite | b | polltely | c | polites | d | politeness |
| 73 | She is | | | | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|----------------|---|------------------|---|------------------|---|---------------------|
| | a | tall woman | b | a woman tall | c | a tall woman | d | a tall women |
| 74 | His hair is as short as | | | | | | | |
| | a | you | b | your | c | yours | d | yourself |
| 75 | The word (short) is an adjective whose verb is | | | | | | | |
| | a | short | b | shorten | c | shortage | d | shorts |
| 76 | The word (visible) is an adjective whose noun is | | | | | | | |
| | a | visible | b | visibility | c | vision | d | b and c |
| 77 | The compound word is | | | | | | | |
| | a | good | b | friendship | c | headache | d | experience |
| 78 | The <u>abbreviation</u> of work Experience opportunity is | | | | | | | |
| | a | EOW | b | WOE | c | WEO | d | OEW |
| 79 | The chemical formula of water is | | | | | | | |
| | a | H ₂ | b | H ₂ O | c | O ₂ H | d | ca(OH) ₂ |
| 80 | The word remarkable has | | | | | | | |
| | a | prefix | b | suffix | c | both | d | nothing |
| 81 | The word quickly has | | | | | | | |
| | a | prefix | b | suffix | c | both | d | nothing |
| 82 | The word enlarge has | | | | | | | |
| | a | prefix | b | suffix | c | both | d | nothing |
| 83 | The opposite of boiling is | | | | | | | |
| | a | freezing | b | harvest | c | grate | d | grind |
| 84 | The antonym of valuable is | | | | | | | |
| | a | expensive | b | cheap | c | costly | d | precious |
| 85 | The synonym of risk is | | | | | | | |
| | a | danger | b | hanger | c | hunger | d | burger |
| 86 | The plural of knife is | | | | | | | |
| | a | knifes | b | knifs | c | knives | d | knifves |
| 87 | The singular of mice is | | | | | | | |
| | a | mouse | b | mice | c | mouses | d | mices |
| 88 | The infinitive of caught is | | | | | | | |
| | a | caught | b | catch | c | caughted | d | caughting |
| 89 | The past of crossbreed is | | | | | | | |
| | a | crossbred | b | crossbreed | c | crossbreded | d | cross |
| 90 | The past participle of find is | | | | | | | |
| | a | find | b | finded | c | found | d | founded |
| 91 | I'd prefervolleyball . | | | | | | | |
| | a | to play | b | play | c | playing | d | plays |
| 92 | Mr. Ahmedyou now . | | | | | | | |
| | a | believe | b | is believing | c | believes | d | believed |
| 93 | It began | | | | | | | |
| | a | raining | b | to rain | c | a and b | d | rainy |
| 94 | Fatima heard them | | | | | | | |
| | a | are crying | b | crying | c | cried | d | cries |
| 95 | We need him for | | | | | | | |
| | a | necessity | b | necessary | c | necessarily | d | nothing |
| 96 | He isswim . | | | | | | | |
| | a | capable of | b | able to | c | can | d | able |
| 97 | There is no point in | | | | | | | |
| | a | shout | b | shouted | c | shouting | d | shouts |
| 98 | Would you mindus ? | | | | | | | |
| | a | visiting | b | to visit | c | visited | d | |
| 99 | she will bea jacket . | | | | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----|--|-------------|---|--------------|---|----------------|---|------------|
| | a | wear | b | wore | c | wearing | d | wears |
| 100 | We don't know | | | | | | | |
| | a | they | b | their | c | them | d | we |
| 101 | How aboutfish ? | | | | | | | |
| | a | eating | b | to eat | c | eaten | d | eats |
| 102 | My car is as fast as | | | | | | | |
| | a | you | b | your | c | yours | d | his |
| 103 | These are | | | | | | | |
| | a | me | b | mine | c | myself | d | my |
| 104 | There he | | | | | | | |
| | a | go | b | goes | c | went | d | going |
| 105 | The newsgood today . | | | | | | | |
| | a | is | b | are | c | was | d | were |
| 106 | Itbe a coin . I'm sure . | | | | | | | |
| | a | could | b | might | c | must | d | could |
| 107 | Would you mind if Iearly ? | | | | | | | |
| | a | coming | b | come | c | came | d | comes |
| 108 | Would you likeabroad ? | | | | | | | |
| | a | to travel | b | travelling | c | travel | d | |
| 109 | Do it | | | | | | | |
| | a | myself | b | yourself | c | himself | d | my |
| 110 | He looks forward toyou . | | | | | | | |
| | a | meet | b | meeting | c | meat | d | met |
| 111 | He is good atwith people . | | | | | | | |
| | a | deal | b | dealt | c | dealing | d | deals |
| 112 | What a nice car | | | | | | | |
| | a | . | b | ! | c | ? | d | , |
| 113 |is a poetess . | | | | | | | |
| | a | She | b | His father | c | My nephew | d | He |
| 114 | No-oneher . | | | | | | | |
| | a | know | b | known | c | knows | d | knowes |
| 115 | This is your | | | | | | | |
| | a | responsible | b | responsibles | c | responsibility | d | nothing |
| 116 | This lesson is | | | | | | | |
| | a | interest | b | interested | c | interesting | d | interests |
| 117 | This teacher is | | | | | | | |
| | a | interest | b | interested | c | interesting | d | interests |
| 118 | Don't be | | | | | | | |
| | a | angry | b | angrily | c | anger | d | angryly |
| 119 | They are | | | | | | | |
| | a | polite | b | politely | c | politeness | d | politement |
| 120 | You can't see far on a.....day . | | | | | | | |
| | a | fog | b | mist | c | foggy | d | rainy |
| 121 | Look at | | | | | | | |
| | a | Sun | b | a Sun | c | the Sun | d | an sun |
| 122 | Smoking leads to | | | | | | | |
| | a | die | b | dead | c | death | d | dies |
| 123 | She cooked the lunch | | | | | | | |
| | a | her | b | herself | c | she | d | himself |
| 124 |Abdullah , Ali isn't ready for the exam . | | | | | | | |
| | a | same | b | Like | c | Unlike | d | liking |
| 125 | He must beIf he wants to be good . | | | | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----|---|-----------|---|----------------|---|----------------|---|-------------|
| | a | confident | b | confidence | c | | d | |
| 126 | It is the sameas this well . | | | | | | | |
| | a | wide | b | width | c | widely | d | wider |
| 127 | You must showIf you want to achieve it . | | | | | | | |
| | a | confident | b | confidence | c | confide | d | confidently |
| 128 | He felt | | | | | | | |
| | a | exhaust | b | exhausted | c | exhausting | d | exhausts |
| 129 | Khalid is as.....as Ahmed . | | | | | | | |
| | a | strong | b | strength | c | stronger | d | strongest |
| 130 | Have youvisited it before ? | | | | | | | |
| | a | never | b | lever | c | ever | d | been |
| 131 | He is a | | | | | | | |
| | a | sing | b | song | c | singer | d | sings |
| 132 | He isyou . | | | | | | | |
| | a | such as | b | for example | c | like | d | liked |
| 133 | Heris very weak . | | | | | | | |
| | a | see | b | seen | c | saw | d | sight |
| 134 | He is asas his brother . | | | | | | | |
| | a | tall | b | taller | c | tallest | d | a tall |
| 135 | Arwa is as.....as Fatima . | | | | | | | |
| | a | beautiful | b | more beautiful | c | most beautiful | d | beauty |
| 136 | This man is asas that man . | | | | | | | |
| | a | patient | b | patience | c | patiently | d | patient |
| 137 | It is the sameas that one . | | | | | | | |
| | a | deep | b | depth | c | deeper | d | deepest |
| 138 | It is the sameas this chair . | | | | | | | |
| | a | beautiful | b | more beautiful | c | most beautiful | d | beauty |
| 139 | He is the sameas Nashwan . | | | | | | | |
| | a | old | b | eld | c | age | d | older |
| 140 | She is the sameas her sister . | | | | | | | |
| | a | able | b | ables | c | ability | d | unable |
| 141 | This lesson is the sameas yesterday's lesson . | | | | | | | |
| | a | important | b | importance | c | importantly | d | importants |
| 142 | It is asas that well . | | | | | | | |
| | a | higher | b | height | c | highly | d | high |
| 143 | You must showif you want to be an excellent student . | | | | | | | |
| | a | patient | b | patience | c | patiently | d | patients |
| 144 | He has to show | | | | | | | |
| | a | confident | b | confidence | c | confidently | d | confidents |
| 145 | He must be | | | | | | | |
| | a | polite | b | politely | c | politeness | d | polites |
| 146 | Ask Aliyou . | | | | | | | |
| | a | help | b | helping | c | to help | d | helps |
| 147 | Tell himthe door . | | | | | | | |
| | a | open | b | opens | c | opening | d | to open |
| 148 | Have the boy | | | | | | | |
| | a | move | b | moves | c | to move | d | movement |
| 149 | Get Arwaearly . | | | | | | | |
| | a | to come | b | come | c | came | d | comes |
| 150 | Ali isthan Abdullah . | | | | | | | |
| | a | short | b | a short | c | shorter | d | shortest |
| 151 | She must beof herself . | | | | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----|---|-------------|---|------------------|---|-----------------|---|-------------------|
| | a | confident | b | confidence | c | confidently | d | confidents |
| 152 | Hana'a isthan her sister . | | | | | | | |
| | a | beautiful | b | more beautiful | c | most beautiful | d | beauty |
| 153 | English isthan Arabic . | | | | | | | |
| | a | easy | b | easier | c | more easy | d | easier |
| 154 | Mohammed is theman in his family . | | | | | | | |
| | a | tall | b | taller | c | tallest | d | a tall |
| 155 | I becomeandworried . | | | | | | | |
| | a | more / more | b | most / most | c | most / more | d | more / most |
| 156 | He droveand | | | | | | | |
| | a | fast / fast | b | faster / fastest | c | faster / faster | d | fastest / fastest |
| 157 | It is thecity in Yemen . | | | | | | | |
| | a | wonderful | b | more wonderful | c | most wonderful | d | wonderfulest |
| 158 | I can smell something | | | | | | | |
| | a | burning | b | burnt | c | is burning | d | is burn |
| 159 | He felt something | | | | | | | |
| | a | to move | b | moves | c | movement | d | moving |
| 160 | We heard her | | | | | | | |
| | a | to cay | b | cried | c | crying | d | is crying |
| 161 | I saw him | | | | | | | |
| | a | runs | b | to run | c | are running | d | running |
| 162 | The deeper the water , thethe pressure . | | | | | | | |
| | a | great | b | greater | c | greatest | d | greating |
| 163 | The further you go down , theyour ears hurt . | | | | | | | |
| | a | most | b | more | c | much | d | many |
| 164 | Would you likehere ? | | | | | | | |
| | a | come | b | coming | c | to come | d | to coming |
| 165 | I'd hate | | | | | | | |
| | a | smoke | b | smoking | c | to smoke | d | to smoking |
| 166 | There is no | | | | | | | |
| | a | help | b | helpful | c | helpless | d | Helplessly |
| 167 | He is a student, ? | | | | | | | |
| | a | is he | b | does he | c | isn't he | d | doesn't |
| 168 | They aren't teachers , ? | | | | | | | |
| | a | are they | b | aren't they | c | aren't we | d | aren't you |
| 169 | He helps his father dally , ? | | | | | | | |
| | a | is he | b | does he | c | isn't he | d | doesn't he |
| 170 | They bought a car yesterday , ? | | | | | | | |
| | a | don't they | b | didn't they | c | haven't they | d | aren't they |
| 171 | I'm looking forward to From you soon . | | | | | | | |
| | a | hear | b | heard | c | hearing | d | heared |
| 172 | Mohammed is the student gets the best marks . | | | | | | | |
| | a | which | b | who | c | when | d | where |
| 173 | She cut with knife . | | | | | | | |
| | a | himself | b | herself | c | myself | d | themselves |
| 174 | My sister is the same as her uncle . | | | | | | | |
| | a | old | b | age | c | older | d | oldest |
| 175 | The noun of the adjective " polite " | | | | | | | |
| | a | politer | b | impolite | c | politeness | d | |
| 176 | It is a compound word . | | | | | | | |
| | a | experiment | b | newspaper | c | beautiful | d | taller |
| 177 | If you want to be a policeman , you must show | | | | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----|---------------------------------------|------------|---|-----------|---|---------|---|----------|
| | a | confidence | b | confident | c | colour | d | handsome |
| 178 | The prefix in the word "unbelievable" | | | | | | | |
| | a | un | b | able | c | le | d | nothing |
| 179 | The noun of the verb "move" | | | | | | | |
| | a | movement | b | moveness | c | movies | d | nothing |
| 180 | He spoke to me | | | | | | | |
| | a | angry | b | angrily | c | angryly | d | nothing |

وفيما يلي فقرات مستخرجة من امتحانات عام ٢٠٢٣

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|--|------------|---|------------|---|----------------|---|----------------|
| 1 | I will haveEnglish class next week. | | | | | | | |
| | a | a | b | an | c | | d | some |
| 2 | The manager willa meeting at 10:00 a.m. | | | | | | | |
| | a | has | b | have | c | had | d | having |
| 3 | Before theyto bed, they had done their homework. | | | | | | | |
| | a | go | b | went | c | gone | d | going |
| 4 | I wish Iswim. | | | | | | | |
| | a | can | b | will | c | could | d | shall |
| 5 | Sameer did notthe school party. | | | | | | | |
| | a | like | b | likes | c | liked | d | liking |
| 6 | Shepiano since she was eight years old. | | | | | | | |
| | a | plays | b | has played | c | playing | d | played |
| 7 | English subject is not asas Mathematics. | | | | | | | |
| | a | difficulty | b | difficult | c | more difficult | d | less difficult |
| 8 |Nader is tall , his brothers are not. | | | | | | | |
| | a | therefore | b | because | c | so | d | whereas |
| 9 | There isn'tmilk in the fridge. | | | | | | | |
| | a | some | b | a | c | the | d | any |
| 10 | Salem is thestudent in the class. | | | | | | | |
| | a | tall | b | short | c | taller | d | tallest |
| 11 | Samsung mobile isexpensive than IPHones. | | | | | | | |
| | a | less | b | little | c | many | d | least |
| 12 | He failed the examsthey were difficult. | | | | | | | |
| | a | but | b | so | c | and | d | because |
| 13 | She alwaysbreakfast at 7:30 every day. | | | | | | | |
| | a | has | b | has not | c | have | d | had |
| 14 | The Minister of Educationvisit our school tomorrow. | | | | | | | |
| | a | is to | b | are to | c | will to | d | was to |
| 15 | In Islam , parents must be treatedby sons and daughters. | | | | | | | |
| | a | polite | b | politeness | c | politest | d | politely |
| 16 |the mobile most of the time will hurt your eyes. | | | | | | | |
| | a | use | b | used | c | usage | d | using |
| 17 | If she has enough money , shea new car. | | | | | | | |
| | a | buys | b | will buy | c | would buy | d | buying |
| 18 | The farmerworking on the farm since 2010. | | | | | | | |
| | a | has been | b | have been | c | have | d | has |
| 19 | The hotel cannotfrom faraway. | | | | | | | |
| | a | see | b | being seen | c | be seen | d | been seen |
| 20 | Howpower do the electricity provide? | | | | | | | |
| | a | many | b | much | c | more | d | most |
| 21 | Yemen produces grapesIraq produces dates. | | | | | | | |
| | a | however | b | whereas | c | although | d | however |
| 22 |and more people are coming. | | | | | | | |
| | a | many | b | much | c | most | d | more |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|--------------|---|-----------|---|--------------|---|-------------|
| 23 | Hean accident last Friday. | | | | | | | |
| | a | see | b | saw | c | sees | d | seeing |
| 24 | My room is not asas your room. | | | | | | | |
| | a | large | b | larger | c | largely | d | largest |
| 25 | They bought a car after they.....it. | | | | | | | |
| | a | have checked | b | checking | c | had checked | d | check |
| 26 | The wall of mistto disappear at noon. | | | | | | | |
| | a | is | b | will | c | are | d | going to |
| 27 | The thief was very | | | | | | | |
| | a | scare | b | care | c | scared | d | carelessly |
| 28 | Two men.....rescued from the car accident yesterday. | | | | | | | |
| | a | is | b | are | c | was | d | were |
| 29 | They areprepare the party food. | | | | | | | |
| | a | go | b | goes | c | going to | d | gone |
| 30 | The boys ran in the streets,to catch the bus. | | | | | | | |
| | a | tries | b | to try | c | tried | d | trying |
| 31 | Jalal isn't as.....as his friend. | | | | | | | |
| | a | fast | b | faster | c | fastness | d | fastest |
| 32 | A forest isthan a wood. | | | | | | | |
| | a | small | b | large | c | larger | d | largest |
| 33 | After hehis lunch, he went to do his homework. | | | | | | | |
| | a | eat | b | eating | c | had eaten | d | eats |
| 34 | The form has to bein and returned. | | | | | | | |
| | a | fills | b | filling | c | fill | d | filled |
| 35 | He gave me.....piece of advice. | | | | | | | |
| | a | a | b | an | c | the | d | |
| 36 | All Yemeni people would prefer tothe war. | | | | | | | |
| | a | stop | b | stops | c | stopped | d | stopping |
| 37 |sandwiches that my mother makes are delicious. | | | | | | | |
| | a | a | b | an | c | the | d | |
| 38 | Those two buildings areheight. | | | | | | | |
| | a | as | b | unlike | c | like | d | the same |
| 39 | The farmer turnsthe soil with his tractor. | | | | | | | |
| | a | over | b | on | c | up | d | above |
| 40 |Waleed was sick, he played football with his brother. | | | | | | | |
| | a | as well | b | therefore | c | although | d | because |
| 41 | He never.....what's up on Fridays. | | | | | | | |
| | a | use | b | uses | c | used | d | using |
| 42 | Two unitsby Ali last week. | | | | | | | |
| | a | studied | b | studies | c | were studied | d | are studied |
| 43 | You haveremove the scales of the fish before cooking. | | | | | | | |
| | a | on | b | of | c | to | d | in |
| 44 | Theflood took place in Sudan in 2010. | | | | | | | |
| | a | bad | b | worst | c | worse | d | badly |
| 45 | Smallpox isepidemic. | | | | | | | |
| | a | a | b | an | c | the | d | some |
| 46 |Ashraf plays football, his brother doesn't. | | | | | | | |
| | a | Whereas | b | However | c | Also | d | Therefore |
| 47 | She wasT.V when she heard the striking news. | | | | | | | |
| | a | watch | b | watches | c | watched | d | watching |
| 48 | He lives beside his company,he reaches work early. | | | | | | | |
| | a | because | b | however | c | therefore | d | also |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|--------------|---|--------------|---|---------------|---|------------------|
| 49 | In yesterday's crash, three men wereinjured. | | | | | | | |
| | a | bad | b | badly | c | worse | d | worst |
| 50 | If the restaurant is clean, Iwith my family. | | | | | | | |
| | a | would go | b | could go | c | will go | d | go |
| 51 | I wish Ilearn French. | | | | | | | |
| | a | could | b | can | c | will | d | shall |
| 52 | The strongest earthquakein Dhamar in 1982. | | | | | | | |
| | a | has happened | b | happened | c | happens | d | happening |
| 53 | He is a veryrunner. | | | | | | | |
| | a | well | b | quick | c | quickly | d | slowly |
| 54 | Howwater is there in the tanker? | | | | | | | |
| | a | more | b | little | c | much | d | many |
| 55 | Both students have the same..... | | | | | | | |
| | a | intelligent | b | intelligence | c | intelligently | d | more intelligent |
| 56 | The camel is thepatient animal. | | | | | | | |
| | a | less | b | more | c | little | d | most |
| 57 | His family has a house in Sana'ato another one in Aden. | | | | | | | |
| | a | too | b | however | c | in addition | d | because |
| 58 | If Ia scholarship, I could study medicine abroad. | | | | | | | |
| | a | get | b | gets | c | got | d | getting |
| 59 | Most of the victims of the earthquake in Turkey were | | | | | | | |
| | a | rescue | b | rescued | c | rescuing | d | rescues |
| 60 | They have beenfrom the storms for many years. | | | | | | | |
| | a | suffering | b | suffer | c | suffers | d | sufferer |
| 61 | Theyup late yesterday for school. | | | | | | | |
| | a | get | b | got | c | getting | d | gotten |
| 62 | We arethe news about the recent earthquake. | | | | | | | |
| | a | watch | b | watched | c | watches | d | watching |
| 63 | Scientistsa new robot in the future. | | | | | | | |
| | a | invent | b | invents | c | will invent | d | invented |
| 64 | Could youthese sentences? | | | | | | | |
| | a | complete | b | completed | c | Completely | d | completes |
| 65 | Before he left, Ihim a lot of questions. | | | | | | | |
| | a | had asked | b | asks | c | ask | d | asking |
| 66 | Dana won'tthe exams, because she didn't study well. | | | | | | | |
| | a | pass | b | passes | c | passed | d | passing |
| 67 | Dealwith those kids. | | | | | | | |
| | a | soft | b | softly | c | softer | d | softness |
| 68 | She neverthe answer. | | | | | | | |
| | a | know | b | knew | c | knowing | d | knows |
| 69 | Animals areinto families. | | | | | | | |
| | a | classify | b | classified | c | classifying | d | |
| 70 | Sameer isof giving up his work. | | | | | | | |
| | a | think | b | thinks | c | thinking | d | thought |
| 71 | We don't havetime to finish the assignment. | | | | | | | |
| | a | many | b | few | c | some | d | any |
| 72 | My friend always gets thescores. | | | | | | | |
| | a | good | b | best | c | better | d | less |
| 73 | Ahmed's hair is asas mine. | | | | | | | |
| | a | long | b | longer | c | length | d | lengthen |
| 74 | After heuniversity, he worked as a doctor. | | | | | | | |
| | a | finish | b | had finished | c | finishes | d | finishing |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|--|-----------------|---|-------------|---|--------------|---|---------------|
| 75 | We are interested inEnglish. | | | | | | | |
| | a | speak | b | speaks | c | speaking | d | spoke |
| 76 | Ahmed was bornApril 29th. | | | | | | | |
| | a | in | b | on | c | at. | d | of |
| 77 |he was sick, he went to work. | | | | | | | |
| | a | but | b | because | c | so | d | although |
| 78 | The fence of our house is | | | | | | | |
| | a | high | b | higher | c | highly | d | highest |
| 79 | Nursesafter patients in hospital. | | | | | | | |
| | a | look | b | looks | c | looking | d | |
| 80 | My son hashis father's car since 2020. | | | | | | | |
| | a | driving | b | drives | c | drove | d | been driving |
| 81 | She wishes that shea black car. | | | | | | | |
| | a | has | b | have | c | had | d | having |
| 82 | He is asas a horse. | | | | | | | |
| | a | strong | b | strength | c | strengthen | d | stronger |
| 83 | The thick fog islater this afternoon. | | | | | | | |
| | a | clear | b | cleared | c | to clear | d | clears |
| 84 | While hea lorry, he hit an old man. | | | | | | | |
| | a | was driving | b | is driving | c | drove | d | driving |
| 85 |colder the winter, the heavier clothes we wear. | | | | | | | |
| | a | a | b | an | c | the | d | |
| 86 | He is rich and generous, | | | | | | | |
| | a | therefore | b | as well | c | as well as | d | whereas |
| 87 | Grainsin Yemen these days. | | | | | | | |
| | a | grow | b | grows | c | grew | d | are grown |
| 88 | Sheher homework yet. | | | | | | | |
| | a | hasn't finished | b | finished | c | has finished | d | have finished |
| 89 | The Red Sea isn't asas the Atlantic Ocean. | | | | | | | |
| | a | big | b | smaller | c | bigger | d | biggest |
| 90 | When she came home yesterday, her motherlunch. | | | | | | | |
| | a | cooked | b | was cooking | c | is cooking | d | were cooking |
| 91 | Sheto Cairo next week. | | | | | | | |
| | a | is travelling | b | travels | c | travel | d | traveling |
| 92 | Do we havesugar left? | | | | | | | |
| | a | some | b | many | c | any | d | few |
| 93 | After theytheir homework, they watched T.V. | | | | | | | |
| | a | had done | b | do | c | are doing | d | done |
| 94 | To be a teacher, you must show | | | | | | | |
| | a | confidence | b | confident | c | confidently | d | |

تمارين : Exercises

اختر أفضل الخيارات : Choose the best alternatives : Q

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|---|-------|---|---------|---|-------------|---|----------|
| 1 | I wish I him | a | see | b | saw | c | seen | d | sees |
| 2 | They wish hemoney. | a | has | b | have | c | had | d | having |
| 3 | She wishes they.....swim. | a | will | b | can | c | shall | d | could |
| 4 | He wishes heaccounting in college. | a | study | b | studies | c | has studied | d | studying |
| 5 | I wish Ia bird. | a | am | b | are | c | was | d | were |
| 6 | I wish Italler. | a | am | b | are | c | was | d | were |

| | | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|---|--------------|---|-----------------|---|-------------------|---|------------------|
| 1 | Thousands of carsevery year. | a | are produced | b | produced | c | were producing | d | producing |
| 2 | The computer storein our neighborhood last night. | a | were robbing | b | robbed | c | had robbed | d | was robbed |
| 3 | The parknext week. | a | cleans | b | will be cleaned | c | have been cleaned | d | was cleaned |
| 4 | Bananasin Yemen. | a | are grow | b | are growing | c | are grown | d | are grew |
| 5 | A letterbeen sent to Ali. | a | has | b | was | c | have | d | will |
| 6 | Let the door be | a | open | b | opening | c | opens | d | opened |
| 7 | Some huge fishby Ahmed. | a | have caught | b | have catching | c | has caught | d | have been caught |
| 8 | The lunch isnow by Fatima. | a | been cooked | b | being cooked | c | be cooked | d | cooking |
| 9 | The new hospital is toby the president tomorrow. | a | open | b | opening | c | be opened | d | been opened |
| 10 | The hotel cannotfrom far away. | a | see | b | being seen | c | been seen | d | be seen |

| | |
|--|--|
| 1/ The new hospitalby the prime Minister last week. (open / opened / is opened / was opened) | 2/ Books areof paper. (made / make / makes / making) |
| 3/ Finally, the bike has (repair / repairs / repairing / been repaired) | 4/has been decorated well . (The room / The rooms / She / It) |
| 5/ Some vegetables been bought for Ahmed by him. (have / has / is / was) | 6/ This rule should by us . (wrote / written / be written / been written) |
| 7/ The dinnerby Arwa every day . (is cooking / is cooked / was cooked / cooks) | 8/ The president is to tomorrow morning by him . (be met / be meeting / being met / be meet) |

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|---|------|---|------------|---|-------|---|--------|
| 1 | If you heat ice, it | a | melt | b | would melt | c | melts | d | molten |
| 2 | If it rains, Istay at home. | a | will | b | would | c | could | d | should |
| 3 | If Iyou, I would study English. | a | am | b | are | c | was | d | were |

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|----------|---|-----------|---|------------------|---|-------------------|
| 4 | If I had time, Ivisit you. | | | | | | | |
| | a | will | b | can | c | would | d | shall |
| 5 | If I had earned a lot of money, Ia house. | | | | | | | |
| | a | will buy | b | would buy | c | would has bought | d | would have bought |
| 6 | You will not pass the examyou study hard. | | | | | | | |
| | a | unless | b | if | c | if not | d | a and c |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|--------------|---|-------------|---|------------------|---|----------------|
| 1 | To be a teacher, you must show | | | | | | | |
| | a | confident | b | confidence | c | confidently | d | more confident |
| 2 | Both students have the same | | | | | | | |
| | a | intelligence | b | intelligent | c | more intelligent | d | intelligently |
| 3 | Hiswas a big loss to everyone. | | | | | | | |
| | a | die | b | dead | c | death | d | died |
| 4 | Hiswas a big loss to everyone. | | | | | | | |
| | a | lose | b | lost | c | loss | d | losed |
| 5 | This rule is the sameas that rule. | | | | | | | |
| | a | important | b | importants | c | importantly | d | importance |
| 6 | I need your | | | | | | | |
| | a | help | b | helpful | c | helpless | d | helplessly |
| 7 | We need him for | | | | | | | |
| | a | necessity | b | necessary | c | unnecessary | d | necessarily |
| 8 |is required. | | | | | | | |
| | a | polite | b | impolite | c | politeness | d | politely |
| 9 | How is the? | | | | | | | |
| | a | suggest | b | suggested | c | suggestion | d | suggestions |
| 10 | We need | | | | | | | |
| | a | develop | b | development | c | developmentally | d | ---- |
| 11 | This is his last | | | | | | | |
| | a | decision | b | decide | c | decided | d | decides |
| 12 | Theof an earthquake is measured on Richter scale. | | | | | | | |
| | a | strong | b | strongly | c | strength | d | strengthen |
| 13 | They hate | | | | | | | |
| | a | dark | b | darken | c | darkly | d | darkness |
| 14 | Smoking leads to | | | | | | | |
| | a | die | b | died | c | dead | d | death |

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|------|---|---------|---|-----------|---|-------------|
| 1 | Before he left, Ihim a lot of questions. | | | | | | | |
| | a | ask | b | asked | c | had asked | d | have asked |
| 2 | After hehis lunch, he went to do his homework. | | | | | | | |
| | a | eat | b | eats | c | had eaten | d | eating |
| 3 | They hada house. | | | | | | | |
| | a | buy | b | bought | c | buying | d | have bought |
| 4 | Ihim a lot of questions before he left. | | | | | | | |
| | a | ask | b | asks | c | had asked | d | have asked |
| 5 | She hasher lunch. | | | | | | | |
| | a | has | b | have | c | had | d | having |
| 6 | Hecome yesterday. | | | | | | | |
| | a | must | b | have to | c | had to | d | has to |
| 7 | Khalida meeting last week. | | | | | | | |
| | a | has | b | have | c | had | d | having |
| 8 | If shea car, she would take you there. | | | | | | | |
| | a | has | b | have | c | had | d | having |

| | | | | |
|----|---|-----------|---------------|---------------|
| 9 | What work experience have you.....? | | | |
| | a had | b has | c have | d having |
| 10 | If theyhard, they would have passed the exam. | | | |
| | a study | b studied | c are studied | d had studied |
| 11 | By the time the police arrived, theythree people. | | | |
| | a kill | b killing | c had killed | d are killed |
| 12 | I returned home because Imy wallet at home. | | | |
| | a had forgotten | b forget | c forgot | d forgets |
| 13 | I wish Iaccounting in college. | | | |
| | a study | b studies | c had studied | d studying |
| 14 | They hadtheir homework. | | | |
| | a done | b does | c doing | d do |

| | | | | |
|---|---|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1 | The manager willmeeting at 1:00 P.m. | | | |
| | a has | b have | c had | d having |
| 2 | Sameer didn'tthe school party. | | | |
| | a like | b liked | c liking | d likes |
| 3 | All Yemeni people would prefer tothe war. | | | |
| | a stop | b stops | c stopped | d stopping |
| 4 | The students hatebiology classes. | | | |
| | a attend | b attends | c to attend | d attended |
| 5 | Could youthese sentences? | | | |
| | a complete | b completes | c completely | d completed |

| | | | | |
|---|--|-------------|------------|------------|
| 1 | Before theyto bed, they had done their homework. | | | |
| | a go | b went | c gone | d going |
| 2 | I wish Iswim. | | | |
| | a can | b will | c could | d shall |
| 3 | Hean accident last Friday. | | | |
| | a see | b saw | c seen | d sees |
| 4 | If hehard, he would pass in the exam. | | | |
| | a study | b studies | c studied | d studying |
| 5 | Whothe window yesterday? | | | |
| | a brake | b did break | c is broke | d break |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1 | The boys ran in the street,to catch the bus. | | | |
| | a tries | b trying | c tried | d to try |
| 2 | I watched the ants.....the seeds from the store. | | | |
| | a pulling | b pulled | c pulls | d have pulled |
| 3 | We heard a lot of birds.....on the tree. | | | |
| | a sings | b are singing | c singing | d sang |
| 4 | He has beenT.V for three hours. | | | |
| | a watch | b watching | c watched | d watches |
| 5 | Yesterday, we saw Ahmedcarelessly. | | | |
| | a driving | b is driving | c was driving | d are driving |
| 6 | She smelt somethingin the kitchen. | | | |
| | a burns | b burning | c is burnt | d burnt |
| 7 | The farmerworking on the farm since 2010. | | | |
| | a has been | b have been | c has | d have |
| 8 |the mobile most of the time will hurt your eyes. | | | |
| | a use | b using | c usage | d used |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|---------|---|-------------|---|---------|---|---------|
| 9 | The headmaster watched the studentsin the yard. | | | | | | | |
| | a | playing | b | are playing | c | plays | d | played |
| 10 | The hurricane istowards the city now. | | | | | | | |
| | a | move | b | moved | c | moves | d | moving |
| 11 | They will beat 8 o'clock. | | | | | | | |
| | a | study | b | studying | c | studies | d | studied |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|---------------------------|---|-------------------|---|---------------------------|---|-------------------------|
| 1 | He always drives | | | | | | | |
| | a | reckless | b | more recklessness | c | recklessly | d | recklessness |
| 2 | They can run | | | | | | | |
| | a | fast | b | fastest | c | fastly | d | fastness |
| 3 | She walked very | | | | | | | |
| | a | slowness | b | slowly | c | slow | d | more slowness |
| 4 | In Islam, parents must be treatedby sons and daughters. | | | | | | | |
| | a | politely | b | polite | c | politely | d | politest |
| 5 | He istired. | | | | | | | |
| | a | extreme | b | extremely | c | extremes | d | a and b |
| 6 | Khalid drove asas possible. | | | | | | | |
| | a | quick | b | quicken | c | quickness | d | quickly |
| 7 | Read the passage..... | | | | | | | |
| | a | carefully | b | care | c | careful | d | careless |
| 8 | He didn't sleeplast night. | | | | | | | |
| | a | good | b | bad | c | goodly | d | well |
| 9 |, they talked about this topic. | | | | | | | |
| | a | quickly | b | slow | c | fastly | d | quicken |
| 10 | The word (.....) is an adverb. | | | | | | | |
| | a | lovely | b | friendly | c | ugly | d | recklessly |
| 11 | They turned left . The word (left) is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 12 | The suffix (.....) changes the adjectives into adverbs. | | | | | | | |
| | a | y | b | ly | c | ful | d | ture |
| 13 | The word (unsuccessfully) include | | | | | | | |
| | a | one suffix and one prefix | b | two suffixes only | c | 2 prefixes and 2 suffixes | d | a prefix and 2 suffixes |
| 14 | The stem of (recklessly) is | | | | | | | |
| | a | reckless | b | ly | c | lessly | d | re/ lessly |
| 15 | The opposite of (usually) is | | | | | | | |
| | a | disusually | b | imusually | c | unusually | d | irusually |
| 16 | The adverb (.....) has one suffix only. | | | | | | | |
| | a | reckleely | b | carefully | c | carelessly | d | successfully |
| 17 | The speak loudly. The word (loudly) is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adjective | d | adverb |

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|--------|---|---------|---|----------|---|----------|
| 1 | The children ran out of school, shouting andhappily. | | | | | | | |
| | a | laugh | b | laughed | c | laughing | d | laughs |
| 2 | We began to feeland thirsty. | | | | | | | |
| | a | hungry | b | hunger | c | a hunger | d | hungrily |

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|----------------------------------|-------------|---|-------------|---|-------------|---|-------------|
| 1 | He drove faster and | | | | | | | |
| | a | faster | b | fastest | c | fast | d | fasly |
| 2 | We becameandworried. | | | | | | | |
| | a | much / much | b | more / more | c | most / most | d | many / many |

| | | | | |
|---|---|-------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 3 | The weather is gettingand colder. | | | |
| | a cold | b coldest | c colder | d coldness |
| 4 | The situation is gettingand | | | |
| | a worse / worse | b bad / bad | c bader / bader | d best / best |
| 5 |and more people are coming. | | | |
| | a many | b much | c more | d most |

| | | | | |
|---|----------------------------------|-----------|----------|----------|
| 1 | I look forward tofrom you. | | | |
| | a hearing | b hear | c hears | d heard |
| 2 | He is addicted to | | | |
| | a smoke | b smoking | c smoked | d smokes |

| | | | | |
|---|--|--------|-------------|----------|
| 1 | Can you bring me some water from the <u>well</u> ? The underlined word is a / an | | | |
| | a verb | b noun | c adjective | d adverb |
| 2 | He didn't sleep <u>well</u> . The underlined word is a / an | | | |
| | a verb | b noun | c adjective | d adverb |
| 3 | This is Ali's <u>well</u> . The underlined word is a / an | | | |
| | a verb | b noun | c adjective | d adverb |
| 4 | She is <u>well</u> . The underlined word is a / an | | | |
| | a verb | b noun | c adjective | d adverb |

| | | | | |
|---|--|--------|-------------|----------|
| 1 | He ran <u>fast</u> . The underlined word is a / an | | | |
| | a verb | b noun | c adjective | d adverb |
| 2 | They are <u>fast</u> . The underlined word is a / an | | | |
| | a verb | b noun | c adjective | d adverb |
| 3 | All Muslims <u>fast</u> in Ramadan. The underlined word is a / an | | | |
| | a verb | b noun | c adjective | d adverb |
| 4 | She likes <u>fast</u> music. The underlined word is a / an | | | |
| | a verb | b noun | c adjective | d adverb |
| 5 | Ramadan is the Month of <u>fasting</u> . The underlined word is a / an | | | |
| | a verb | b noun | c adjective | d adverb |

| | | | | |
|---|---|--------|-------------|----------|
| 1 | They <u>left</u> early. The underlined word is a / an | | | |
| | a verb | b noun | c adjective | d adverb |
| 2 | He is <u>left</u> handed. The underlined word is a / an | | | |
| | a verb | b noun | c adjective | d adverb |
| 3 | Turn <u>left</u> . The underlined word is a / an | | | |
| | a verb | b noun | c adjective | d adverb |
| 4 | She is in the <u>left</u> . The underlined word is a / an | | | |
| | a verb | b noun | c adjective | d adverb |

| | | | | |
|---|---|-------|--------|--------|
| 1 | This car id differentthat car. | | | |
| | a in | b on | c from | d of |
| 2 | Saleh agreedAhmed that to prove Galileo's hypothesis. | | | |
| | a in | b on | c at | d with |
| 3 | Fatima is marriedAli. | | | |
| | a to | b of | c with | d from |
| 4 | Can you explain this ruleme? | | | |
| | a in | b for | c to | d at |
| 5 | They camea bus. | | | |
| | a on | b by | c in | d of |

| | | | | | |
|----|---|--------|---------|--------|---------|
| 6 | He is hopelessmathematics. | a on | b in | c at | d of |
| 7 | He has been teaching English2000. And he is teaching. | a in | b on | c at | d since |
| 8 | The strength of an earthquake is measuredRichter Scale. | a in | b on | c by | d at |
| 9 | I am worriedyou. | a in | b about | c at | d on |
| 10 | A plough used to turn ...the soil. | a up | b down | c in | d over |
| 11 | A nurse looksthe patients (sick people) | a of | b at | c for | d after |
| 12 | I look forwardmeeting you. | a for | b of | c at | d to |
| 13 | France is famousits restaurants. | a for | b with | c of | d at |
| 14 | A knowledgeplants is important. | a in | b of | c at | d on |
| 15 | A tractor is a machine useda farmer. | a by | b to | c for | d in |
| 16 | A plough used to breakthe soil. | a over | b up | c down | d in |
| 17 | Saleh is interestedusing social media. | a in | b at | c on | d by |
| 18 | Far awaythe horizon, I can see. | a in | b at | c on | d for |
| 19 | Ahmed has experienceworking with children. | a to | b by | c at | d of |
| 20 | I gotof a car to greet my teacher. | a on | b out | c to | d over |

| | | | | | |
|----|---|--------------|-------------|---------------------|----------------|
| 1 | Have Ahmedthe door. | a close | b to close | c closing | d closed |
| 2 | Have theythe door? | a close | b to close | c closing | d closed |
| 3 | I would likeabroad. | a to travel | b travel | c travelling | d a and c |
| 4 | I likeabroad. | a to travel | b travel | c travelling | d a and c |
| 5 | All Yemeni people would prefer tothe war. | a stop | b stopped | c stops | d stopping |
| 6 | We look forward toour friends. | a visit | b visiting | c visits | d visited |
| 7 | Some letters are beingby the secretary. | a type | b types | c typed | d typing |
| 8 | The form has to bein and returned. | a fills | b filling | c fill | d filled |
| 9 | He always drives..... | a recklessly | b reckless | c more recklessness | d recklessness |
| 10 | That house looks | a wonder | b wonderful | c wonderfully | d wonders |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|--|-----------|---|-------------|---|-------------|---|-------------|
| 11 | He isvolleyball. | | | | | | | |
| | a | play | b | plays | c | played | d | playing |
| 12 | A door isof wood. | | | | | | | |
| | a | make | b | making | c | mading | d | made |
| 13 | He is speaking <u>politely</u> . | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 14 | He is <u>lovely</u> . | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 15 | I saw him using a <u>saw</u> . | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 16 | They had a <u>big fight</u> with their neighbours. | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 17 | He cooks the food very | | | | | | | |
| | a | slow | b | slowness | c | slower | d | slowly |
| 18 | The thief was very | | | | | | | |
| | a | scare | b | scared | c | scares | d | recklessly |
| 19 | I need you for | | | | | | | |
| | a | necessity | b | necessary | c | necessarily | d | a and c |
| 20 | A man was arrested fordriving. | | | | | | | |
| | a | danger | b | dangerous | c | endanger | d | dangerously |
| 21 | They droveto be in the meeting on time. | | | | | | | |
| | a | fast | b | fastest | c | faster | d | slowly |
| 22 | Dealwith the children. | | | | | | | |
| | a | kind | b | kindly | c | kindness | d | kindest |
| 23 |is a prefix. | | | | | | | |
| | a | less | b | re | c | ment | d | ese |
| 24 |is a suffix. | | | | | | | |
| | a | is | b | im | c | ly | d | mis |
| 25 | He isin watching T.V. | | | | | | | |
| | a | interest | b | interests | c | interested | d | interesting |
| 26 | This film is | | | | | | | |
| | a | interest | b | interests | c | interested | d | interesting |
| 27 | They felt | | | | | | | |
| | a | exhausted | b | exhaust | c | exhausts | d | a and b |
| 28 | He felt somethingbehind him. | | | | | | | |
| | a | moves | b | to move | c | moving | d | was moving |
| 29 | They camea bus. | | | | | | | |
| | a | in | b | on | c | by | d | at |
| 30 | They camebus. | | | | | | | |
| | a | in | b | on | c | by | d | at |
| 31 | He is asas you. | | | | | | | |
| | a | clever | b | more clever | c | most clever | d | no answer |
| 32 | They drove asas possible. | | | | | | | |
| | a | quickly | b | quick | c | quicken | d | quickness |
| 33 | He was bornApril. | | | | | | | |
| | a | in | b | on | c | at | d | of |
| 34 | He was bornApril 5 th 1990. | | | | | | | |
| | a | in | b | on | c | at | d | of |
| 35 | Abdullah! Do your homework. | | | | | | | |
| | a | yourself | b | yourselves | c | myself | d | himself |
| 36 | Girl! Take care of | | | | | | | |
| | a | yourself | b | yourselves | c | themselves | d | herself |

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|------|---|--------|---|----------|---|--------|
| 1 | Howmoney do you need? | | | | | | | |
| | a | many | b | much | c | long | d | little |
| 2 | Howluggage does he have? | | | | | | | |
| | a | much | b | many | c | a little | d | little |
| 3 | Howpower do the turbines provide? | | | | | | | |
| | a | much | b | many | c | few | d | little |
| 4 | Howdo you weigh? | | | | | | | |
| | a | many | b | old | c | much | d | little |
| 5 | Howsugar is there? | | | | | | | |
| | a | some | b | little | c | much | d | many |
| 6 | Howdoes the car cost? | | | | | | | |
| | a | some | b | little | c | much | d | many |

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|-------|---|------|---|------|---|--------|
| 1 | Howstudents are there in the classroom? | | | | | | | |
| | a | many | b | much | c | long | d | old |
| 2 | Howpeople were with you? | | | | | | | |
| | a | much | b | many | c | tall | d | little |
| 3 | Howchildren does he have? | | | | | | | |
| | a | much | b | many | c | far | d | old |
| 4 | How manydid you see there? | | | | | | | |
| | a | mouse | b | mice | c | cat | d | dog |

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|------------------------------------|------|---|------|---|------|---|-----|
| 1 | Howis he? Ten years old. | | | | | | | |
| | a | many | b | much | c | long | d | old |
| 2 | Howare they? They are twins. | | | | | | | |
| | a | much | b | many | c | tall | d | old |

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|------|---|------|---|------|---|------|
| 1 | Howis it from Sana'a to Taiz? 300 k.m | | | | | | | |
| | a | many | b | much | c | far | d | old |
| 2 | Howhave you teaching? Since 2000. | | | | | | | |
| | a | much | b | many | c | far | d | long |
| 3 | Howhas been working here? For three years. | | | | | | | |
| | a | much | b | far | c | long | d | old |

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|----------|---|-------------|---|-------------|---|-------------|
| 1 | He is asas you. | | | | | | | |
| | a | clever | b | more clever | c | most clever | d | no answer |
| 2 | It is asas that well. | | | | | | | |
| | a | deep | b | deepen | c | deeply | d | depth |
| 3 | I was in avalley. | | | | | | | |
| | a | deep | b | deepen | c | deeply | d | depth |
| 4 | We got | | | | | | | |
| | a | tired | b | tireds | c | tiredness | d | 1 and 3 |
| 5 | We began to feeland thirsty. | | | | | | | |
| | a | huger | b | a hunger | c | hungry | d | hungrily |
| 6 | Llamas live inparts of South America. | | | | | | | |
| | a | mountain | b | mountainous | c | mountainly | d | mountains |
| 7 | The wool coat of a llama is very | | | | | | | |
| | a | value | b | values | c | valuable | d | valuably |
| 8 | A man was arrested fordriving. | | | | | | | |
| | a | danger | b | dangerous | c | endanger | d | dangerously |

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|--|---------------|---|--------------|---|-----------------|---|--------------|
| 9 | We became | | | | | | | |
| | a | happy | b | happiness | c | happily | d | unhappily |
| 10 | That house looks | | | | | | | |
| | a | wonder | b | wonderful | c | wonderfully | d | wonders |
| 11 | Be | | | | | | | |
| | a | polite | b | polites | c | politely | d | politeness |
| 12 | To be an excellent student, you must be | | | | | | | |
| | a | dilligent | b | diligence | c | diligently | d | diligents |
| 13 | You should be | | | | | | | |
| | a | care | b | careful | c | carelessly | d | cares |
| 14 | Howis it? | | | | | | | |
| | a | high | b | height | c | age | d | size |
| 15 | He is fine. The word (fine) is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | n. | b | v. | c | adj. | d | adv. |
| 16 | She isenough to drive. | | | | | | | |
| | a | young | b | youth | c | youngest | d | youngly |
| 17 | He is tooto marry. | | | | | | | |
| | a | old | b | older | c | age | d | 1 and 3 |
| 18 | You are sothat you discovered this thing. | | | | | | | |
| | a | intelligent | b | intelligence | c | intelligently | d | intelligents |
| 19 | He is such aman to buy this car. | | | | | | | |
| | a | wealth | b | wealthy | c | rich | d | 2 and 3 |
| 20 | It tastes | | | | | | | |
| | a | good | b | badly | c | delicious | d | 1 and 3 |
| 21 | He is always <u>well-dressed</u> . The underlined word is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. | b | n. | c | adj. | d | adv. |
| 22 | My friend is lovely. (lovely) is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | v. | b | n. | c | adj. | d | adv. |
| 23 | She is extremely | | | | | | | |
| | a | beautiful | b | beautify | c | beauty | d | beautifully |
| 24 | Cats areanimals. | | | | | | | |
| | a | furry | b | fur | c | a fur | d | a hair |
| 25 | The word (western) is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 26 | Please, give me theoranges. | | | | | | | |
| | a | peel | b | peeling | c | peeled | d | peels |
| 27 | He is like me in many ways. The word (like) is a / an | | | | | | | |
| | a | verb | b | noun | c | adjective | d | adverb |
| 28 | He is | | | | | | | |
| | a | Japan | b | Japanese | c | a Japan | d | a Japanese |
| 29 | She isin drawing. | | | | | | | |
| | a | interest | b | interests | c | interested | d | Interesting |
| 30 | This film is | | | | | | | |
| | a | interest | b | interests | c | interested | d | Interesting |
| 31 | He isthan you. | | | | | | | |
| | a | good | b | bad | c | worse | d | gooder |
| 32 |and more people are coming. | | | | | | | |
| | a | more | b | most | c | must | d | many |
| 33 | They are thestudents in the class. | | | | | | | |
| | a | short | b | tallest | c | length | d | younger |
| 34 | The situation is gettingand | | | | | | | |
| | a | worse / worse | b | bad / bad | c | better / better | d | a and c |

| | | | | |
|----|---|----------------------------------|---|--|
| 35 | It is gettingand | | | |
| | a | much / much | b | less / less |
| | | | c | little / little |
| | | | d | many / many |
| 36 |he able to swim? | | | |
| | a | Is | b | Does |
| | | | c | Has |
| | | | d | Can |
| 37 | The word (.....) isn't compound. | | | |
| | a | well-dressed | b | handsome |
| | | | c | English teacher |
| | | | d | lazy man |
| 38 | The deeper the water, thethe pressure. | | | |
| | a | great | b | greatest |
| | | | c | greatness |
| | | | d | greater |
| 39 | He bought abuilding. | | | |
| | a | beautiful, old, Yemeni | b | old, beautiful, Yemeni |
| | | | c | Yemeni, beautiful, old |
| | | | d | old, Yemeni, beautiful |
| 40 | To change these nouns (gold / wood / wool) into adjectives, add the suffix (.....) | | | |
| | a | ed | b | ful |
| | | | c | less |
| | | | d | en |
| 41 | Add the prefix (.....), to change these adjectives (large / rich / able) into verbs. | | | |
| | a | en | b | ed |
| | | | c | dis |
| | | | d | mis |
| 42 | To change these adjectives (polite / careful / helpless) into adjectives add the suffix (.....) | | | |
| | a | y | b | lly |
| | | | c | ity |
| | | | d | ly |
| 43 | Add the suffix (.....), to change these adjectives (deep / weak / dark / sick) into verbs. | | | |
| | a | en | b | mis |
| | | | c | dis |
| | | | d | non |
| 44 | The words (lovely / likely / silly / ugly / lonely / curly / friendly / costly / kindly / fatherly) are | | | |
| | a | verbs | b | nouns |
| | | | c | adjectives |
| | | | d | adverbs |
| 45 | The adjective of (unhappily) is | | | |
| | a | happy | b | happily |
| | | | c | un |
| | | | d | ly |
| 46 | The suffixes (.....) change the adjectives into nouns. | | | |
| | a | (ness / ity / cy / age) | b | (tion - sion / ment - ture / ance - ence) |
| | | | c | (ful - less / ous / ic - ical - ial / y - ed - ern - ese) |
| | | | d | (ache / hood / ship) |

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|------------|---|------------|---------|----------|
| 1 | The word (.....) isn't an adverb. | | | | Lovely | friendly |
| | a | quickly | b | easily | | |
| | | | c | carefully | | |
| | | | d | costly | Likely | silly |
| 2 | The word (.....) is an adjective. | | | | Lonely | ugly |
| | a | Politely | b | silly | Costly | fatherly |
| | | | c | slowly | | |
| | | | d | recklessly | | |
| 1 | We don't knowto do after school. | | | | what to | where to |
| | a | which | b | what | | |
| | | | c | when | | |
| | | | d | who | | |
| 2 | He doesn't knowto go. | | | | | |
| | a | what | b | whose | | |
| | | | c | where | | |
| | | | d | which | | |
| 3 | Can you learn meto use a computer? | | | | | |
| | a | what | b | how | | |
| | | | c | who | | |
| | | | d | whose | | |
| 1 | The house I used to live in is very old. This statement gives usinformation. | | | | | |
| | a | additional | b | necessary | | |
| | | | c | adverbial | | |
| | | | d | a and b | | |
| 2 | Sana'a secondary schools, to which I went when I was younger, is one of the biggest schools in the country. This statement gives usinformation. | | | | | |
| | a | additional | b | necessary | | |
| | | | c | adverbial | | |
| | | | d | a and b | | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|------|---|-------------|
| 1 | While hein the street, he saw Mohammed. | | | |
| | a | walk | b | walking |
| | | | c | is walking |
| | | | d | was walking |
| 2 | While hea newspaper, he watches T.V. | | | |
| | a | read | b | reading |
| | | | c | is reading |
| | | | d | was reading |

| | |
|---|--|
| 1/ This word (.....) is compound . (coastline / coverings / valuable / luggage) | 2/ The word (.....) isn't compound word. (sweetheart / nightmare / recklessly / newspaper) |
| 3/ The compound word is (rename / beautiful / magnificent / housework) | 4/ All these words aren't compounds except this word. (childhood / freedom / darkness / fault line) |
| 5/ Only this word is not compound . (redline / blacklist / hundred / whiteboard) | 6/ One of these words is not compound . (gradually / eyewitness / underwater / farmhouse) |

| | |
|---|---|
| 1/ The prefix (.....) means (again). (un / en / kilo / re) | 2/ The stem of the word (misunderstanding) is (mis / ing / mis - ing / understand) |
| 3/ The prefix (.....) changes the meaning of the word (lead) into negative. (il / ir / dis / mis) | 4/ The suffixmakes the word " home " adjective . (ible / ture / less / tive) |
| 5/ If you add the suffix (tion) to the word (prepare), it will become a / an (verb / noun / adj. / adv.) | 6/ The word (disappearance) include (has) (a prefix / a suffix / a prefix and a suffix / compound) |

| | |
|---|---|
| 1/ Mohammed is the student gets the best marks . (which / who / when / where) | 2/ That is the dogbit Ahmed . (who / whom / which / whose) |
| 3/ Here is the instituteI studied at . (who / which / where / whose) | 4/ The company I work is great . (where / which / whose / when) |
| 5/ I remember the dayI got married . (whom / why / which / when) | 6/ I'll never forget the day onI met you. (where / which / whose / when) |
| 7/ We know the manbus was stolen. (where / whose / which / who) | 8/ The students.....you taught last year are from Taiz. (who / whose / whom / where) |
| 9/ This is the book.....I read it last year. (who / which / whom / whose) | 10/ Sana'a is the city, in.....I was born. (which / where / whose) |
| 11/ Sana'a,is the capital of Yemen, is very beautiful. (which / where / who / whose) | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 1/ She isthan her sister. (beautiful / more beautiful / most beautiful / beauty) | 2/ He is thestudent in the class . (good / better / best / gooder) |
| 3/ Ali isthan Abdullah . (short / shorter / shortest / more short) | 4/ English isthan Arabic . (easy / easier / more easy / easier) |
| 5/ Your handwriting isthan your sister's . (worst / worse / good / bad) | 6/ He hasmoney than you . (much / less / many / little) |

| | |
|---|---|
| 1/ Itall day non-stop . (rain/ raining / has rained / has been raining) | 2/ Fatima English since 2018. (She is still studying .) (has been studying / has studied / studies / studied) |
| 3/ I have beenabout it but..... (think / thinking / thinked / being think) | 4/ Hehere since 1991. The speaker will probably go on living here. (lives / lived / has lived / has been living) |
| 5/ Theyall day. (have been working / have worked / have work / working) | 6/ Wefor three hours now. Can you stop for a rest? (walk / have walked / have being walked / have been walking) |

| | |
|--|---|
| 1/ He doesn't haveproblem. (some / any / an /) | 2/ Iyet. (haven't finished / didn't finish /) |
|--|---|

| | |
|--|---|
| 1/ Does hebrothers? (has / had / have / having) | 1/ Is your father? (sleep / sleeps / sleeping) |
| 2/ Did youAhmed yesterday? (see / saw / seen / sees) | 2/ Were you? (swimming / swim / swam / swum) |
| 3/ Do theyvolleyball on Friday? (play / played / playing / are playing) | 3/ Are yougot now? (chew / chewing / chewed) |
| 4/ She didn'tyesterday. (come / came / coming / comes) | 4/ They areEnglish. (studying / study / studied) |
| 5/ Where does he? (live / lives / lived / living) | 5/ I amfor you. (waiting / wait / waited) |
| | 6/ What was she? (do / does / done / doing) |
| | 7/ He isn'tT.V at the moment. |
| | 8/ We aren'tfootball nowadays. (playing / play / plays / played) |
| | 9/ Where is she? (go / goes / going / went) |

| | |
|---|--|
| 1/ He hasus. (help / helps / helped / helping) 2/ They havethe lesson. (understand / understood / understanding) 3/ She hadthe lunch. (cooked / cook / cooks / cooking) 4/ She hasn'ther. (visit / visiting / visits / visited) 5/ Have youabroad? (travel / travelled / traveling) 6/ Where have you? (are / be / were / been / being) 7/ He has beenEnglish since 2000. (teach / teaching / taught / taught) | 1/ We willnext week. (travel / to travel / travelling / travels) 2/ She can (draw / drawn / drew / draws) 3/ I won'ttomorrow. (come / to come / came / coming) 4/ You mustyour presents . (obey / obeyed / to obey / obeying) 5/ Can youcards? (play / plays / to play / playing) 6/ Where can she? (stay / to stay . staying / stays) |
|---|--|

| | |
|---|--|
| 1/ Let'sthere. (live / lives / living) | 2/the door, please. (Open / Opening / To open) |
| 3/ I won't rather.....milk. (to drink / drink / drank / drinking) | |
| 4/ We want to (leave / leaving / leaves / left) | |
| 5/ Have the boythe door. (close / closed / to close / closes) | |

| | |
|--|---|
| 1 The prefix (.....) makes the word (agree) negative. (un / im / dis / mis) | 2 The prefix (.....) makes the word (important) negative. (il / im / dis / un) |
| 3 To change the word (develop) into a noun, we add the suffix (.....). (or / able / ness / ment) | 4 The suffix (.....) changes the word (hope) into an adjective. (ness / less / ed / ly) |
| 5 To change the adjective (blind) into a noun, we add (.....). (ness / sion / tion / ed) | 6 He is adriver. (fast / quickly / slowly / badly) |

| | |
|---|--|
| 1 I need someon what to do after school. (advice / advices / advise / advises) | 2 That's every goodof advice. (piece / bottle / crowd / pair) |
| 3 Did youat mirror first? (look / looking / looks / looked) | 4 He startedfast. (run / running / ran / runs) |

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| 1 I have gotmoney. (a / an / any / some) | 2 The main source of energy isSun. (a / an / the / some) | 3 He is wearinguniform. (a / an / some) |
|---|---|--|

| | |
|--|---|
| 1 Thatbe a car. It's obvious. (can / might / could / must) | 6 Thatbe Ali. He is the only one missing. (can / should / cannot / must) |
| 2 Itbe a kite. It's impossible. (must / may / might / can't) | 7 It can't be a coin but itbe a pen. (must / will / could / can) |
| 3 Hebe a teacher but he could be a doctor. (must / can / can't / could) | 8 It can't be a coin. Itbe a pen. (must / could / can / will) |
| 4 I wish Ia bird. (am / are / was / were) | 9 Youlook at your books during an exam. (must / will / mustn't / can) |
| 5 Youspeak in a public library . (must / will / mustn't / can) | |

| | |
|--|---|
| 1 He ordered his men.....left. (to turn / turn / turning) | 3 My mother wants meher. (to help / help / helping) |
| 2 She asked ushard. (to study / studying / study / 1 and 2) | 4 I'd like youearly. (to come / come / coming / 1 and 3) |

| | |
|---|---|
| 1/he studied hard , he didn't pass the exam . (Thus / but / Therefore / Although) | 2/ He sometimes gets angry . He is very kind , (too / as well as / whereas / however) |
| 3/Khalid is tall , Ahmed is short . (too / as well as / whereas / however) | 4/ Samar washed the dishes . She washed the car (in addition / as well as / as well / together with) |
| 5/ He likes swimmingtravelling . (as well / another reason / as well as / furthermore) | 6/ Eman is polite, , she is very conscientious . (as well / as well as / In addition / together with) |

| | |
|--|--|
| 7/ He isn't only politeclever . (but / and / but also / to) | 8/ Sara is polite , she is helpful . (as well as / furthermore / although / because) |
| 9/ He wore a coat and a hatwoolen gloves . (together with / Another reason / as well / also) | 10/ Air contains amounts of carbon dioxide. (together with / too / also / as well) |
| 11/ Ali wants to pass the exam ,studying hard . (thus / that is why / another reason / because) | 12/ He was driving fastthey had an accident . (thus / another reason / although / so) |
| 13/ The weather was cold , they wore coats . (therefore / as well as / because / but) | 14/ He lost his jobhe was late for work . (thus / because / although / as well) |

سيتم نشر كل ما يخص هذه المواد
انضم الينا

مادة القران ثالث ثانوي 🙌

<https://t.me/+8qIghjhmLs9hM2Y0>

مادة الاسلاميه ثالث ثانوي 📖

<https://t.me/+5k5Re7vsBawzOThk>

مادة اللغة العربية ثالث ثانوي 🖋

<https://t.me/+XE0Qc4WBGKU3ODU8>

مادة الانجليزي ثالث ثانوي 📝

<https://t.me/+kDruBTQuHBphMWQ0>

مادة الفيزياء ثالث ثانوي 💡

<https://t.me/+z8ux8VISaw4xMjQ0>

مادة الكيمياء ثالث ثانوي 🧪

<https://t.me/+1nduwCoz7q04YTIk>

مادة الاحياء ثالث ثانوي 🦋

<https://t.me/+I9RbpMuNWZg3NWM0>

مادة الرياضيات ثالث ثانوي 📐

<https://t.me/+JvVUbaZKKTY4ODI0>



مهم لطلبة الثالث الثانوي

قنوات هامة

قناة التعليمية الثالث الثانوي

https://T.me/Third_secondary17

القناة التعليمية اليمنية

<https://T.me/moeyemen>

قناة الصف التاسع الرسمية

<https://T.me/+pDptj3jKgRAyYmJk>

قناة الثانوية العامة - اليمن

https://T.me/Yemeni_student

بوت الثالث الثانوي

https://T.me/Third_secondary_bot

قناة الثانوية والتاهيل الجامعي

https://T.me/Doctor_future1

قناة نماذج اختبارات القبول

<https://T.me/kabooltep>

نماذج ثالث ثانوي 2022-2023 م

https://t.me/Third_secondary17/2415

#ملخصات_قران_ثالث_ثانوي

<https://t.me/moeyemen/457> -

#ملخصات_كيمياء_ثالث_ثانوي

<https://t.me/moeyemen/481> -

#ملخصات_انجليزي_ثالث_ثانوي

<https://t.me/moeyemen/515> -

#ملخصات_تفاضل_تكامل_ثالث_ثانوي

<https://t.me/moeyemen/558> -

#ملخصات_جبر_هندسة_ثالث_ثانوي

<https://t.me/moeyemen/609> -

#ملخصات_عربي_ثالث_ثانوي

<https://t.me/moeyemen/665> -

#ملخصات_اسلامية_ثالث_ثانوي

<https://t.me/moeyemen/723> -

#ملخصات_فيزياء_ثالث_ثانوي

<https://t.me/moeyemen/768> -

#ملخصات_احياء_ثالث_ثانوي

<https://t.me/moeyemen/812> -

#نماذج_قران_ثالث_ثانوي

<https://t.me/moeyemen/463> -

#نماذج_كيمياء_ثالث_ثانوي

<https://t.me/moeyemen/495> -

#نماذج_انجليزي_ثالث_ثانوي

<https://t.me/moeyemen/531> -

#نماذج_تفاضل_تكامل_ثالث_ثانوي

<https://t.me/moeyemen/579> -

#نماذج_جبر_هندسة_ثالث_ثانوي

<https://t.me/moeyemen/635> -

#نماذج_عربي_ثالث_ثانوي

<https://t.me/moeyemen/686> -

#نماذج_اسلامية_ثالث_ثانوي

<https://t.me/moeyemen/737> -

#نماذج_فيزياء_ثالث_ثانوي

<https://t.me/moeyemen/781> -

#نماذج_احياء_ثالث_ثانوي

<https://t.me/moeyemen/828> -